<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Getting Started With ODK</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ODK Collect</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Setting Up ODK Collect</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Using ODK Collect</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Tips and Best Practices</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ODK Central</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Setting Up ODK Central</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Using ODK Central</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Intro to Forms in ODK</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>XLSForm</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Question Types</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Form Logic</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Form Operators and Functions</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Form Datasets</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Form Styling</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Form Language</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Logging enumerator behavior</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Launching External Apps</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Form Building Tools</td>
<td>445</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Tips and Best Practices</td>
<td>459</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 ODK Briefcase</td>
<td>469</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Setting Up ODK Briefcase</td>
<td>471</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 ODK Aggregate</td>
<td>473</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Setting Up ODK Aggregate</td>
<td>475</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 Using ODK Aggregate</td>
<td>503</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 Tips and Best Practices</td>
<td>529</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 Google App Engine Support (Legacy)</td>
<td>539</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 Contributing to ODK Docs</td>
<td>545</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 OpenRosa</td>
<td>631</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 ODK JavaRosa</td>
<td>657</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 Launching ODK Collect from External Apps</td>
<td>659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 Briefcase Aggregate API</td>
<td>663</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 Encrypted Forms</td>
<td>669</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 Security and Privacy</td>
<td>677</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 Glossary</td>
<td>683</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ODK** is a suite of open source tools that help organizations collect and manage data.

For a quick start, read *Getting Started With ODK*. In most cases, users of ODK:

- Create survey forms using the XLSForm standard in Excel or Google Sheets.
- **Upload forms to an ODK Central server.**
- **Download forms into ODK Collect** on an Android device.
- Use Collect to fill out forms with participants.
- **Upload survey data** from Collect to Central.
- Analyze or export data from Central.

This requires:

- **Installing Collect on an Android device**
- **Installing Central on a server**

While this is the recommended workflow, it is not the only way to do things. ODK is a very flexible set of tools, and organizations will find their own best practices for adopting it.

Additional ODK tools are:

- **ODK Aggregate**, a proven server. We now generally recommend Central but those with existing Aggregate servers may choose to continue using them.
- **ODK Build**, a drag-and-drop form designer. We generally recommend XLSForm for its flexibility but users only building very simple forms may prefer Build.
- **ODK Briefcase**, a desktop tool that pulls and exports data from Aggregate and Collect.

The specifications and libraries that power the tools are:

- **OpenRosa**, APIs for how ODK clients communicate with ODK servers.
- **ODK XForms spec**, a subset of the W3C XForms specification, for use in the ODK ecosystem.
- **ODK JavaRosa**, a Java library that renders forms complying with ODK XForms.
- **XLSForm spec**, a high-level Excel-based form specification.
- **pyxform**, a Python library that converts XLSForms into ODK XForms.

For a complete list of our tools, check out [ODK on GitHub](https://github.com/GetODK).

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
GETTING STARTED WITH ODK

This document walks you through the recommended workflow to get started with ODK. You will:

- **Get a Central server**
- **Get the Collect app**
- **Create a form with XLSForm and upload it to Central**
- **Load a form into Collect from Central**
- **Fill out a form and upload it to Central**

### 1.1 Get a Central server

The easiest way to get a Central server is by using ODK Cloud. ODK Cloud provides fast Central servers with regular feature updates, automatic security patches, daily backups, uptime management, enterprise security, and guaranteed support on any issues.

If you are technical and prefer to self-host, we recommend you **install Central on DigitalOcean**.

### 1.2 Get the Collect app

The easiest way to get the Collect app is to download it from the **Google Play Store**. You can also **install manually** from an APK.
Chapter 1. Getting Started With ODK

1.3 Create a form with XLSForm and upload it to Central

1. Create a document in your favorite spreadsheet tool (Excel, Google Sheets, etc)
2. Design your form using XLSForm or try a sample XLSForm.
3. Upload the form to Central.

1.4 Load a form into Collect from Central

1. Find or create an App User in Central
2. Open Collect on your Android device
3. Tap Configure via QR code from the menu at the top right (Configure via QR code)
4. Scan the QR code from Central
5. Go back to the app home screen and select Get Blank Form, then select your form.

1.5 Fill out a form and upload it to Central

1. Select Fill Blank Form to complete a survey.
2. Select Send Finalized Form to upload your completed survey to Central.

Now log back into Central and see your completed survey results.
ODK Collect is an open source Android app that replaces paper forms used in survey-based data gathering. It supports a wide range of question and answer types, and is designed to work well without network connectivity.

ODK Collect renders forms into a sequence of input prompts that apply form logic, entry constraints, and repeating sub-structures. Users work through the prompts and can save the submission at any point. Finalized submissions can be sent to (and new forms downloaded from) a server.

Collect supports location, audio, images, video, barcodes, signatures, multiple-choice, free text, and numeric answers. It can even accept answers from other apps on your device. See a complete list of supported question types here.
2.1 Learn more about ODK Collect

- Setting Up ODK Collect
- Using ODK Collect
- Getting Started With ODK
3.1 Installing Collect

3.1.1 Installing from Google Play Store (recommended)

ODK Collect is available in the Google Play Store.

3.1.2 Installing manually

The Google Play Store always has the latest stable release.

If you need a different version of Collect, you can download from the web and install manually.

1. From your device’s Settings, choose Security.
   - Make sure Unknown Sources is checked.
   - (On older versions of Android, this setting is in Applications rather than Security)
2. Open a web browser on your phone.
3. Navigate to https://github.com/getodk/collect/releases/latest and download the ODK Collect APK.
4. In the download window, you will see ODK_Collect_vN.N.N.apk. - Select it to download the file.
   - On older devices, the APK will automatically install after you approve the security settings.
   - On newer devices, you must go to the download list, rename the file to restore the .apk extension (the extension will have been renamed to .man during the download process), then click on it to install it.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Note: You can also download the ODK Collect APK to your computer and load it on your device via adb or another tool like AirDroid.

Note: On older Android devices (4.0 and earlier), ODK Collect required an external SD Card. This is no longer an issue because Android devices have internal storage. Virtually all current Android devices will run ODK Collect.

Tip: You can install ODK Collect on the Android emulator. This is especially helpful if you need to project Collect onto a screen.

### 3.1.3 Understanding permissions

The ODK Collect application requires permissions to access device resources.

If your device runs a version of Android below 6, you will be prompted to accept all of the permissions on app install.

If your device runs Android 6 or above, permissions will be requested as they are needed. For example, the camera permission will only be requested the first time that you try to take a picture. Once the permission is granted, you won’t be prompted again. If you deny the permission, you will be asked again the next time you try to access the feature that requires the permission unless you check “Don’t ask me again.” If you deny the permission, you will be shown a dialog explaining why the permission is needed.

The only permission that is required for using Collect is the storage permission and it will be requested on first launch on Android 6+. Other permissions may or may not be needed depending on the forms and features used. The permissions that may be requested by Collect are:
3.2. Connecting to a Server

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>required for Collect to be able to access and save form data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>required by <em>image</em> and <em>video</em> questions to capture new media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contacts</td>
<td>required to configure a Google account for Google Drive, Google Sheets submissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>required for <em>location</em> questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microphone</td>
<td>required by <em>audio</em> and <em>video</em> questions to capture new media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone</td>
<td>optional on form send to include deviceID in the submission and required for forms that capture <em>device metadata</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Changing permissions from settings in Android 6+**

If you are setting up Collect for someone who is not familiar with Android, you may want to make sure all required permissions are granted in advance. To do this, open the Settings application and tap on the Apps heading. You should now see a list of all your installed applications. Scroll down to find ODK Collect and tap on it to see details about Collect. Tap on the Permissions heading. You can now grant all of the permissions that will be needed.

You can also use Settings application to grant a permission after denying it or to revoke a previously-granted permission.

3.2 Connecting to a Server

ODK Collect is used to fill forms with participants. Filled forms then need to be sent to a central location for review and analysis. Generally, organizations do this by configuring Collect to send forms to a server. For those working in environments without any internet connectivity, there are other options.

When you first install Collect, it connects to a demo server. This allows you to try out the app by downloading blank example forms, filling them out, and uploading completed forms back to the demo server.

Once you are done trying out Collect, you will need a plan for managing forms and data submissions. We recommend using *ODK Central* and configuring Collect by QR code. *Central* provides user and project management features as well as tools for viewing and exporting data. For complex data collection projects, it is usually the right choice. Organizations can choose to use their own infrastructure and have total control over their server configuration. However, setting up and maintaining a server requires technical skills.

Simple projects can choose to send data directly to Google Sheets.
3.2.1 Configure server from QR code

1. From the Action Button ( ), select *Configure via QR code*

2. Position the QR code in the center of the camera field, under the red line. When the camera focuses on the code, it will beep and scan the code.

3. Collect will apply the settings from the code and go back to the landing screen.

See also:

- *Setting Up ODK Central*
- *Central App Users*
- *Configuring Collect via QR code*

3.2.2 Configure server from settings

1. From the Action Button ( ), select *General Settings*
3.2. Connecting to a Server

2. Select *Server*
3. Make sure ODK is selected under Type and then fill in the URL, Username and Password for your server:
3.2. Connecting to a Server

3.2.3 Other options

Connecting to a Google Drive Account

**Warning:** Spreadsheets have cell limits (currently 5 million) above which errors will be reported.

1. From the Action Button ( ), select *General Settings*
2. Select Server
3.2. Connecting to a Server

3. Select *Type*, and set it to *Google Drive, Google Sheets*
4. Select your *Google Account*. You can select any account which is already linked with your device or add a new account as well.
3.2. Connecting to a Server

5. **Optional:** Set a *Fallback submission URL*

When using Collect with a Google account, form submissions will be posted to a Google Sheet specified in the form.

You have the option to specify a *Fallback submission URL*. This is the URL of a Google sheet to which form submissions will be posted if the submitted form does not specify its own URL.

If your forms will specify a submission URL, you can leave this setting empty. Otherwise, enter the URL of a Google sheet you would like to use.

**Using Android Debug Bridge with Collect**

Android Debug Bridge is a tool that provides command-line access to a USB-connected Android device. It can be used to move files between the device and your computer, install applications, and take screenshots and videos. When connected to a device that has ODK Collect installed, it can be used to push blank form definitions and pull completed forms.

**Installing and setting up ADB**

**Android Studio**

The easiest and most well-supported way to install ADB is to install Android Studio, which includes ADB. After installing, you’ll need to enable USB Debugging.

**Standalone ADB**

You can also install ADB without Android studio. This is not well supported, though, and should only be done if you cannot install Android Studio on your computer.

**Managing forms with ADB**

Form definitions are stored on the device in the `forms` subdirectory of your Collect directory.

**Loading blank forms**

```
$ adb push local/path/to/form.xml <collect-directory>/forms/form.xml
```
Chapter 3. Setting Up ODK Collect

**Note:** The target path on the phone (the last part of the command) must include the file name.

### Deleting forms

```
$ adb shell rm -d <collect-directory>/forms/form.xml
```

### Downloading forms to your computer

To download all filled records from a device:

```
$ adb pull <collect-directory>/instances/*
```

### Developer tasks and troubleshooting with ADB

### Downloading Collect databases

Collect stores form definition and form record state information in a few SQLite databases, which you can pull onto your local computer.

```
$ adb pull <collect-directory>/metadata/*.db
```

### Taking screenshots

```
$ adb exec-out screencap /sdcard/image-name.png
```

To pull the saved image locally:

```
$ adb pull /sdcard/image-name.png
```

**Note:** ODK Docs contributors can use the *screenshot utility script*, which wraps the `adb` commands and assists with saving the images to the correct location and inserting appropriate markup in the documentation source.
### 3.2. Connecting to a Server

#### Recording video

$ adb shell screenrecord /sdcard/video-name.mp4

When you hit *Enter*, the video starts recording immediately.

To stop the recording, press **CTRL-C**. If you don’t interrupt the recording, it will stop after three minutes.

To pull the video locally:

$ adb pull /sdcard/video-name.png

#### Capturing logs for debugging

##### Capturing in-progress logs with logcat

If you are experiencing crashes or other serious glitches, and you can reproduce the bug, use `adb logcat` to capture log events during the crash.

1. Before reproducing the bug, begin piping logs to a file:

   adb logcat > logfile.txt

   This will write all logged errors to your local file `logfile.txt` as they occur.

2. Reproduce the bug or crash event.

3. Type **CTRL-C** to stop logging.

You can then upload the `logfile.txt` file to a support forum post or post in the ODK Forum.

##### Pull a bug report

If more in-depth information is needed, you can pull a complete bug report from the device.

adb bugreport

This copies a ZIP file locally containing all system messages, error logs, and diagnostic output, along with information about the device’s hardware, firmware, and operating system.

**See also:**

Chapter 3. Setting Up ODK Collect

Identifying the Collect directory on your device

The ODK Collect directory on your device is:

- `/sdcard/odk` if you are running an ODK Collect version less than v1.26.0 or have a file migration banner on the main screen
- `/sdcard/Android/data/org.odk.collect.android/files` if you have ODK Collect version v1.26.0+ and don’t have a file migration banner on the main screen

Prior to ODK Collect v1.26.0, all Collect files were stored in the `/sdcard/odk` directory. This directory was available to other applications to integrate with which can be very useful but can pose privacy risks.

Starting August 2020, Google will no longer allow Android applications to read or write files directly to this folder. Instead, each application will only be able to write files to a special directory that only it has access to. You can read more about this change on the forum.

Using ODK Briefcase

Pulling forms

To pull blank forms and submissions:

1. Open the Pull tab.
2. Select a pull source option from the Pull from drop-down, and click on the Configure button. Fill in any information needed to use the selected source.
   
   See more on the various sources below.
3. Select the forms you want to pull and click Pull.
   
   You can see the details of the operation by clicking on the button.
4. You can cancel an ongoing pull operation at any point by clicking Cancel.

Central server

Briefcase will ask for the following information when choosing a Central server as the pull source:

- A URL
- A Project ID number
- An Email address
3.2. Connecting to a Server

- A Password

**Warning:** The *Start pull from last submission pulled* setting will have no effect while pulling forms from a Central server.

**Tip:** See *Using Central with Briefcase* for more on the limitations of using Briefcase with Central.

**Aggregate server**

Briefcase will ask for the following information when setting an Aggregate server as the pull source:

- A *URL*
- A *Username* (optional)
- A *Password* (optional)

**Collect directory**

Briefcase will ask for the directory on your computer where you have placed Collect’s `/odk` directory. We recommend following these steps to get a copy of Collect’s `/odk` directory into your computer:

1. Ensure all filled-in forms are finalized.
   
   If you have incomplete forms that you cannot finalize before pulling into Briefcase, delete them. If you need to keep them, make a copy of your *Collect directory* before deleting them, and restore it after you are finished.

2. Using your device, create a zip archive of your *Collect directory* with a file managing app such as *OI File Manager*.

3. Transfer the zip file to your local hard drive via a USB cable. You can also use the Share feature in your file manager to transfer it to a third-party service like Google Drive then download it to your local hard drive.

4. Once the zip file is on your local hard drive, unzip the file.
Warning: When pulling from Collect, Briefcase pulls incomplete, saved, or finalized forms. After you pull forms into Briefcase, it is important that you delete them from Collect. Otherwise, the next time you pull, you will create duplicates.

Tip: If you have Android developer tools installed, another option is to use the Android Debug Bridge to pull filled forms:

$$\text{adb pull } <\text{collect-directory}>/\text{instances}$$

Form definition

Briefcase will ask for the location of the blank form definition in your computer.

Warning: Ensure that all attached media is available relative to the form definition file location.

Tip: This enables a workflow to upload blank form definitions with many media attachments to Aggregate:

1. Pull the form using the Pull from option.
2. Push the form to your Aggregate server.

Pushing forms

To push blank forms and submissions:

1. Open the Push tab.
2. Select a push target option from the Push to drop-down, and click on the Configure button. Fill in any information needed to use the selected source. See more on the various targets below.
3. Select the forms you want to push and click Push.

You can see the details of the operation by clicking on the button.
4. You can cancel an ongoing push operation at any point by clicking Cancel.
3.2. Connecting to a Server

**Central server**

Briefcase will ask for the following information when using a Central server as the push target:

- A URL
- A Project ID number
- An Email address
- A Password

**Warning:** Pushing forms and submissions to Central currently has the following limitations:

- Central will reject files that might have already been pushed before, even if they’re different the second time.
- Central will reject submissions belonging to a form version that it doesn’t know about.

**Aggregate server**

Briefcase will ask for the following information when using an Aggregate server as the push source:

- A URL
- A Username (optional)
- A Password (optional)

**Pull and push settings**

The settings for push and pull can be configured in the Settings tab:

- You can set a number of Maximum simultaneous HTTP connections. This can be increased to speed-up big pull operations or decreased to prevent saturating server bandwidth.
- You can enable Start pull from last submission pulled to save time and bandwidth by not pulling from the first submission.
  - This is only available for Aggregate servers at this moment and only benefits forms with more than 100 submissions.
You can clear the pull history and pull every submission by clicking on *Clear pull history*.

- You can enable *Remember passwords (unencrypted)*. This will enable a couple of features:
  - Briefcase will remember the pull sources and push targets you configure when they require user credentials. As a result, you won’t need to configure them when launching Briefcase again.
  - Briefcase will let you enable the *Pull before export* option when exporting forms.

- You can enable *Use HTTP proxy* to route your HTTP requests through a proxy host. You will have to provide the proxy’s *Host* (IP address or hostname), and the *Port* number.

### Export forms to CSV

1. Open the *Export* tab.
2. Click on the *Set Default Configuration* button.
   - Set an *Export directory*.
   - If exporting *Encrypted Forms*, set the corresponding *PEM file location*. See the *Encrypted forms section* for more information.
   - If you wish, select a *Start date* and an *End date* to specify a limited date range to export.

- Toggle export parameters as needed:
  - *Export media files* enables exporting media files into the chosen export directory
  - *Overwrite existing files* enables overwriting form submission data in the output files. The default behavior is to append data.
  - *Split select multiples* enables splitting select multiple fields. Enabling this setting will create an extra output column per select choice, with a 1 if the choice was selected, or 0 otherwise. This only affects select fields without a choice filter and that are not from an external file (including widgets with search appearance).
  - *Include GeoJSON* enables generating a GeoJSON file with spatial data from all exported submissions.
  - *Remove group names* enables removing non-repeat group names from column names in the CSV.
  - *Pull before export* enables trying to pull the selected forms in case there are new form submissions to be exported.
3.2. Connecting to a Server

1. Select the forms to export.

   If you are selecting and exporting more than one form, you may need to set individual export settings. To do this, click the gear icon ( ) next to the form name.

2. Click Export.

Tip: To import CSVs into Excel, you cannot download and open in one step; nor can you double-click on the CSV. You must open Excel and choose Import. If you are asked, the file origin or encoding is UTF-8.

Output files

Briefcase will generate a different number of files and directories depending on the form’s contents and the export configuration selected by the user. This can include, per form:

- One main CSV file. For example: Form Name.csv

- If the form includes any repeat group, one CSV file for each one of them. For example: Form Name-repeat group name.csv

- If any submission includes binary attachments, they are copied to a media directory, relative to the export directory. For example: media/1538040007350.jpg

- If the user enables the Include GeoJSON export configuration option, one GeoJSON file with spatial data. For example: Form Name.geojson

- If the form includes audit metadata:
  - One CSV file with audit data from all submissions. For example: Form Name-audit.csv
  - One CSV audit file for each exported submission in the media directory, relative to the export directory. For example: media/audit-uuid56880d5e-e8a-4832-b69d-6dfdd526e2dc.csv

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Table 3.1: Summary Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output file</th>
<th>How many?</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Path</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main CSV</td>
<td>One</td>
<td></td>
<td>./</td>
<td>Form Name.csv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat CSV</td>
<td>One per repeat group</td>
<td></td>
<td>./</td>
<td>Form Name-repeat group name.csv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary attachment</td>
<td>As many as there are in submissions</td>
<td></td>
<td>./media</td>
<td>media/1538040007350.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeoJSON</td>
<td>One</td>
<td>The user enables Include GeoJSON export</td>
<td>./</td>
<td>Form Name.geojson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit CSV</td>
<td>One</td>
<td>The form includes audit metadata</td>
<td>./</td>
<td>Form Name - audit.csv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual audit CSV</td>
<td>One per submission</td>
<td>The form includes audit metadata</td>
<td>./media</td>
<td>audit-uuid56880d5e-ee8a-4832-b69d-6dfdd526e2dc.csv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There’s more information available about the CSV file content structure and filename patterns in the export format documentation.

**Working with the command line**

Briefcase has a command line interface (CLI) to enable scripting of many of the actions that can be taken in the graphical user interface (GUI).

New in version 1.4.4: A CLI was added.

New in version 1.9.0: The CLI first takes an operation parameter and then modifiers to that operation

**Getting CLI help**

To get help about the command line operation:

```
$ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --help
```

**Pulling forms from Aggregate**

- CLI flag: `-pla` or `-pull_aggregate`
- Usage:
3.2. Connecting to a Server

```
$ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --pull_aggregate --storage_directory {path/to/briefcase-storage-location} --aggregate_url {aggregate-url} --odk_username {username} --odk_password {password}
```

- Help section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Params for -plla operation:</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-p,--odk_password &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>ODK Password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sd,--storage_directory &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>Briefcase storage directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-u,--odk_username &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>ODK Username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-url,--aggregate_url &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>Aggregate server URL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional params for -plla operation:
- -id,--form_id <arg> Form ID
- -ii,--include_incomplete Include incomplete submissions
- -mhc,--max_http_connections <arg> Maximum simultaneous HTTP connections (defaults to 8)
- -sfd,--start_from_date <arg> Start pull from date
- -sfl,--start_from_last Start pull from last submission

**Warning:** This CLI operation will pull all forms Briefcase has permissions to if no -id parameter is defined.

Pulling forms from Collect

This command assumes you have already copied and unzipped the `odk` file as described here.

- CLI flag: -pc or -pull_collect
- Usage:

```
$ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --pull_collect --storage_directory {path/to/briefcase-storage-location} --odk_directory {path/to/unzipped-odk-file}
```

- Help section:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Params for -pc operation:</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-od,--odk_directory &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>ODK directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sd,--storage_directory &lt;arg&gt;</td>
<td>Briefcase storage directory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional params for -pc operation:
- -id,--form_id <arg> Form ID
Warning: This CLI operation will **pull all forms** present on the odk directory if no `-id` parameter is defined.

### Pushing forms to Aggregate

- **CLI flag:** `-psha` or `-push_aggregate`
- **Usage:**
  ```
  $ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --push_aggregate --form_id {form-id} --storage_directory {path/to/briefcase-storage-location} --aggregate_url {aggregate-url} --odk_username {username} --odk_password {password}
  ```
  
  **Help section:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Param</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>-id,--form_id &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>Form ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-p,--odk_password &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>ODK Password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-sd,--storage_directory &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>Briefcase storage directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-u,--odk_username &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>ODK Username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-url,--aggregate_url &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>Aggregate server URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-fsb,--force_send_blank</code></td>
<td>Force sending the blank form to the Aggregate instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-mhc,--max_http_connections &lt;arg&gt;</code></td>
<td>Maximum simultaneous HTTP connections (defaults to 8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Warning: This CLI operation will only update the blank form if it does not already exist, whereas the GUI will always update the form.

### Exporting forms to CSV

- **CLI flag:** `-e` or `-export`
- **Usage:**
  ```
  $ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --export --form_id {form-id} --storage_directory {path/to/briefcase-storage-location} --export_directory {path/to/output-directory} --export_filename {output-file-name.csv}
  ```
  
  **Help section:**

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
### 3.2. Connecting to a Server

**Params for -e operation:**
- `-ed,--export_directory <arg>` Export directory
- `-f,--export_filename <arg>` Filename for export operation
- `-id,--form_id <arg>` Form ID
- `-sd,--storage_directory <arg>` Briefcase storage directory

**Optional params for -e operation:**
- `-em,--exclude_media_export` Exclude media in export
- `-end,--export_end_date <arg>` Export end date (inclusive) (yyyy-MM-dd or yyyy/MM/dd)
- `-ig,--include_geojson` Include a GeoJSON file with spatial data
- `-oc,--overwrite_csv_export` Overwrite files during export
- `-pb,--pull_before` Pull before export
- `-pf,--pem_file <arg>` PEM file for form decryption
- `-rgn,--remove_group_names` Remove group names from column names
- `-ssm,--split_select_multiples` Split select multiple fields
- `-start,--export_start_date <arg>` Export start date (inclusive) (yyyy-MM-dd or yyyy/MM/dd)

**Clear saved preferences**

- **CLI flag:** `-c` or `--clear_prefs`
- **Usage:**

```
$ java -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file} --clear_prefs
```

**Briefcase log files**

Briefcase creates a log file with warnings and errors that might be useful for troubleshooting.

**Default log file location**

If something goes wrong while using Briefcase and you look for help, it’s possible that you’re asked to provide your log file.

The default location for the log file is the directory where you are when launching Briefcase, and the default filename is "briefcase.log"

Briefcase will create the log file on launch if it doesn’t previously exist. Otherwise, it will append lines at the end of a pre-existing log file.
How to use a custom log configuration

Optionally, you can use a custom log configuration file to override the default log settings on Briefcase.

First, you need to create a ”logback.xml” file somewhere in your computer to contain your custom log configuration. This is a sample configuration file you can use as a template:

```xml
<configuration>
  <appender name="ROLLINGFILE" class="ch.qos.logback.core.rolling.RollingFileAppender">
    <file>briefcase.log</file>
    <rollingPolicy class="ch.qos.logback.core.rolling.TimeBasedRollingPolicy">
      <fileNamePattern>briefcase.%d{yyyy-MM-dd}.log</fileNamePattern>
      <maxHistory>30</maxHistory>
      <totalSizeCap>100MB</totalSizeCap>
    </rollingPolicy>
    <encoder>
      <pattern>%d [%thread] %-5level %logger{36} - %msg%n</pattern>
    </encoder>
  </appender>

  <root level="info">
    <appender-ref ref="ROLLINGFILE" />
  </root>
</configuration>
```

Check the full syntax of Logback configuration files [here](https://docs.getodk.org).

You can set all sorts of new log configurations to adapt Briefcase to your needs:

- Set a fixed log file location
- Fine tune the log’s verbosity by setting a different log level
- Silence specific log lines while keeping others
- Set a custom log format (see the Encoders chapter)
- Set custom appenders, to define a file rolling policy (daily, by log file size, for example), for example (see the Appenders chapter)

Once you have your configuration file ready, you can use it by adding a `-Dlogging.config` argument when launching Briefcase:

```
$ java -Dlogging.config="{path/to/logback.xml}" -jar {path/to/briefcase-jar-file}
```
3.3 Configuring ODK Collect

ODK Collect is intended to be a flexible tool that can support many different types of data collection workflows. For many organizations, the only configuration needed will be *connecting to a server*. However, there are many cases where additional configuration is helpful. *Collect Menus, Settings, and Security* describes all of the settings available in the application.

To configure multiple devices, we recommend generating a QR code with settings from one device or an external application as described in *Configuring Collect via QR code* and then scanning that code from the devices that need to be configured. Starting in ODK Collect v1.26.0, there is quick access to scan a settings QR code from the main screen:
Chapter 3. Setting Up ODK Collect

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
CHAPTER
FOUR

USING ODK COLLECT

This is an in-depth guide to using the Collect App

To learn about the main features and try out ODK, see the Getting Started Guide for a quick walk-through.

ODK Collect is used by enumerators to collect survey data by filling out forms with participants.

To use ODK Collect:

1. Get blank forms from a server or Google Drive
2. Fill out surveys with participants
3. Upload completed surveys to a server or Google Drive

ODK Collect User Guide

4.1 Managing Forms in Collect

See also:
For an overview on forms and form design, see Intro to Forms in ODK.

4.1.1 Loading Blank Forms

A blank form is a .xml file containing a form definition consistent with the XForm specification. Blank forms can be created using ODK Build or XLSForm.

In order to fill out forms with survey participants, you must first load blank forms into the Collect App.
Loading Forms from a server

If you have connected ODK Collect to a server or Google Drive Account:

1. Select *Get blank forms* on the app home screen to browse available forms and download them to your device.

2. Find and download forms.
   - If you are using a server, you will see a list of available forms. Select the ones you would like download, and tap *Get Selected*. 

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

Note: Before downloading blank forms from your server to Collect, a form has to be uploaded. See *Form Management in ODK Central*.

- If you are using Google Drive, the **Get Blank Form** screen will display the folders in your Google Drive account and any XML documents. Select and download the forms you want.
Warning: All XML documents in Google Drive will appear in Collect. XML documents will be listed even if they are not valid XForms.
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

And you can actually download any XML document, even if it isn’t a real XForm.
But you can’t Fill Out a non-form.
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

Loading forms directly

Loading forms with adb

You can load forms directly from a computer to your device’s Collect directory via USB, using Android Debug Bridge.

```
$ adb push path/to/form.xml <collect-directory>/forms/form.xml
```

Loading forms from device storage

You can also download forms to your device via a web browser, and move them to the forms/ directory, using the device’s file manager (Settings -> Storage & USB -> Explore).

1. Go to the Settings menu ( ) on your device and find Storage & USB
2. From the internal storage screen, select Explore to open the file manager.
Fig. 4.1: The settings menu may look different on your device.
Fig. 4.2: The *Explore* option opens a file manager that you can use to move forms into Collect.
Loading form media

If a form includes images or other media, those files have to be loaded to the device along with the form.

Media files must be placed in a folder labeled \textit{form-name-media}.

- When using ODK Central, first upload your form definition. Central will then prompt you to add media files if necessary. The files are downloaded automatically when fetching blank forms.

- When using Google Drive, the \texttt{-media} folder should be uploaded to the same location as the form. If you share forms with another user, you need to share the parent folder which contains a form and a folder with media files. Sharing both of them separately wouldn’t be enough.

- If loading forms directly to your device, the \texttt{-media} folder needs to be placed in the \texttt{forms} subdirectory of your Collect directory, alongside the form itself.

4.1.2 Editing Saved Forms

Completed (filled-in) form instances can be edited after they have been saved.

1. Select \textit{Edit Saved Form}
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

2. Select a form by name

This will reopen the form instance, which you are then free to edit. Form instances are listed by name, which is one reason it can be helpful to *name the form instance after filling it out*.

Note:

- Sent forms will not appear in the *Edit Saved Forms* list.
- Sent forms will be available for viewing in *View Sent Forms* list, along with the details which cannot be edited.
- You may freely edit Saved and Finalized forms.

4.1.3 Transferring Finalized Forms

To perform analysis on data collected with the Collect app, you will need to get the filled forms off of the devices. Generally, this is done by uploading them to an ODK server or Google Sheets. To do this, you will first need to *configure a server*.

In some cases, you may want to *pull filled forms directly from a device*. This can be simpler than setting up a server if you are only using a small number of devices or when there is no Internet access. It can also be helpful to recover from submission failures.
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

Sending Finalized Forms to a Server

If you are connected to a server or Google Drive Account, use Send Finalized Forms to upload Finalized form instances.

Uploading a filled form from within the Collect app marks that form as sent. Sent forms are no longer editable, but they remain viewable until they are deleted.

Note: Blank values in the form are sent to google sheets as cells with a space and not as empty cells. When you are testing for empty cells, you might not get the correct results. To make sure you get the correct results, you could:

• Use the TRIM function in the google sheets to remove the leading and trailing spaces from the cells.

• Define empty cell in your tests to be a cell that is either empty or contains a single space.

Values from questions: text, select_multiple and barcode will be preceded by an apostrophe. This prevents Google Sheets from guessing at the data type and applying a format that may not be appropriate (e.g. making 1940 10 5 into a date when it actually is the value of a select multiple). Raw values may be used in any kind of computation and the apostrophes only are visible when editing a value. You may choose to manually apply a format for certain
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

columns if desired.

**Note:** Using Google Drive as a server, filled forms are sent to the first sheet in a given spreadsheet, no matter what its name is. If you use one spreadsheet to keep a form definition and to collect filled forms make sure the sheet you expect to be filled is in the first place.

### Sending Previously-Sent Forms

If you can’t find a submission that you expect on your server or need to re-send a submission for other reasons, you can change the view of the *Send Finalized Forms* screen to show both sent and unsent forms.

To show sent and unsent forms: → *Change View* → *Show Sent and Unsent Forms*

### Pulling Forms into Briefcase

*ODK Briefcase* is a desktop application that can be used to pull filled forms to your local computer. You will first need to transfer the filled forms to your computer. This will not update the state of the form to Sent.

### 4.1.4 Deleting Forms

**Warning:** In versions prior to v1.28, deleting a blank form makes it impossible to edit filled instances of that form.

In Collect v1.28 and later, filled instances of forms will still be editable after their blank form is deleted. This means that the form definition and media files will remain on the device until all the filled instances have been deleted.
You can delete Blank forms as well as filled forms in any state (Saved, Finalized, or Sent). Deleting a Sent form deletes the form contents but metadata associated with it including the deletion date and the instance name are maintained for display in the View Sent Form list.

1. Select Delete Saved Form on the app home screen.

2. Select the Saved Forms or Blank Forms tab.

Note: Deleted Forms are listed in the View Sent Forms page, but cannot be viewed. They are indicated with the crossed-out eye icon.
4.1. Managing Forms in Collect

Fig. 4.3: The Saved Forms tab lists form instances that are saved, finalized, or sent.
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

Fig. 4.4: The Blank Forms tab lists blank forms.
4.2 Filling out Forms with Collect

Deleting Forms with adb

You can also *delete form instances directly with Android Debug Bridge*. They are stored in the `instances` subdirectory of your `Collect` directory, with a directory for each instance.

4.2 Filling out Forms with Collect

ODK Collect is used by *enumerators* to complete survey *forms* with *participants*.

Before you get started...

Before you can fill out a form, you need to *load at least one form into Collect*.

1. Select *Fill Blank Form* from the Main Menu
2. Select a form to fill out from the form list
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

3. Once you have completed the form, prepare it for upload by finalizing it.

4.2.1 Answering questions

Free response

Free-entry text and number answers are entered using the device keyboard. The appropriate keyboard (letters or numbers) opens when the question appears.

Video showing text keyboard popup when a string input is required and number keyboard popup when a number input is required.

Select response

Questions with response choices can be answered by touching the selected items. These include radio buttons (single-select), dropdowns (single-select), check boxes (multi-select), and image choices (single and multi-select).

Fig. 4.5: Radio buttons accept one selection.
Fig. 4.6: Check boxes accept multiple answers.
Fig. 4.7: Select images by touching them.
Capture answer from device

Many question formats launch additional features, form widgets, or apps to collect an answer. This includes audio and video recording, signature collection, photo capture, date and time widgets, location widgets, and barcodes.

In all cases, buttons below the question text will guide you through providing the response.
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
See also:

For a (mostly) complete guide to form question appearance, see Question Types.

### 4.2.2 Removing answers

To remove a response, Long Press on the question label.
4.2.3 Adding instances of repeats

If you have a repeating group, you can add new instances of that repeat in the following ways:

1. By *navigating* into an empty repeat, or to the next question at the very end of the repeat, you will automatically be prompted to add a new instance of that repeat.

2. By clicking the ”add” button while in a repeat:
3. By clicking the “add” button in the jump menu:
4.2.4 Removing instances of repeats

If you have a repeating group, you can remove existing instances of that repeat in the following ways:

1. By long pressing on the question label in the same way as for removing answers
2. By clicking the "remove" button in the jump menu:

4.2.5 Navigating the form

Note: Since Collect v1.29, both swiping and button navigation are enabled by default on new installations. Prior to Collect v1.29 or for existing installations, only swiping was enabled by default.

Swipe

To move between questions, Swipe Left or Right.
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

Next and Back Buttons

If you prefer Next and Back buttons for navigation, you can change your navigation mode in -> General Settings -> User Interface.

1. Open the Action Menu ( )
2. Select *General Settings*.
3. Select *User Interface*

![User Interface](image)

4. Select *Navigation*
5. Update your form navigation preference
Jumping to questions

The arrow icon (▲) in the top right corner opens the jump menu. From the jump menu, you can go to any question or go to the beginning/ending of the form.
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

If you’re inside of a group of questions, you can navigate ”up” in the hierarchy using the ”go up” button:
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

The jump menu also provides shortcuts to add or remove instances of repeating groups.

**Note:** If a form contains questions in a repeats, those questions will only appear in the Jump menu once an actual record is created.

**Autoadvance Questions**

Some questions will automatically advance to the next question after being answered. Video showing auto-advance after the questions are answered.

**Required Questions**

Required questions will not allow you to advance unless answered.
4.2.6 Changing language of a form

If a form is available in multiple languages, you can choose a language in which you want the questions to appear.

1. Open the Action Menu ( )
2. Select *Change Language.*
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

Note: Change Language option is only visible if a form is available in more than one language.

3. Select the language you want the form questions to appear in.

4.2.7 Saving a partially filled form

If you wish to save a partially filled form, you can click on the save icon ( ) beside the form name.
To edit the saved form, select Edit Saved Form in the Main Menu and select the form you wish to edit.

### 4.2.8 Completing a Form

Once you have reached the end of a form, you will have the opportunity to Save and Exit the form.
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

At this point, you may also:

**Name the form**

The last form screen provides a default name for the form (defined by the form designer). You can rename it. This name only applies to that particular instance of a completed form (not to the blank form).
The Form Name identifies the form in lists throughout the app. For this reason, a meaningful name may be important to you. After you’ve saved the name, the form automatically moves to the *Send Finalized Form* section, from where you can send it.
4.2. Filling out Forms with Collect

Mark the form as *Finalized*

Only Finalized forms can be *uploaded to a server*.
4.3 Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

4.3.1 Main Menu

*Fill Blank Form* Lists available blank forms and lets you select a form to begin filling out.

*Edit Saved Form* Lists completed and saved forms and lets you select a form to edit.

*Send Finalized Form* Lists finalized but unsent forms and lets you select forms to send to the server.

*View Sent Form* Lists forms that have been sent, even if they were deleted.

*Get Blank form* Lists blank forms available on the server and lets you download them.

*Delete Saved Form* Lists all the Saved and Blank Forms and lets you delete them.

4.3.2 General Settings

To access General Settings: → *General Settings*
Server Settings

Server settings configure the connection to an OpenRosa server (Central, etc) or a Google Drive account.

To access Server Settings: → General Settings → Server
See also:

*Connecting to a Server*

**User Interface Settings**

User Interface settings control Collect’s appearance and behavior.

**To access User Interface settings:** → *General Settings* → *User Interface*
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

*Theme*

Toggles Light and Dark themes.

New in version 1.15.
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

**Language**

Forces the Collect interface to use a specific language. By default, Collect matches the device language. Note that this only sets the language for the Collect interface and not for form contents. For multi-language forms, the form language is set while filling out that form. The Collect translations are provided by the ODK community through the Transifex service. You can join Transifex to add or correct translations in your language.

**Text font size**

Sets the size of fonts used in the form-filling interface.

**Navigation**

Sets form navigation style for moving between questions.

Options:
- Horizontal swiping
- Forward and back buttons
- Both

**Splash Screen**

Sets an image to display while Collect loads.

**Maps Settings**

Maps settings configure the maps shown by the location question types.

To access Maps settings: → General Settings → Maps

**Note:** Prior to ODK Collect v1.23, map settings were available in the User Interface Settings. The basemap was configured by first selecting a Mapping SDK and then a Basemap.
Baseline settings

Baseline settings configure the background of maps shown by the location question types. Basemaps are provided by several different Sources which may each make several different map Styles available. A basemap is intended to provide details that help users orient a map and to make the map easy to use in a particular data collection environment. For example, if the data to be collected relates to elevation, consider selecting a topographic basemap.

**Sources** A basemap source provides one or more map styles:

- *Google* basemap styles are used by Google Maps and other Google products.
- *Mapbox* basemap styles are used in many familiar products.
- *OpenStreetMap* provides one style which also powers openstreetmap.org. OpenStreetMap data is used in basemaps provided by all other sources as well.
- *USGS* is the United States Geological Survey. It provides topographic and satellite basemaps for the United States only.
- *Stamen* provides a terrain basemap with large labels.
- *Carto* basemap styles are designed to be used with data layers.

Reference layer settings

Reference layer settings configure map data shown on top of the basemap. Currently, a reference layer can only be defined by an offline MBTiles file as described in Using Offline Maps. The reference layer will appear when the zoom level is within the range supported by the file. If a reference layer has no transparency, it will fully cover the basemap selected above and behave like an offline basemap. Vector MBTiles files will only be available in the Layer data file menu if a Mapbox basemap is selected. Raster MBTiles files will be available for any basemap source and style.

Form Management Settings

Form Management settings control default behavior when editing, finalizing, and importing forms.

To access Form Management settings: General Settings → Form Management
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Form update

Blank form update mode

Specifies how blank forms should be updated:

- **Manually** The default mode in Collect. Enumerators manually manage blank forms on the device using *Get Blank Form* and *Delete Saved Form*.

- **Previously downloaded forms only** Enumerators will receive a notification when one or more forms on the device have an update available to their form definition or media files. Tapping on the notification will go to *Get Blank Form* where the user can choose to download some or all of the updated forms.

- **Exactly match server** Collect will automatically download and update forms based on what’s on the server. In addition, forms not on the server will be deleted from Collect. This mode hides *Get Blank Form* and the *Blank Forms* tab in *Delete Saved Form* as they are not required. The enumerator can trigger an update from the server on the *Fill Blank Form* screen. Filled instances of blank forms deleted during server updates will still be editable.

**Tip:** If your server is configured to provide the exact set of forms enumerators need and you’d like to ensure they always have the most up to date versions on device then we’d recommend using *Exactly match server*.

However, if your server is set up to provide forms that aren’t relevant to every enumerator then we’d recommend using *Previously downloaded forms only* (ideally with *Automatic download*) so that enumerators are still notified when the forms they do use are updated.

*Manually* makes the most sense when forms only need to be downloaded once and will never change or if you are extremely bandwidth-limited.

Automatic update frequency

Specifies how frequently Collect should check for updates to the forms on the server when using *Previously downloaded forms only* or *Exactly match server*. This option is not available if *Manually* is selected.

Automatic download

Only available if *Previously downloaded forms only* is selected. When *Automatic download* is enabled, the form update check will trigger an automatic download.
of any forms on the device that have updated definitions or media files. The user will receive a notification when the automatic download completes with either a success or failure. Tapping on the notification will go to *Get Blank Form* where the user will see success or failure messages for each form for which an update was attempted.

**Hide old form versions**

When enabled, if there are multiple versions of the same form, only the most recently downloaded will be displayed on the *Fill Blank Form* screen.

**Form submission**

**Auto send**

When enabled, forms are sent immediately when they are finalized, if the device can connect to the internet. If an internet connection is not available at the time of finalization, your finalized forms will be queued to send as soon as connectivity is established. You can specify whether to send over WiFi, cellular data, or both.

**Delete after send**

When enabled, form instances are deleted once they are sent.

**Form filling**

**Default to finalized**

When enabled, records are set to be finalized when saved at the end of a form-filling session. You can opt out of this at the end of filling any specific record. This is particularly important to consider when using *encrypted forms* because encryption happens on finalization. Finalized records for encrypted forms can’t be opened because they are encrypted. Records for encrypted forms that have not been finalized are not encrypted and can be edited.

**Constraint processing**

Sets when form responses are validated against *constraints*.

Options:
• Upon forward swipe. (That is, right after the question is answered.)
• At finalization.

**High res video**

When enabled, *Video widgets* widgets will record high resolution video if possible.

**Image size**

New in version 1.11.0.

Sets the default maximum size for images added to forms, as measured by the number of pixels on the longest edge. Images larger than the maximum are scaled down immediately after being added.

Options:

*Original size from camera (default)* Images are unchanged when added to a form. Recommended for use only when images must contain a lot of detail and when the internet connection used to send submissions is fast.

*Very small (640px)* Recommended when images don’t need to be detailed or the internet connection used to send submissions is slow.

*Small (1024px)* Sufficiently detailed for most on-screen viewing but too small for printing.

*Medium (2048px)* Sufficiently detailed for most uses, including printing.

*Large (3072px)* Recommended when a lot of detail is needed, but you want to reduce the size of image files as much as possible.

**Show guidance for questions**

Guidance hints on questions can be used to display additional information that is not always needed. For example, they can be used to show extra instructions to be used during training or valuable only on a printout. If set to *Yes - always shown*, guidance hints will always be displayed below regular hints. If set to *Yes - collapsed*, the user will need to tap to view guidance hints.

**Use external app for audio recording**

By default, an external application is used for audio recording. Uncheck this setting to use the built-in audio recorder instead. When unchecked, recordings
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

will be created as mono .m4a files using the AAC codec with a sample rate of 32kHz and a bitrate of 64kbps. This corresponds to a file size of about 30MB/hour. We typically recommend configuring audio quality in the form definition instead of using this setting but it can be useful for older forms that can’t be modified.

Form import

Finalize forms on import

When enabled, forms added directly to the instances/ directory are automatically set to Finalized. This is particularly relevant when putting records for an encrypted form directly to the device because encryption happens on finalization.

User and Device Identity Settings

User and device identity settings control how personally identifiable information and device ID are used.

To access User and device identity settings: → General Settings → User and device identity

![User and device identity](image)
Chapter 4. Using ODK Collect

Form metadata settings

Form metadata settings control identifying information *added to forms* filled on the device.

**To access form metadata settings:** → *General Settings* → *User and Device Identity* → *Form Metadata*

![Form Metadata]

**User-defined**

You can edit the following:

- Username
- Phone number
- Email address

**Note:**

- If no username is set here, the username from *Server settings* is used instead.
- You can restrict editing of the username in *admin settings*. 
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

Device-defined

You cannot edit these:

- Device ID
- Subscriber ID
- SIM serial number
- Install ID

Device ID is currently set to the device IMEI. Starting in August 2020, Google will no longer allow Android applications to read the IMEI. At that time, the Collect-generated Install ID will be used as the Device ID. Both are currently displayed to allow organizations to transition over. Install ID can be copied by long-pressing on its text.

Usage data

When enabled, ODK Collect sends anonymous usage and error data back to the ODK development team, which helps us improve the application.

4.3.3 Admin Settings

Admin settings manage other settings and features, letting you import or export settings, reset settings and delete cached data, and restrict which features are available to users of the app.

Admin settings are useful when you are managing devices that will be used by many enumerators, and you would like to limit the options available to those enumerators.

You can password protect the Admin setting screen, so enumerators cannot adjust settings or access restricted features.

To access Admin settings: → Admin Settings
General Settings Provides access to General Settings, with all items unrestricted.

Admin Password Lets you password protect this screen.

Reset application Lets you reset to default settings, delete forms, and empty caches.

Import/Export settings See:
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

Configuring Collect via QR code

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Settings QR codes

QR codes can be used to configure Collect on a fleet of devices. The QR code displayed on the *Configure via QR code* screen contains all of your current General and Admin settings. When this QR code is scanned from the ODK Collect app on another device, the settings from the code are imported and other settings are reset to their defaults.

**Note:** QR codes generated by Collect only contain settings with non-default values. When a code is scanned in, settings not explicitly included in the code are reset to their default values.
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

**Warning:** Settings QR codes contain the admin and server passwords *in plain text*. To remove them from the code, tap the warning on the QR code screen.

**Scanning a QR code**

Navigate to the *Scan* page to scan an existing QR code and import all of its settings. The settings contained in the QR code will be set and all others will be reset to their defaults.

**Sharing a QR code**

You can tap on the icon to share the QR code as an image. When you click on it, it displays a list of applications and services like *whatsapp*, *facebook*, *hangouts*, *bluetooth*, *MMS* which can be used to share the QR code. This is useful when there are several different data collection sites and all devices have to be configured in the same way, in which case the QR code can be shared from one reference device.

**Warning:** Since the QR code encodes compressed plain text settings and may contain the admin and server passwords, you should be careful about how you share it. For example, if you print out the QR code and tape it on wall, someone could use a standard QR code scanner to get the admin password.

**Importing settings from an image saved on your device**

You can import settings from a QR code saved on your device by clicking on the icon which is located to the right of the share icon. Then select the *Import QRCode* option.

**Making your own QR code**

The contents of a settings QR code is a JSON object with two objects for general and admin settings. The JSON structure is the following:

```json
{
    "general": {
        "protocol": "google_sheets",
        "constraint_behavior": "on_finalize"
    },
    "admin": {
```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
The JSON object is compressed using zlib before building the QR code. To build your own code:

1. Write a JSON object containing the changed settings with a structure as shown above.
2. Compress it using zlib.
3. Build a QR code from the resulting data.

You can either scan the generated QR code or transfer it to your device and then import it by clicking on Import QRCode option.

**List of keys for all settings**

Here are the keys for all settings and the set of values they can take:

```json
{
    "admin": {
        "admin_pw": String,

        // User access control to the main menu. The default value is true.
        "edit_saved": Boolean,
        "send_finalized": Boolean,
        "view_sent": Boolean,
        "get_blank": Boolean,
        "delete_saved": Boolean,
        "qr_code_scanner": Boolean,

        "change_server": Boolean,
        "change_app_theme": Boolean,
        "change_app_language": Boolean,
        "change_font_size": Boolean,
        "change_navigation": Boolean,
        "show_splash_screen": Boolean,
        "maps": Boolean,
        "periodic_form_updates_check": Boolean,
        "automatic_update": Boolean,
        "hide_old_form_versions": Boolean,
        "change_autosend": Boolean,
        "delete_after_send": Boolean,
        "default_to_finalized": Boolean,
        "change_constraint_behavior": Boolean,
    }
}
```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
"mapbox_map_style": {"mapbox://styles/mapbox/light-v10", "mapbox://
styles/mapbox/dark-v10", "mapbox://styles/mapbox/satellite-v9", "mapbox://
styles/mapbox/satellite-streets-v11", "mapbox://styles/mapbox/outdoors-v11
"},
"usgs_map_style": {"topographic", "hybrid", "satellite"},
"carto_map_style": {"positron", "dark_matter"},
"reference_layer": String, // Absolute path to mbtiles file

// Form management
"form_update_mode": {"manual", "previously_downloaded", "match_exactly"}

, "periodic_form_updates_check": {"every_fifteen_minutes", "every_one_hour
", "every_six_hours", "every_24_hours"},
"automatic_update": Boolean,
"hide_old_form_versions": Boolean,
"autosend": {"off", "wifi_only", "cellular_only", "wifi_and_cellular"},
"delete_send": Boolean,
"default_completed": Boolean,
"constraint_behavior": {"on_swipe", "on_finalize"},
"high_resolution": Boolean,
"image_size": {"original", "small", "very_small", "medium", "large"},
"external_app_recording": Boolean,
"guidance_hint": {"no", "yes", "yes_collapsed"},
"instance_sync": Boolean,

// User and device identity
"analytics": Boolean,
"metadata_username": String,
"metadata_phonenumber": String,
"metadata_email": String,
},

User Access Control Settings

Main Menu Settings Displays a list of Main Menu features. To hide features, uncheck
them.

User Settings Displays a list of user settings and other features accessible in the General
Settings screen. To hide features, uncheck them.

Form Entry Settings Displays a list of features related to viewing and filling out forms.
To disable features, uncheck them.

Moving backwards If you disable moving backwards, the enumerator cannot use the
4.3. Collect Menus, Settings, and Security

back button or swipe right to move backwards through a form. However, disabling this feature does not completely restrict a user’s ability to access already-answered questions. So, when you uncheck this box to restrict backward movement, the app will suggest several additional restrictions which will prevent a non-admin user from revisiting already-asked questions:

- Disable *Edit Saved Form* option in the main menu
- Disable *Save Form* option in the Form entry menu
- Disable *Go To Prompt* option in the Form entry menu
- Set *Constraint processing* to validate upon forward swipe in the Form Management settings

Select *YES* to set these additional restrictions.

**Note:** When you enable the moving backwards option, you have to configure the other changed settings since they are not automatically changed back.
4.4 Viewing filled forms on a map

New in version 1.25: ODK Collect v1.25.0

If you are collecting data related to physical locations, you can see a map of all filled forms from the Fill Blank Form menu. Use the map view to see your progress, to identify filled forms with bad locations and to plan your travel to the next location to survey.

Note: Blank forms must be downloaded with Collect v1.25 or later. Previously-downloaded forms will not have corresponding maps. If you update a form downloaded before Collect v1.25 and open its map, only filled forms created with the new form version will be displayed. Any previously-filled forms will not be included.

In the Fill Blank Form list, form definitions with a geopoint question outside of any repeat have a map button ( ). Tap on the map button to open a map showing the filled forms for that form definition. The first geopoint question in the form definition that is outside of any repeat is used to map filled forms. This question can either be a visible geopoint question or a question that gets the location in the background. On the map, you will also see your current position and be able to fill a new instance of the current form definition.
4.4. Viewing filled forms on a map

4.4.1 Form instance map markers

Filled forms are represented by colored map markers. The color of each map marker indicates the status of the filled form:

- Blue: saved and unfinalized
- Purple: finalized
- Green: sent
- Red: send attempt failed

Tapping on a map marker shows details about the filled form at the bottom of the screen. The filled form will be identified by its instance name. In the screenshot above, first name, last name, and job title are displayed. Strategically choosing data from the form to show in the instance name can make the form map into a useful dashboard.

The detail view also shows a button for viewing or editing the selected filled form depending on its status. By default, forms with Saved, Finalized, and Submission Failure status are opened for edit and Sent forms are opened for viewing. However, if the Edit Saved Form button is made unavailable from the admin settings, forms with Saved, Finalized, and Submission Failure status are opened as view-only.

4.4.2 Map controls

There are three control buttons clustered at the top right of the map. The top button is used to zoom to the current location. The middle button adjusts the zoom level to ensure that all mapped filled forms are displayed on the screen. The last button is used to change layers if offline layers are available. The basemap and reference layer settings are used across all of Collect so the same ones will be used for this form map as for location widgets with maps.

The button at the bottom right of the screen can be used to fill a new instance of the current form definition. After you save a new filled form, you will be returned to the map and the filled form will be displayed if it has a geopoint associated with it.

4.4.3 Status bar

The bar at the bottom of the screen displays the total number of saved forms and how many of these are shown on the map. All filled forms with a value for the first geopoint question will be displayed. To ensure that all filled forms are displayed, make the identifying geopoint question required.

Note: Deleted or encrypted filled forms are not shown on the map. However, forms that were successfully sent and then deleted and forms that are encrypted both contribute to the
total number of saved forms. See *Deleting Forms* for more on how filled form deletion works.

### 4.5 Using Offline Maps

Collect’s *geopoint*, *geotrace*, and *geoshape* questions can be configured to display different map data. The *Maps Settings* let you select a basemap to show, as well as a reference layer to show on top of the basemap.

The data for all the available basemaps comes from services on the Internet, so the basemap will only be visible to users who are online. To choose a basemap, select a *Source* and then a *Style* if multiple styles are available.

For the reference layer, however, you can select a file on the device, and it will be visible offline. Offline layers are useful to present custom geospatial data layered over standard basemaps or as basemaps for low-connectivity environments. Use them to display high-resolution imagery, annotated maps, heatmaps, and more. ODK Collect can display any map layer saved as a set of tiles in the *MBTiles* format.

**Warning:**

- Vector MBTiles (with data in Mapbox Vector Tile format (pbf)) are only supported if Mapbox is selected as the basemap source.
- Vector MBTiles are currently displayed without styling. Each layer’s lines are displayed in a different color picked by ODK Collect. This color will be the same across all devices using the same MBTiles file. Fills are not displayed.

#### 4.5.1 Offline maps quick start

1. *Get or create your MBTiles file* with TileMill or other software.
2. *Transfer tiles to devices*. The MBTiles file must be placed on your device in the *layers* subdirectory of *your Collect directory*, and the filename must end in *.mbtiles*.
3. Select your offline layer in the *reference layer settings*.
4. Open a *geopoint*, *geotrace*, or *geoshape* question.
5. While viewing the map, you can also select the offline layer using the button that looks like a stack of layers.

MBTiles files typically contain metadata that specifies the range of zoom levels in which they are visible. If you are viewing at an appropriate zoom level, your offline layer should
4.5. Using Offline Maps

be displayed. If you don’t see it, you might need to zoom in or out until the zoom level is in the range specified by the MBTiles file.

If the tileset has transparency (PNG or PBF tiles only), the selected basemap will show through. If it does not have transparency or you are offline, only your offline layer will be displayed.

4.5.2 Getting map tilesets

For non-commercial community mapping activities, Mapbox can arrange for offline MBTiles, including processed streets, satellite, and custom data. Contact community[at]mapbox.com for offline Terms of Service exemptions and to receive technical guidance.

To create MBTiles files, use one of the compatible applications. Commonly used free software packages are TileMill and QGIS with the QTiles plugin. In general, you should build raster (jpg or png) MBTiles files. Vector (pbf) MBTiles files are only supported with Mapbox basemaps and are currently displayed without styling.

If you have existing geospatial data that is not in an MBTiles file, you may be able to convert it for use in Collect. For example, Tippecanoe is a tool to build vector MBTiles files from GeoJSON features (see warning above: vector MBTiles files are only supported with Mapbox basemaps and are displayed without styling).

4.5.3 Transferring offline tilesets to devices

MBTiles files must be manually transferred to Android devices to be available to Collect. Place the MBTiles files in the layers subdirectory of your Collect directory, and ensure their filenames end in .mbtiles.

To transfer files, you can upload them to an online service such as Google Drive, connect your device to a computer and transfer them via USB, or use adb.

4.5.4 Selecting offline tilesets

Once an MBTiles file has been transferred to the layers subdirectory of your Collect directory, it will be available for selection as a reference layer. A reference layer provides useful reference information for a data collector. A reference layer with no transparency acts like a basemap.

There are two ways to set the reference layer:

• from Maps Settings

• by tapping on the button that looks in a stack of layers in a geopoint, geotrace, or geoshape question
Both options set the reference layer for all \textit{geopoint}, \textit{geotrace}, and \textit{geoshape} questions. The choices in the Collect layer selection menu will show the name of the tileset (from the Metadata table in the MBTiles file), as well as the path to the file.

- Advanced Use and Best Practices
  - \textit{Using Android Debug Bridge with Collect}
  - \textit{Creating Shortcuts to Collect Forms}
  - \textit{Improving Location Performance}
  - \textit{Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen}
5.1 Creating Shortcuts to Collect Forms

You can create an app-like shortcut to a specific form in Collect.

1. Click on Apps button at the bottom of the screen.
2. Touch and hold on an empty space on the Home screen and then click on *Widgets* button at the bottom of the screen.
5.1. Creating Shortcuts to Collect Forms

3. Find the *ODK Form* widget and then touch and hold it.

4. A menu pops up listing all the available forms. Select the form you wish to create a shortcut for.
5. Shortcut for the selected form will appear on your home screen. You can move the shortcut to the desired position by drag and drop.
5.1. Creating Shortcuts to Collect Forms

**Note:** To delete the shortcut, hold and press it. A *Remove* button will appear on the top right corner. Drag and drop the shortcut to the *Remove* button. The shortcut will be removed.

**Tip:** If you are unable to find *Widgets* option:

1. Click on *Apps* and then click on three dots at the top right corner of your screen.
2. Click on **Help** option in the dropdown.
5.1. Creating Shortcuts to Collect Forms

3. Click on *Adding Items* option in the menu which appears.

4. Information about adding widgets will be displayed. You can then follow it or try it to find the *Widgets* button.
5.2 Improving Location Performance

ODK Collect uses Android’s Fused Location Provider to get a device’s geolocation. This means data from multiple sensors including GPS, WiFi and Bluetooth are combined to quickly compute accurate geolocation readings. When Collect is accessing your device’s geolocation, you will see a location (GPS) icon in the upper right corner of your screen. Learn more about geolocation-based questions in the question types section.

**Warning:** Some versions of ODK Collect prior to v1.28.0 use raw location sensors because of an Android bug. If you are having trouble getting a geolocation reading, first make sure you are using the latest version of ODK Collect.

5.2.1 Devices

Different devices can have dramatically different quality sensors. If you are having trouble getting a geolocation reading from a specific device, it is likely either because the device model does not have high-quality sensors or because the specific device has a faulty sensor. If you can, try going to the same geolocation with a different device to compare performance.
5.3. Android security recommendations

Sensor quality has dramatically improved over the years so in general, newer devices will get higher-accuracy readings more quickly.

5.2.2 Android Location Settings

Different Android versions provide different settings for controlling how geolocation is captured. See how to configure Android location in the Android documentation. In general, the more different sensors are available to Android, the better its geolocation estimation will be so make sure they are all enabled.

5.2.3 Helping the GPS Sensor

GPS works by receiving signals from specific satellites so to help your device get a geolocation reading, get as clear of a view of the sky as possible. GPS does not work inside of buildings and will be affected by obstacles like dense forest canopy or tall buildings. It is typically the main technology used to identify a device’s geolocation anywhere other than in urban areas where multiple WiFi access points and cell towers can be accessed at the same time.

It can take a while to get satellite lock when first attempting to get a geolocation. You can use a background location question at the beginning of your form definition to “warm” the GPS before data collectors to answer a location question. You can also use an external app such as GPS Status & Toolbox for this purpose. Additionally, this application can help you troubleshoot GPS issues. See its documentation for more details.

5.3 Android security recommendations

5.3.1 Turn on data encryption

Turning on Android-level data encryption means when the device is locked, no one can see the data. Unlocking your encrypted device decrypts your data. Encryption can add protection in case your device is stolen. It’s an easier alternative to using encrypted forms that offer most of the benefits.

Tip: Encryption takes an hour or more to complete. Before you start, ensure that battery is charged and keep the device plugged in until encryption is complete. Make sure your data is backed up, just in case something goes wrong.

Warning:
• Interrupting encryption process may lead to loss of some or all of your data.
• The process is irreversible. The device cannot be decrypted once the encryption is setup and you will have to wipe out all the data for decryption or removing encryption.

Note: For devices running any version older than 4, you’ll need to either upgrade your operating system or consult the manufacturer’s instructions.

For devices running Android version 4 or later:

1. Open your device’s Settings app.

2. Tap *Lock screen* in the *Device* section. Then tap on *Screen lock* and create a pin or password.
5.3. Android security recommendations

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Note: Encryption cannot be performed until you have setup either a PIN or a password lock. Pattern lock is not allowed with encryption.

Tip: Setting a strong passcode is imperative to protect your Android phone. The longer the passcode (or alphanumeric password), the tougher it will be for an attacker to gain access to your device. Even a lock screen won’t necessarily prevent a thief or hacker from getting access to your data. You can use apps that destroy all the data after few failed attempts to unlock the device. For more details, see this.

3. Tap Security in the System section.
4. Go to Encryption section. Now select Encrypt device to start encryption. Follow the onscreen instructions. During encryption, your device might restart several times.
Note: On some phones, you'll need to choose Storage, then Storage encryption or Storage → Lock screen and security → Other security settings to find the Encrypt device option.

Note: If you are using SD card for storage, you can encrypt that too by choosing Encrypt SD card in the Encryption section. This not only encrypts the contents of the SD card, but it also means that the card cannot be used on another device unless it is wiped.

Tip: You should also ensure that device debugging (via adb) is disabled when collecting data, as that can enable users to pull data from the device after it has been successfully booted (when the sdcard encryption key is entered). i.e., if the debugging interface is enabled, someone could steal the device, connect it to a laptop, and pull data off it as long as it has not been shut down as they don’t need to successfully unlock the device’s lock screen to gain access.

For more details on encryption, see this.
5.3. Android security recommendations

5.3.2 Adjust Google Play to require a password for every purchase

You can set up Google Play to require a password for every purchase, which makes sure that anything you buy is done so with your consent. This can prevent enumerators from installing apps which can bypass certain specified requirements.

1. Open the Play store app, tap on the left-hand slide-out menu, and then choose Settings.
2. Look for *Require password for purchases* and tap on it. You’ll be asked to input your password.
3. Choose the password input frequency as *For all purchases through Google Play on this device.*
Note: The password will not be set for free downloads. If you want to lock free downloads as well, use an app locking app like AppLock.

5.3.3 Disable cloud-based backup

Though storing your data in the cloud is good for backing it up, law enforcement can demand that Google turn over your data. The best way to keep your Android phone from sending your personal data to its servers is to turn off backup. The downside is if you lose your phone, you may lose your data. Remember, you always have the option to manually back-up to your personal computer.

To disable backup:

1. Go to Settings app.
2. Then tap *Backup & Reset* in *Personalisation* section.
3. Now switch off the option to *Back up my data*. 

![Image of backup and reset settings with the option to turn off data backup highlighted.]
5.3.4 Limit who can use Google Now

Google Now is your own intelligence assistant by bringing information to you when you need it but that gives Google a lot of access to your data to know what to dig up. The best way to use it is by turning it off from the lock screen, so only you with your passcode can use the feature and get access to your personal data. The steps to do this are as follows:

1. Open the Google app, tap on the left-hand slide-out menu, and then choose Settings.
2. Tap on Voice in the Search section and then choose ‘OK Google’ detection.
3. Turn off the feature *Say "OK Google" any time.*
5.3.5 Lower your phone’s sleep timeout

Lowering your phone’s sleep timeout can prevent opportunistic people from getting access to your unlocked device. The lower the figure, the quicker it locks you out.

1. Start by going to Settings app.
5.3. Android security recommendations

2. Tap on *Display and wallpaper* under the *Device* section.
3. Tap on *Screen timeout* and lower the screen timeout by choosing an appropriate timeout from the list.
4. Once you’ve lowered your phone’s sleep timeout setting, you need to make sure that your Android device locks and presents the lock screen when it wakes up. Tap on Lock screen in the Device section and then tap on Lock automatically option and choose an appropriate timeout again.
Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
5.3.6 Limit your lock screen notifications

Your lock screen can show a lot about your life. Your Android phone or tablet can limit what’s shown on the lock screen in order to prevent others from seeing your personal content as it comes in.

1. Go to Settings app then Tap on Sounds & notifications under the Device section.

![Image showing the location of Sounds & notifications in the settings menu]
2. Scroll down and tap on *Notifications on lock screen* under the *Notification* section. You can change how notifications are shown when device is locked setting. The most privacy conscious setting is to Hide sensitive notification content so that you know which app is alerting you, without showing its contents.
5.3. Android security recommendations

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
5.3.7 Prevent unauthorized apps from installing

Android devices can run third-party content outside of the Google Play app store. This can open up a device to malware attacks.

The easiest way to ensure that only verified and malware-checked apps can be installed on your phone or tablet is:

1. Go to the Settings app and then tap on Security in the System section.
2. Make sure that the Unknown sources option is turned off. If this option is turned on, installation of apps from trusted as well as unknown sources will be allowed.
5.3.8 Make sure you keep Android up-to-date

Many Android phone makers will now offer monthly security patches to ensure that any known vulnerabilities will be patched. Install these patches every month. It’s one of the best ways to ensure that you won’t be attacked by hackers and malware.

1. To periodically check for software updates, go to Settings app.

2. Then tap on About device under the System section.
5.3. **Android security recommendations**

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
5.4 Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

This guide helps the users to project ODK collect onto a screen. There are various methods available to do this, some of the methods are discussed below:

5.4.1 Using Vysor

Vysor is an extension for the Google Chrome browser that connects to an app on your smartphone. This extension enables you to control your phone from your PC or Mac using the mouse/trackpad and keyboard.

Before proceeding further make sure USB Debugging mode is enabled:

Enable USB Debugging Mode on Android

1. Go to Settings, choose About phone.
2. Scroll down and tap Build number seven times.
3. Go back to Settings and there you will find Developer options in the menu.
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

4. Scroll down and enable *USB debugging* mode.
5. Confirm the action when prompted.

**Note:** Windows users should make sure that they have downloaded Universal ADB Drivers.

Follow the instructions given below to use Vysor:

1. Make sure you have Google chrome installed, if not download it from here.
2. Download Vysor extension.
3. Click on Add To Chrome

4. Confirm your action by clicking on Add app.
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

Warning: On Windows, You may get an error WebGL is not supported

To fix this, follow the procedures given below:

First, we need to enable hardware acceleration:

1. Go to chrome://settings, scroll down and click on Advanced.

2. In the System section, ensure the Use hardware acceleration when available is en-
abled. You’ll need to relaunch Chrome for any changes to take effect. Click on 

3. Then, we need to enable WebGL, go to chrome://flags, scroll down and search for WebGL 2.0. From the drop-down list choose Enabled.
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

Now you can return to Vysor extension and install it again.

5. After adding the extension, you would be able to see it in the chrome toolbar, if it is not visible there go to chrome://apps and you would be able to see there.

6. Launch the extension and connect your phone through USB.
7. Click on *Find Devices*, select your device and click on *Select*.

8. After clicking *Select*, Vysor would be automatically downloaded to your phone, and you will be able to see your phone screen.

9. Click on the Collect app and there you go, you have successfully projected your phone screen.
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

5.4.2 Using Android Studio

Android Studio is the official IDE for Android. It provides tools for building apps for every type of Android device. Android Emulator can be used to test your app virtually on any Android device configuration.

Follow the procedures given below to run your app on the emulator:

1. Download Android Studio with SDK according to your platform.
2. Here is a tutorial on how to set up Android Studio according to different platforms.
3. After installing, launch Android Studio and click on Start a new Android Studio project or if you have an existing project click on Open an existing Android Studio project.
4. To create a new project follow further steps but if you have an existing project skip to the step 9.

5. Choose your project location and fill out the Application name and click on Next.
6. Select the *Phone and Tablet* option and choose your *Minimum SDK*. Click on *Next*.

7. Select an Activity, **Empty Activity is preferable**. Click on *Next*. 
8. In Customize the Activity window, don’t change the default options and click on *Finish*.
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

9. After few minutes, you will be able to see the Android Studio main window, click on icon, alternatively, you can click on Tools then select Android, from the drop-down menu select AVD Manager.

![Android Studio main window](image)

10. If you are an existing user list of all virtual devices would appear on the screen, to create a new virtual device, click on + Create Virtual Device…

![AVD Manager](image)

11. In the Select Hardware window, choose a device definition for your virtual device. I have chosen Nexus 5, click on Next.

![Create Virtual Device](image)
12. Select a system image, I have chosen Lollipop version. Click on Next.

13. Enter your AVD Name, choose startup orientation and click on Finish.
Now you would be able to see your virtual device in Android Virtual Device Manager. Click on 🎁 to run your Android emulator.

Note: Please wait for some time as Android emulator takes very long time to start.

After the emulator is started, you would be able to see the screen of your emulator.
16. Now click on [image] to see the location of Android SDK.

17. Open the terminal and move to the platform-tools of the SDK directory.

$ cd platform-tools

18. Copy the collect.apk into platform-tools folder. You can download the apk file from here.

19. Type the following command to see the list connected devices:
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

$ adb devices

You should be able to see the emulator along with its port number, e.g. emulator-5554. Here 5554 is the port number. If the emulator is not present in the list, restart the emulator.

To install apk file, in the emulator type the following command:

$ adb install collect.apk

If the command is successfully executed, you will find your file in the launcher of your emulator.
Using Command Line

You can also run the emulator using command line. Follow the steps given below to start your emulator using the command line:

**Note:** If SDK installation has been put in another drive or folder instead of in its default location of $$USER\_HOME$$ or $$HOME$$. Make sure you have set the environment variables according to that. In the command line type the following command to set environment variables.

```
set ANDROID\_SDK\_ROOT=path\sdk\n```

1. Open the terminal and move to the emulator folder of the SDK directory.

```
$ cd emulator
```

2. For the list of available virtual devices, type the following command:

```
$ emulator -list-avds
```

**Tip:** If you are not able to locate emulator.exe file in SDK folder. Type the following command to know the location of the file:

```
$ which emulator
```
5.4. Projecting ODK Collect onto another screen

On Windows:

> where emulator

3. Use `emulator` to start the emulator. Here `avd_name` is the name of Android virtual device that you have created.

```shell
$ emulator -avd avd_name
```

**Note:**

1. You can use `sdkmanager` command to update, install, and uninstall packages for the Android SDK. This method is not recommended as it is not user-friendly and also takes time.

   To create an emulator you need to download system image for a particular API level.

   ```shell
   $ sdkmanager --verbose "system-images;android-19;google_apis;x86"
   ```

   - The `--verbose` option or `-v` option shows errors, warnings and all messages.
   - `system-images;android-19;google_apis` specifies the system image package for the Android virtual device.
   - `android-19` specifies the API level. You can choose different API level if you want.

2. To create and manage Android Virtual device from the command line, you can use `avdmanager`.

   After downloading system image, you can use the following command to create an emulator.

   ```shell
   $ avdmanager -v create avd --name testAVD -k "system-images;android-19;google_apis;x86" -g "google_apis"
   ```

   - The `create avd` option creates a new Android virtual device.
   - `--name` option is a **required** option which is used to specify name of the AVD. Here, the name of the AVD is testAVD.
   - The `-g` specifies the system image tag to use for the AVD.
   - `-k` specifies package path of the system image for the AVD.

See also:
You can also use Genymotion as an alternative as it is very fast as compared to custom android emulators. It is also easy to use and configure, and it is available free of cost for personal use.

5.5 Related Topics

- *Intro to Forms in ODK*
  - *Example form questions in Collect*
- *Encrypted Forms*
- Integrating with other Android Apps
  - *Launching ODK Collect from External Apps*
  - *Launching External Apps*
ODK Central is the ODK server. It manages user accounts and permissions, stores form definitions, and allows data collection clients like ODK Collect to connect to it for form download and submission upload.

Our goal with Central is to create a server that is straightforward to install, easy to use and extensible with new features and functionality both directly in the software and with the use of our REST, OpenRosa, and OData programmatic APIs.

6.1 ODK Central Features

Here are some of the major features we support today:

- User accounts and management
- Role-based user permissioning
- Projects to organize users, permissions, and forms
- Form and submission upload and management
  - With support for form version updates
  - With drafts and testing on initial creation, and on version updates
  - With form and submission multimedia or data attachments
  - With a table preview of submission data
  - Encrypted forms (self-supplied or project managed keys)
  - OData live data feed for analysis with tools like Excel and Power BI
- Form filling directly in the web browser using Enketo
- Integrated checklist-based help system
- Optional encrypted off-site data backups to Google Drive
• Clean and modern REST API for integration and extensibility
• High performance on low-cost hardware or cloud providers
• ODK Briefcase-compatible data output
• ODK Briefcase push/pull support

Here are some (but not all) key features we do not yet support:
• Customizable user roles
• Submission edits

Central is in active development. We have a lot of exciting ideas for its future and we look forward to hearing yours as well. See What is coming in Central for more on future direction.

6.2 Who should use ODK Central?

We recommend that all new data collection projects use ODK Central because it is in active development by the core ODK team. ODK Central is a relatively new server. It replaces ODK Aggregate which is no longer being updated. Central isn’t as widely deployed as Aggregate, but its developers have put it through stress testing and it is used in production by many projects including several large ones.

Central solves some of the biggest problems with Aggregate. Some of our favorite features are:

• projects let you partition your server into different sandboxes to support multiple independent teams
• direct upload of XLSForm files makes form management easier
• the OData API makes it easy to synchronize your live form data to desktop visualization and dashboard tools
• managed encryption makes the process of handling encrypted form data significantly easier and in many cases more secure

Please give Central a try and provide your feedback.

6.3 Notes On Performance

Central was designed from early on to be stable, predictable, and fast on limited hardware. Perhaps most importantly, even under extreme traffic Central is guaranteed to either wholly succeed or wholly fail each submission. If, for instance, one submission attachment fails to upload or persist, the entire submission upload will fail and Collect will attempt the...
submission again. If Central reports that a submission was successfully uploaded, then all submitted data was successfully saved.

We have done some work to benchmark Central to verify these claims, and produce some guideline numbers. Every circumstance is different, and a lot will depend on your form design, your geographic location, and other factors. But in general, on the second-cheapest DigitalOcean configuration at time of writing ($10/month, 2GB memory), we found the following:

- A 250 question form without attachments could support 500 devices simultaneously uploading many submissions without issues, at a rate of roughly 41.2 submissions per second.
- A larger 5000 question form, without attachments, could also support 500 devices submitting data at once, but runs more slowly (~12 submissions/second) and fails about one submission in every 1000 (which can then be re-submitted without issues).
- Including attachments slows the process down, since there is more data to shuffle around. Realistically, the number of concurrent users supported in this scenario will decrease simply because Internet bandwidth in and out of Central will limit the number of submissions it can see at a time. But we have tried situations featuring 5MB submissions with 50 devices at once without seeing issues (though for the mentioned reasons the response rate drops to between 1 and 2 submissions/second). Additionally, data exports with attachments take longer and are more memory-intensive.

When you are planning for your installation and selecting a destination to deploy Central to, keep these numbers in mind. If 500 people submitting data all at the same time is a distant scenario, you can probably get by with a lower-performance option. If your deployment is larger than these numbers, consider bumping up to a more powerful machine. If you aren’t sure, ask around in the forums.

6.4 Learn more about ODK Central

- Setting Up ODK Central
- Using ODK Central
7.1 Installing Central

Central is distributed and installed using Docker. Docker makes it possible to describe exactly how Central’s different components should be configured no matter where it is installed. Don’t worry if you don’t know about Docker yet! We have put together step-by-step instructions for our recommended solutions below.

Warning: Central is intended to be configured and administrated entirely with `docker-compose stop` and that is what we show in all our instructions. If you inadvertently do a `docker-compose down`, it will look like you have lost your data. See the troubleshooting section to learn how to recover.

7.1.1 Using ODK Cloud (recommended)

The easiest way to get a Central server is by using ODK Cloud.

ODK Cloud provides fast Central servers with regular feature updates, automatic security patches, daily backups, uptime management, enterprise security, and guaranteed support on any issues.

By choosing ODK Cloud, you are also directly supporting future development on ODK and helping make it better for everyone.

7.1.2 Installing on DigitalOcean

If you want to install Central on own server but you’re not sure what cloud provider to choose, we recommend DigitalOcean. Start here.
Chapter 7. Setting Up ODK Central

7.1.3 Installing elsewhere

If you got excited when you saw mention of Docker above, and you already have your own destination and process for managing Docker deployments, you’re all set to go. Central is entirely defined via Docker Compose, which means the docker-compose command will be all you need to manage the entire system.

Warning: We verify each version of Central on DigitalOcean and confirm that upgrades are possible. However, we do not verify them on other cloud providers and generally can’t provide free support for installations that deviate from the DigitalOcean instructions. You may find other community members able to help on the forum.

No matter where you plan to install Central, we recommend reviewing the instructions we’ve provided for DigitalOcean starting from this section. In particular, you’ll need to update your submodules after you clone the repository, and configure your .env file for your installation.

Installing on Amazon EC2

Amazon Web Services (AWS) is one of the many other options for installing Central. It’s a good idea to read through the instructions we’ve provided for DigitalOcean, as many of the steps remain the same or similar.

To obtain a server you will need to first create an AWS account. When launching your instance, select the Ubuntu Server 16.04 LTS Amazon Machine Image (AMI) in step 1. The t2.micro instance type has the 1GB of memory recommended for if you don’t expect many forms to be submitted at once and you don’t expect many large media attachments.

When adjusting the security settings open up the ports for SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS. Once you have launched your instance, go to the Elastic IPs menu option under Network & Security, then allocate a new address and associate it with your server in order to keep the IP address for your server consistent.

Before installing Central on your server, you need to install Docker and Docker Compose.

1. Docker. Steps 1 and 2 of this how to install Docker on Ubuntu 16.04 tutorial should walk you through the necessary commands. In step 2 add the ubuntu user to the Docker group.

2. Docker Compose. This how to install Docker Compose on Ubuntu 16.04 tutorial should walk you through the necessary commands. You should only need to complete step 1. You can change the version number to 1.24.1.

7.2 Installing Central on DigitalOcean

Finally, configure an e-mail service such as Amazon SES because Amazon restricts emails sent from EC2.

7.2 Installing Central on DigitalOcean

If you’d like to set up an ODK server that’s accessible from anywhere via the Internet, DigitalOcean provides a one-click configuration that’s nicely geared with nearly all the tools you’ll need to set up your new server. The only thing it doesn’t do is register a domain name, which you will have to do in order to obtain a security certificate for your server.

Tip: If you have not already created a DigitalOcean account, use our referral link. DigitalOcean will give you $100 of credit to spend during the first 60 days so that you can try things out. Once you have spent $25 with them, we’ll get $25 to put towards our hosting costs.

In general, this installation process will involve five phases:

1. Getting a server and loading it with the appropriate base system.
2. Getting a web address (domain name) and pointing it at your new server.
3. Getting the Central software and installing it on your server.
4. Preparing Central for startup and running it for the first time.
5. Creating your first Central Administrator account and logging into it.

There are also some optional other steps you can take, which you can find at the bottom of this page.

7.2.1 Getting a Server

In this phase, you will create a new server on DigitalOcean, choose a pricing tier, configure it with the correct base operating system, and start it up.

If you haven’t already, create an account on DigitalOcean. Then, from the DigitalOcean control panel, use the Create button at the top to create a new Droplet. This is their name for a server you can access and manage.
At the very top, under **Choose an image**, switch to the **Marketplace** tab and select the **Docker** option. The version does not matter.

As you continue down this page, there are a few options that may be important to you:

- There is a section for standard droplets and another for more expensive optimized droplets. In general, you should not need optimized droplets.

- The **size** option affects a few things, but the most important is the amount of memory available to your server. Memory does not affect storage space, it sets the amount of
7.2. Installing Central on DigitalOcean

"thinking room" the server gets while it’s working on things. If you don’t expect many forms to be submitted at once and you don’t expect many large media attachments, you can start with 1GB. Higher-load servers and servers which handle many image or video attachments may need 2GB or more. It is pretty easy to upgrade to a larger size later.

- The datacenter region selects where physically your server will be located. If you have security concerns, this is your chance to decide which country hosts your data. Otherwise, generally selecting the option with closest geographic proximity to your users is a good idea.

- If you are technically savvy and understand what an SSH key is, there is a field here that you will want to fill in. If not, don’t worry about it.

**Tip:** If you choose a 1GB server and you have problems with exporting attachments, read this troubleshooting tip.

Once you click on Create, you’ll be taken back to the Droplet management page. It may think for a moment, and then your new server should appear. Next to it will be an IP address, which should look something like 183.47.101.24. This is where your server is publicly located on the Internet. Don’t worry, nobody can do anything with it until you let them.

Congratulations! With those steps, you have now created a new server which you can access over the Internet, and started it up. Next, we will get a web domain name address (like getodk.org) to point at it.

7.2.2 Getting a Web Address (Domain Name)

Now is the time to set up a domain name. We will do so, and then configure it so that it sends users to the server you created in the previous step.

You’ll need to do this for two reasons: a memorable name (like google.com) will be easier to remember and access than a pile of numbers, and you cannot get a security certificate without one. It is not currently possible to host Central within a subdirectory on another domain (so, my-website.com/my-odk-server is not possible, but my-odk-server.com is allowed, as is my-odk-server.my-website.com).

If you already know how to do these sorts of things, feel free to ignore the following instructions and proceed on your own. You can rejoin us at the next section.

For the rest of us, there are some options here:

- You can pay one of the many popular commercial domain registrars for a full domain name, like MyOdkCollectionServer.com. Search for "domain registrar" to find one of these. These often cost as little as $3/year.
• You can use a free DNS service: we recommend FreeDNS, which has run for a long time and has a good reputation. With it, you can get a free name, albeit with a fixed second half (like MyOdkCollectionServer.dynet.com). If you choose this route, we recommend using one of the less popular names, as the heavily occupied names can run into trouble later on (in particular, getting a security certificate from Let’s Encrypt).

Whichever option you choose, once you getting a domain name you’ll want to look at DigitalOcean’s guide on setting up domain names for your Droplet. In general, you’ll point your domain name in DigitalOcean’s direction at your registrar, then in DigitalOcean itself you’ll want to create an A record that points to the IP address we found above.

New domain names take a little bit to get working. Meanwhile, we can get working on installing the server software.

### 7.2.3 Installing Central

In this phase of installation, we will log into your new server, get the Central software, load some settings into it, and install it.

First, you’ll need to be able to log into the server itself. If you are an advanced user who filled in an SSH key above, you’re good to go. Otherwise, click your email for a message from DigitalOcean with your server password.

Once you have that password in hand, you’ll be able to use the Launch Console button to log into your server: when it asks for login, type root and press Enter. Then type the password you were emailed and press Enter again.

Once you are in your server, you’ll want to change your password so that people snooping your email do not gain access. You should be automatically asked for a new password the first
time you log in. If you are not, type `passwd` and press `Enter`, then follow the instructions
to choose a new password. From now on, you will use that password to log in.

**Changing Server Settings**

First, we will want to ensure that Docker starts up whenever the server starts. Docker will
in turn ensure that Central has started up. To do this, run `systemctl enable docker`.

You will need to change one more thing on this server before we proceed: you will need to
modify the system firewall for Enketo features in Central to work correctly.

The quickest way to do this is to run `ufw disable` while logged into your server’s command
line prompt. You should see the message `Firewall stopped and disabled on system
startup`. If so, you have configured the firewall correctly.

**For advanced administrators**

While it sounds dangerous, disabling your system firewall does not put your server at greater
risk. In fact, most Linux operating systems come with the system firewall disabled.

If you don’t want to disable the firewall entirely, you can instead configure Docker, `iptables`,
and `ufw` yourself. This can be really difficult to do correctly, so we don’t recommend most
people try. Another option is to use an upstream network firewall.

The goal here is to ensure that it is possible to access the host through its external IP
from within each Docker container. In particular, if you can successfully `curl` your Central
website over HTTPS on its public domain name, all Enketo features should work correctly.

**Getting and Setting Up Central**

Now you’ll need to download the software. In the server window, type `git clone https://
github.com/getodk/central` and press `Enter`. It should think for some time and download
many things. Then type `cd central` to start working with the software.
You now have the framework of the server software, but some components are missing. Type `git submodule update -i` and press Enter to download them.

Next, you need to update some settings. Type `nano .env` and press Enter. This will launch a text editing application.

- Change the `SSL_TYPE` line to read: `SSL_TYPE=letsencrypt`. This instructs the server to attempt to obtain a security certificate from the free Let’s Encrypt provider.

- Change the `DOMAIN` line so that after the `=` is the domain name you registered above. As an example: `DOMAIN=MyOdkCollectionServer.com`. Do not include anything like `http://`.

- Change the `SYSADMIN_EMAIL` line so that after the `=` is your own email address. The Let’s Encrypt service will use this address only to notify you if something is wrong with your security certificate.

- Hold Ctrl and press x to quit the text editor. Press y to indicate that you want to save the file, and then press Enter to confirm the file name. Do not change the file name.
Now, we will bundle everything together into a server. Type `docker-compose build` and press Enter to do this. This will take a long time and generate quite a lot of text output. Don’t worry if it seems to pause without saying anything for a while. When it finishes, you should see some ”Successfully built” type text and get your input prompt back. When that happens, type `docker-compose up --no-start` and press Enter.

Once that is complete, congratulations! You have installed your copy of Central. Next, we need to teach the server how to start it up, and do so.

### 7.2.4 Starting up Central

Now, run `docker-compose up -d` to start the server software. The first time you start it, it will take a while to set itself up. Once you give it a few minutes and you have input control again, you’ll want to see whether everything is running correctly:

- To see if ODK has finished loading, run `docker-compose ps`. Under the State column, for the nginx row, you will want to see text that reads Up or Up (healthy). If you see Up (health: starting), give it a few minutes. If you see some other text, something has gone wrong. It is normal to see Exit 0 for the secrets container.

- If your domain name has started working, you can visit it in a web browser to check that you get the Central management website.

You’re almost done! All you have to do is create an Administrator account so that you can log into Central.
7.2.5 Logging into Central

If visiting your server domain name address in your browser does not load the Central management website, you may have to wait a few minutes or hours (possibly even a day) for the domain name itself to get working. These instructions are explained in further depth on the page detailing the Central Command Line Tools.

Once you do see it working, you’ll want to set up your first Administrator account. To do this:

- Ensure that you are in the `central` folder on your server. If you have not closed your console session from earlier, you should be fine. If you have just logged back into it, you’ll want to run `cd central` to navigate to that folder.

- Then, type `docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email YOUREMAIL@ADDRESSHERE.com user-create`, substituting your email address as appropriate. Press Enter, and you will be asked for a password for this new account.

- The previous step created an account but did not make it an administrator. To do this, type `docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email YOUREMAIL@ADDRESSHERE.com user-promote Enter`.

- You are done for now, but if you ever lose track of your password, you can always reset it by typing `docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email YOUREMAIL@ADDRESSHERE.com user-set-password`. As with account creation, you will be prompted for a new password after you press Enter.

Once you have one account, you do not have to go through this process again for future accounts: you can log into the website with your new account, and directly create new users that way.

Tip: If you find that users are not receiving emails, read about troubleshooting emails.

7.2.6 Setting Up Monitoring

The last thing you will want to do is to set up server monitoring. Alerts and monitoring are important because they can inform you of problems with your server before they affect your data collection project.

You can find instructions for setting up alerts in the DigitalOcean Documentation.

We strongly recommend creating an alert for Disk Utilization. A threshold of 90% is usually reasonable. By far the most common operations issue we see is servers running out of disk space as large media attachments pile up. If your server runs entirely out of disk space, it can crash and become unresponsive. It is best to upgrade your storage plan before this happens.
7.3. Advanced Configuration Options

If you are familiar with server operations, you may wish to set up some other alerts: CPU usage and Memory Utilization are the most interesting remaining metrics. However, these are not as important or easily understandable as the Disk Utilization alert, so you may skip this if you’re not sure what to do here.

You’re done! Congratulations. In the future, you may wish to consult the *Upgrading Central* guide, but for now you may begin using Central. The *Using ODK Central* sections can help you with your next steps if you aren’t sure how to proceed.

7.3 Advanced Configuration Options

The following sections each detail a particular customization you can make to your server setup. Most installations should not need to perform these tasks, and some of them assume some advanced working knowledge on administering Linux web servers. If you aren’t sure what something means, the best option is probably to skip the section completely.

7.3.1 Adding Swap

To avoid Central crashing if your server runs out of memory, you may want to add swap. If you are having issues with Central running out of memory, we recommend adding more physical memory. However, adding swap can be an effective temporary workaround or a preventative measure against spikes if, for example, multiple people initiate data exports at the same time.

Whether or not you choose to add swap, we recommend monitoring memory usage and adding memory if your server is routinely running close to the physical memory limit.

To add swap, log into your server so you have a console prompt, and run these commands, adapted from this article:

```
fallocate -l 1G /swap
dd if=/dev/zero of=/swap bs=1k count=1024k
chmod 600 /swap
mkswap /swap
swapon /swap
```

Run `nano /etc/sysctl.conf` and add the following to the end of the file to ensure that swap is only used when the droplet is almost out of memory.

```
vm.swappiness=10
```

Finally, run `nano /etc/fstab` and add the following to the end of the file to ensure that the swap file is permanently available.
7.3.2 Adding External Storage

Forms with many large media attachments can fill up your droplet’s storage space. To move your database to external storage, follow these steps:

1. Add a new volume to your droplet.
2. Move the Docker data directory to the new volume.
   (a) To find the location of your new volume, run `df -h`. The mount location will look like `/mnt/volume_nyc1_01`.
   (b) Then create a `docker` folder at that location with `sudo mkdir /mnt/volume_nyc1_01/docker`.
   (c) `/mnt/volume_nyc1_01/docker` will be the `/path/to/your/docker` you use.

7.3.3 Using a Custom SSL Certificate

By default, Central uses Let’s Encrypt to obtain an SSL security certificate. For most users, this should work perfectly, but larger managed internal networks may have their own certificate trust infrastructure. To use your own custom SSL certificate rather than the automatic Let’s Encrypt system:

1. Generate a `fullchain.pem` (-out) file which contains your certificate followed by any necessary intermediate certificate(s).
2. Generate a `privkey.pem` (-keyout) file which contains the private key used to sign your certificate.
3. Copy those files into `files/local/customssl/` within the repository root.
4. In `.env`, set `SSL_TYPE` to `customssl` and set `DOMAIN` to the domain name you registered. As an example: `DOMAIN=MyOdkCollectionServer.com`. Do not include anything like `http://`.
5. Build and run: `docker-compose build nginx`, `docker-compose stop nginx`, `docker-compose up -d nginx`. If that doesn’t work, you may need to first remove your old nginx container (`docker-compose rm nginx`).

7.3.4 Using a Custom Mail Server

Central ships with a basic EXIM server bundled to forward mail out to the internet. To use your own custom mail server:
7.3. Advanced Configuration Options

1. Ensure you have an SMTP relay server visible to your Central server network host.

2. Edit the file files/service/config.json.template to reflect your network hostname, the TCP port, and authentication details. The secure flag is for TLS and should be set to true if the port is 465 and false for other ports. If no authentication is required, remove the auth section.

   
   ```json
   "email": {
     "serviceAccount": "my-replyto-email",
     "transport": "smtp",
     "transportOpts": {
       "host": "smtp.example.com",
       "port": 587,
       "secure": false,
       "auth": {
         "user": "my-smtp-user",
         "pass": "my-smtp-password"
       }
     }
   }
   
   ```

3. Build and run: docker-compose build service, docker-compose stop service, docker-compose up -d service.

7.3.5 Using a Custom Database Server

**Warning:** Using a custom database server, especially one that is not local to your local network, may result in poor performance. We strongly recommend using the Postgres v9.6 server that is bundled with Central.

Central ships with a PostgreSQL database server. To use your own custom database server:

1. Ensure you have a PostgresSQL database server visible to your Central server network host.

2. Ensure your database has UTF8 encoding by running the following command on the database.

   ```sql
   SHOW SERVER_ENCODING;
   ```

3. Ensure CITEXT and pg_trgm extensions exist by running the following commands on the database.

   ```sql
   CREATE EXTENSION IF NOT EXISTS CITEXT;
   CREATE EXTENSION IF NOT EXISTS pg_trgm;
   ```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
4. Edit the file `files/service/config.json.template` to reflect your database host, table, and authentication details.

```json
"database": {
    "host": "my-db-host",
    "user": "my-db-user",
    "password": "my-db-password",
    "database": "my-db-table"
},
```

4. Edit the file `docker-compose.yml` to update the command for the `service` container.

```yaml
command: [ "/wait-for-it.sh", "my-db-host:my-db-port", "--", "/start-odk.sh" ]
```

5. Build and run: `docker-compose build service`, `docker-compose stop service`, `docker-compose up -d service`.

### 7.3.6 Configuring DKIM

**Tip:** Users are not receiving emails? Read `troubleshooting emails` before configuring DKIM.

DKIM is a security trust protocol which is used to help verify mail server identities. Without it, your sent mail is likely to be flagged as spam. If you intend to use a custom mail server (see the following section), these instructions will not be relevant to you. Otherwise:

1. Ensure that your server’s name in DigitalOcean matches your full domain name, and that the hostname does as well. If you had to make changes for this step, restart the server to ensure they take effect.

2. There can be in some cases a placeholder folder that you may have to delete first. If you run this command and no file was deleted, proceed to step 3.

   ```bash
   rmdir ~/central/files/dkim/rsa.private
   ```

3. Now, you’ll need to generate a cryptographic keypair and enable the DKIM configuration. Run these commands:

   ```bash
   cd ~/central/files/dkim
   openssl genrsa -out rsa.private 1024
   openssl rsa -in rsa.private -out rsa.public -pubout -outform PEM
   cp config.disabled config
   ```

4. With the contents of the public key (`cat rsa.public`), you’ll want to create two new TXT DNS records:
7.3. Advanced Configuration Options

(a) At the location `dkim._domainkey.YOUR-DOMAIN-NAME-HERE`, create a new TXT record with the contents `k=rsa; p=PUBLIC-KEY-HERE`. You only want the messy text between the dashed boundaries, and you'll want to be sure to remove any line breaks in the public key text, so that it's all only letters, numbers, +, and /.

(b) At your domain name location, create a new TXT record with the contents `v=spf1 a mx ip4:SERVER-IP-ADDRESS-HERE -all` where you can obtain the server IP address from the DigitalOcean control panel.

5. Finally, build and run to configure EXIM to use the cryptographic keys you generated:

```bash
cd ~/central
docker-compose build mail
docker-compose stop mail
docker-compose up -d mail
```

If you see an error that says *Can't open "rsa.private" for writing, Is a directory.*, you will need to `rmdir ~/central/files/dkim/rsa.private`, then attempt `docker-compose build mail` again. If you see some other error, you may need to first remove your old mail container (`docker-compose rm mail`).

7.3.7 Disabling or Customizing Sentry

By default, we enable Sentry error logging on the backend server, which provides the Central development team with an anonymized log of unexpected programming errors that occur while your server is running. This information is only visible to the development team and should never contain any of your user or form data, but if you feel uncomfortable with this anyway, you can take the following steps to disable Sentry:

1. Edit the file `files/service/config.json.template` and remove the `sentry` lines, starting with "sentry": { through the next three lines until you remove the matching `}.

2. Build and run: `docker-compose build service`, `docker-compose stop service`, `docker-compose up -d service`.

If on the other hand you wish to use your own Sentry instance, take these steps:

1. Create a free account on Sentry, and create a new nodejs project.

2. The new project will generate a DSN of the format `https://SENTRY_KEY@sentry.io/SENTRY_PROJECT`.

3. In `files/service/config.json.template`, replace `SENTRY_KEY` and `SENTRY_PROJECT` with the values from step 2.

```json
{
  "default": {
```
The error logs sent to Sentry (if enabled) are also being written to /var/log/odk/stderr. log in the running backend container.

7.4 Central Command Line Tools

Central allows some administrative actions to be performed by anybody with direct console access to the server itself. Usually, this means only the person who set up the server and installed Central onto it. These tools can be used to:

- create new user accounts,
- reset passwords,
- and manage user permissions.

All of these actions can be done through the website, and if everything is working normally we strongly recommend that you use the web interface to perform these actions. But things happen, and if something gets broken (like everybody forgets their password, or someone deletes all the users), you can use the command line tools to get things working again.

7.4.1 Getting to the tools

First, you’ll need to get to the tools. You’ll need to log into your server’s command line prompt again, like you did when you first set up the server. If you used our DigitalOcean installation steps but can’t quite remember how to do this, we suggest reviewing the section Installing Central as a reminder, or if you can’t remember your password to start at the top of that section to reset your password.

Once you have a command line in front of you (it should say something like root@server-name:#), you’ll want to enter the following commands:

cd central
docker-compose exec service odk-cmd
If you see instructions appear with the section headings Usage, Options, and Commands, you’ll know you’re in the right place. If you are familiar with command line tools in general, those instructions are probably all you need to get going. Otherwise, please see the sections below for a short guide and example on how to use each one.

### 7.4.2 Creating a Web User by command line

If you followed our *DigitalOcean installation steps*, then you’ve already done this once down in this section. You shouldn’t have to do this again unless you deleted all your users. But if you do, please start by performing the steps above in the *Getting to the tools* section. Then, this is what you would type, assuming your email address is example@getodk.org:

```bash
docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email example@getodk.org user-create
```

You will be asked for a password for the account, and if everything worked correctly you should see some data printed out that among other things lists the email you entered a moment ago. The next thing you’ll need to do is to *make the new account an administrator*, which is normally automatically done by the web interface. If you don’t, the new user will not be able to do anything.

### 7.4.3 Setting a Web User password by command line

You can always reset any user’s password from the website login page, which will send them an email with a link to set their new password. However, if for instance that email address no longer works, or the email is getting lost somehow, you can directly set any user’s password with the command line tools.

Please start by performing the steps above in the *Getting to the tools* section. Once you do, here is what you would type, assuming the email address of the account you wish to set a password for is example@getodk.org:

```bash
docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email example@getodk.org user-set-password
```

You will be prompted for a new password. Type it in and press Enter, and if you see text that says *true*, the action succeeded. You can then use the website to log into that user account.

### 7.4.4 Promoting a Web User to administrator by command line

In the current release of Central, all users created by the website interface are automatically administrators. If you create a user using the *user-create* tool shown above, however, you’ll have to perform that step manually. If you do not, the user will be unable to do much of anything at all once they log in.
Please start by performing the steps above in the *Getting to the tools* section. Once you do, here is what you would type, assuming the email address of the account you wish to make an administrator is example@getodk.org:

```
docker-compose exec service odk-cmd --email example@getodk.org user-promote
```

If the action succeeded, you will see text that reads `{"success":"true"}`.

### 7.5 Upgrading Central

We release new versions of Central regularly. You do not have to upgrade to the latest version immediately, but we generally recommend that you do so to get access to the newest features, bug fixes, and security updates.

**Note**

You can check your current version by adding `version.txt` to the URL. For example `https://trial.getodk.cloud/version.txt`.

To perform an upgrade, you’ll first need to get to the software. You’ll need to log into your server’s command line prompt again, like you did when you first set up the server. If you used our *DigitalOcean installation steps* but can’t quite remember how to do this, we suggest reviewing the section *Installing Central* as a reminder, or if you can’t remember your password to start at the top of that section to reset your password.

Once you are logged into your server, navigate back to the project folder (`cd central`). Then, get the latest version of the infrastructure: `git pull`.

(If you have made local changes to the files, you may have to start with `git stash`, then run `git stash pop` after you perform the pull. If you aren’t sure, just run `git pull` anyway and it will tell you.)

Now, get the latest client and server: `git submodule update -i`. Then, build your server from the latest code you just fetched: `docker-compose build`.

**Note**

If you run into problems with this step, try stopping the Central software (`docker-compose stop`) and retry `docker-compose build` after it has shut down the Central website.

Next, you need to do a little bit of maintenance. Run `docker prune`. If it thinks `prune` is not a docker command, run `docker image prune` instead. You’ll be asked to confirm the removal of all dangling images. Agree by typing the letter `y` and pressing `Enter`.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
Finally, restart the running server to pick up the changes: `docker-compose stop` and `docker-compose up -d`.

### 7.5.1 Upgrading to Central 0.9

Particularly if you are installed on DigitalOcean, you will need to modify the system firewall for Enketo features in Central to work correctly.

The quickest way to do this is to run `ufw disable` while logged into your server’s command line prompt. You should see the message `Firewall stopped and disabled on system startup`. If so, you have configured the firewall correctly.

---

**For advanced administrators**

While it sounds dangerous, disabling your system firewall does not put your server at greater risk. In fact, most Linux operating systems come with the system firewall disabled.

If you don’t want to disable the firewall entirely, you can instead configure Docker, `iptables`, and `ufw` yourself. This can be really difficult to do correctly, so we don’t recommend most people try. Another option is to use an upstream network firewall.

The goal here is to ensure that it is possible to access the host through its external IP from within each Docker container. In particular, if you can successfully `curl` your Central website over HTTPS on its public domain name, all Enketo features should work correctly.

---

### 7.6 Backing Up Central

Having a data backup strategy is a critical part of running a web service like ODK Central. Backups should go to a system in a different physical location from where Central is installed in order to prevent data loss across a broad range of scenarios. Many cloud providers offer backup strategies that run automatically. If you are an experienced system administrator, you may want to set up your own backups of the PostgreSQL database that contains all of Central’s data. One strategy for doing this is to `configure a separate database server`. If you don’t already have a server-wide backup system in place and don’t want to set up your own database backup, Central provides a managed backup system to Google Drive.

#### 7.6.1 Managed backups

ODK Central features an optional off-site backup system to keep your data safe. For each backup, we extract all your data (including user accounts, forms, and submissions), we encrypt it so that only you can access it, and we send the encrypted result to your Google Drive account for safekeeping. We send data to Google Drive because it is a service that
many people already use, it is easy to set up, and it is relatively inexpensive. Because backups are encrypted, Google can’t see their contents. However, you should verify that policies and laws that govern your project allow this usage.

About Google Drive account access

When ODK Central requests to connect to your Google Drive account, it only requests permissions from Google to:

- Create new files and folders in your Drive
- Read and modify files and folders that it created

This means that ODK Central cannot read or modify any other files or folders in your Drive, no matter what.

To see your current managed backups status, navigate to → System at the top of the Central management website. You should see a status page for backups that looks something like this:

![System Settings](image)

7.6.2 Setting up backups

1. To set up a new automated backup, click on the Set up now button on the right.

**Tip:** If you see a Terminate button instead of a Set up now button, you already have an automated backup configured. Right now, you can only have one automated backup scheduled at a time. If you wish to change where the backup is saved, you will need to terminate the old one before creating a new one.
2. You’ll be asked to enter an optional passphrase. This passphrase is what the server will use to encrypt your backups. You will be unable to restore the backup without the passphrase, exactly as you type it in here. If you leave this field blank, we will still encrypt your backup data but anybody will be able to decrypt it by doing nothing more than leaving the passphrase blank.

3. The next step talks about connecting to your Google Drive account to store your backups. When you press Next again, a Google permissions page will appear in a popup. You will need to press Allow to proceed. If you are feeling unsure about granting access, please see the "About Google Drive account access” note at the top of this page.

4. Once you press Allow, you will see a screen in the popup which contains a lengthy code, and instructions to copy and paste it back into "your application.” Copy the code, switch back to the ODK Central website, and paste it into the Confirmation text box. Press Next to confirm it.
5. The setup box should close and you should see a message telling you *Success! Automated backups are now configured.*

6. Backups are scheduled to run once a day, at 02:00 server local time. If more than 24 hours pass without a backup completing successfully, you’ll want to double check that everything has been correctly set up.

**Tip:** You can verify your Google Drive usage on the Drive storage page. You may want to periodically remove older backups to free up space.

### 7.6.3 Performing an immediate backup

It is possible to immediately download a backup of your database to your own computer. As of Central v1.1, you will still need to have managed backups configured in order to access this functionality in the web management interface. Once you do, you will see a button *Download Backup Now* next to the *Terminate* button near the top.

Clicking this button will perform an immediate backup and download the result to your computer. This process can take some time, and it is normal for data to download quite
7.6. Backing Up Central

slowly for many minutes before it gets faster. Take care in using this feature particularly if you have a lot of data and traffic, as performing a backup while a lot of data is being saved to the database can cause a lot of slowdown.

You can also use the API to download a backup without configuring managed backups.

7.6.4 Restoring a backup

Restoring a backup to a Central instance will entirely replace all of its data with the backup. Please be very sure you are restoring to the right place with the right backup snapshot before proceeding.

**Note:** You cannot restore a backup to an older version of Central. For example, if you create a backup from Central v1.0, you cannot restore it to Central v0.9.

1. The first thing you’ll have to do is download your backup from Google Drive, which you can do from the Google Drive website. You will find the backups in a folder called ODK Backups. Each file is a single backup snapshot, and each snapshot should be titled backup-{date}T{time}Z.zip.

2. Once you have the file on your local computer, you will have to transfer that backup snapshot file to your ODK Central server. If you don’t know how to do this, and you used our DigitalOcean installation guide, please see their instructions on how to transfer a file to a Droplet.

3. Once the file is on the server itself, you’ll need to log back into it, like you did when you first set up the server.

**Tip:** If you used our *DigitalOcean installation steps* but can’t quite remember how to do this, we suggest reviewing the *login steps*.

4. Now you’ll want to put it in a special place where it can be used by the restore tool: /data/transfer. If, for example, you uploaded the file to /root/backup-2018-01-01T00:00:00Z.zip, you’ll want to run this command in order to move it:

```
mv /root/backup-2018-01-01T00:00:00Z.zip /data/transfer/
```

5. Now you need to run the restore script. **Please note again** that all data on this server is about to be replaced by the backup snapshot data! Anybody currently using the server will be kicked off and all changes made since the last backup will be lost. When you are sure you wish to proceed, run the following commands:
You’ll have to replace the filename following /data/transfer with your own snapshot filename, and the text SECRET_PASSPHRASE with the passphrase you typed when back-ups were first set up. If you did not set up a passphrase, immediately press Enter after you have finished putting the :file'.zip' filename in:

docker-compose exec service node /usr/odk/lib/bin/restore.js /data/transfer/backup-2018-01-01T00:00:00Z.zip 'SECRET_PASSPHRASE'

6. The server will think for a while, and then print some more instructions. You will have to refresh any browser windows you have open to ODK Central to proceed. If you run into error messages at this step, please read them carefully and then seek help on the ODK Forum if you are not sure what to do.

### 7.7 Troubleshooting Central

#### 7.7.1 Users aren’t receiving emails

Central uses email as a way to verify user identity when setting or changing passwords. This helps ensure that only the intended user has access to their Central account.

Email sounds like a simple technology but in practice there are many things that can cause message delivery issues. By default, Central is installed with a mail server which can be used without configuration. However, it will not work in every environment. For example:

- Many cloud providers restrict the usage of simple mail servers such as Central’s as a spam-prevention strategy
- You can be assigned an IP address that was previously used for sending spam and is therefore blocked by many mail recipients
- Your domain may not be recognized by mail recipients and therefore messages from it may be discarded or marked as spam

To address delivery issues, consider using a dedicated email service such as Mailgun. Because Central doesn’t send very many emails, using such a service will generally be a cost-effective way of ensuring email delivery. Once you have an account set up, you will need to configure Central to use it.

If you want to directly send emails from your Central installation, the mail-tester service can help you identify what barriers to email delivery you might have. Create a Central account with the email address that it provides, retrieve your results, and then delete the
user. Typically, the first thing you will need to do is configure DKIM which will provide email recipients confidence that emails were actually sent by your Central server rather than by a spammer pretending to be your server.

7.7.2 Preview could not connect with server

You may run into a “Could not connect with Server” error message when previewing forms. This error message is typically because your host machine has not made its DNS servers available to Central.

To resolve this problem, first identify your upstream DNS servers. Run `cat /run/systemd/resolve/resolv.conf` to see your current list of nameservers with their IP addresses. They will look like this:

```
nameserver 1.2.3.4
nameserver 9.8.7.6
```

Now, run `nano /etc/docker/daemon.json` to make those nameservers and, optionally, the Google DNS (8.8.8.8) as a fallback available to Docker. Put the following in the `daemon.json` file.

```
{
    "dns": ["<ip1 from above>", "<ip2 from above>", "8.8.8.8"]
}
```

Finally, stop the containers, restart Docker, and bring the containers back up with `docker-compose stop, systemctl restart docker and docker-compose up -d`.

7.7.3 Export produces corrupt zip

If you have installed Central on a 1GB server or your forms collect many large media files, you may encounter problems exporting submission .zip files. Usually, the .zip file will end up being empty, or much smaller than expected and possibly corrupt. If you are expecting to collect media files, we recommend having at least 2GB of memory. When collecting images, we recommend specifying a maximum size in form design.

The preferred approach to addressing this is to increase the amount of memory that your server has. Instructions for doing this on DigitalOcean can be found in this support article.

If you can’t increase the memory available, you can alternately add swap. This will result in slower performance than adding physical memory but can be acceptable if it is only needed for occasional exports.
7.7.4 File upload fails with 413

If you get an error 413 when trying to upload a submission or when trying to upload a form attachment, the file you are trying to upload is too large. By default, files up to 100MB are accepted. We typically recommend reducing the size of the files to upload if possible. For example, images can be scaled down in form design.

If you absolutely must upload files over 100MB, you can change the client_max_body_size nginx directive:

```
cd
cd central
docker-compose stop
nano files/nginx/odk.conf.template
<modify the nginx conf value for client_max_body_size>
docker-compose up -d
```

7.7.5 Database disappeared after running Docker commands

It is possible to accidentally reset the database by running docker-compose down. We are working on a way to prevent this error in the future. For now, if you have run this command and your data has disappeared, you can follow these steps to relocate the data and attach it back to your server:

1. Run the following command: `docker inspect --type container central_postgres_1 -f '{{(index .Mounts 0).Source}}'`. It should print out a long name starting with /var/lib/docker/volumes/ and ending in a long string of letters and numbers. Copy those letters and numbers and set them aside. They correspond to the location of your current (reset) database.

2. Run `docker volume ls`. This will tell you all the locations that docker has stored information. We need to find the location that contains your old data.

3. For each long string of letters and numbers you just printed out, run `file /var/lib/docker/volumes/{letters and numbers}/_data/pg_hba.conf`. So for example, `file /var/lib/docker/volumes/cd597c21c7f0920fd46001dfd36d454/_data/pg_hba.conf`.

4. If it tells you No such file or directory, move onto the next row and try again with the file command.

5. If it says ASCII text, you have found database data. But if the string of letters and numbers you just pasted is the same as what you found in step 1, it’s not the data you’re looking for. Move onto the next set of letters and numbers and try again with step 3.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
6. Hopefully you found the data before you got to the end of the list. We found two sets of important letters and numbers following these steps: one in step 1 and one is step 5. Call these FIRST and SECOND, respectively.

7. Now to restore the data, you’ll want to run the following commands:

```
cd
cd central
docker-compose stop
pushd /var/lib/docker/volumes
mv FIRST postgres.data.bak
mv SECOND FIRST
popd
docker-compose up -d
```

Go to your site in a browser and try to log in with an account that previously existed. If that doesn’t immediately work, try doing another `docker-compose stop` followed by `docker-compose up`. 
8.1 Managing Users in Central

There are two types of user accounts in ODK Central: Web Users and App Users.

- **Web Users** have accounts on the Central management website. These accounts are global across all projects on the server. They can log into the web interface and perform administrative actions like user management, form upload and management, and submission data viewing and download. They can also fill and submit Forms directly in their web browser.

- **App Users** can use mobile data collection apps like ODK Collect to connect to Central. App Users are limited to a single project at a time. Once connected through the app, they will be able to see the list of forms, download the ones they need, and upload completed submissions to those forms.

You will need both types of users in order to run a successful data collection project: a Web User must upload a valid form definition, an App User must upload submissions to it from their mobile device, and the Web User will then be able to see those submissions in the web interface and download them for analysis.

### 8.1.1 Web User Roles

Central features Role-based User permissioning. In the current release of Central, we provide four roles: Administrator, Project Manager, Project Viewer, and Data Collector. In a future release, you will be able to define your own roles as you see fit.

By default, Central roles are configured to allow the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Administrator</th>
<th>Project Manager</th>
<th>Project Viewer</th>
<th>Data Collector</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Projects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued on next page
### Table 8.1 – continued from previous page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Administrator</th>
<th>Project Manager</th>
<th>Project Viewer</th>
<th>Data Collector</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit Details</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archive</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Project Forms</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List All</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Attachments</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Details</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set State</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Project Form Submissions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create (API)</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create (browser)</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View &amp; Download</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OData Access</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Project App Users</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List All</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoke Access</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See Code</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Web Users</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List All</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Details</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Email Addr.</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoke Password</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Server Configuration</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setup Backups</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop Backups</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Managing Web Users

You can make Users into Administrators from the *site-wide Users panel*, and you can assign them as Project Managers or Viewers on the *Settings tab* within the Project.

To manage web users, navigate to → *Users* → *Web Users* at the top of the Central management website. You should see a listing of users that looks like this:
8.1. Managing Users in Central

Creating a Web User

To create a new Web User, click on the Create web user button on the right side of the Web Users listing page. You will see a popup that looks like this:

To create a new Web User, input the email address of the person who should receive access. Press Create once you are satisfied with the email address.

That email account will shortly receive an email with the subject line "ODK Central account created". If you do not see the email, check your spam folder. In the email, there will be a link which will allow the recipient to set a password for their new account, after which they will be able to log in.

The link is only valid for 24 hours. If 24 hours pass and it has not been used, you should use the Reset Password tool to send them a new link.
Newly created Web Users are only able to log in and edit their profile information. In order to give them access to do useful work on the server, please read the following section.

**Assigning a site-wide Web User Role**

As mentioned under *Web User Roles* above, there are four Roles you may assign to Web Users in the current release of ODK Central: Administrator, Project Manager, Project Viewer, and Data Collector. Administrators may perform any action on the system, while Project Managers may perform any action on their assigned Project(s). Project Viewers may only see created forms and submissions within the Project they are assigned to, and cannot edit anything. Data Collectors may see the list of all Forms in the Project, and retrieve basic information about them, but may only create new Submissions. They cannot see any Submissions.

To learn how to assign a Project Manager or Viewer role, please see the *Managing Project Roles* section in the Projects guide.

To assign an Administrator role, navigate to the Web Users administration panel. There, you should see a table like this one:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Email Address</th>
<th>Sitewide Role</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:alice@.opendatakit.org">alice@.opendatakit.org</a></td>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:bob@.opendatakit.org">bob@.opendatakit.org</a></td>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:chelsea@.opendatakit.org">chelsea@.opendatakit.org</a></td>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Under the *Sitewide Role* column in the table, you will see dropdown inputs with the options *Administrator* and *None*. To make a Web User an Administrator, change the dropdown next to their name to *Administrator*. You will see the page think for a moment, and then it will inform you that the action is done. To take away Administrator rights from a Web User, change the dropdown to *None*.

You will not be able to change your own Role in the system. To change your own Role, you will need to get somebody else to log in and change it for you.

**Resetting a Web User password**

Any user may request a reset of their own password by using the link at the bottom of the login screen:
After submitting the reset form, the user should receive an email with the subject line "ODK Central account password reset". If they cannot find it, they should check their spam folder. When resetting a password this way, the user’s current password continues to function until they actually use the link in the email to set a new one.

We also provide a separate way for administrators to directly reset any Web User’s password in the administration panel for two reasons:

1. In case the user’s password has been stolen and needs to be disabled immediately.

2. In case the user does not know how to do this themselves.

With the administrative reset, the user’s password stops working immediately and they will be completely unable to log in until a new one is set. They will receive an email with instructions and a link on how to do this exactly as shown above. To perform the administrative reset, navigate to the Web Users listing page, and use the Actions menu at the right side of the table:
Chapter 8. Using ODK Central

Retiring a Web User

When you retire a Web User, their login access will be revoked and they will be immediately signed out everywhere. They will disappear from the Web Users management list, but any records that trace their actions (submission uploader or form creator name, or audit log action initiator, for example) will still show their information.

If a retired Web User attempts to reset their password, they will receive a special email explaining that their account has been retired.

To retire a Web User, find them on the Web User administration panel, and open the Actions menu:

From here, select Retire User and follow the on-screen instructions.

8.1.2 Managing App Users

App Users never gain any access to the management website: they do not have email addresses or passwords associated with their account, only a nickname so you can tell which is which. Once a Web User creates an App User within some project, a configuration QR Code will be generated which will grant a mobile device access to that project as that App User. Access can be revoked at any time, and Web Users can see which App Users uploaded which submissions.

A newly created App User does not have access to any Forms. To give them access once they are created, use the Form Access tab on the Project. You will be able to allow access to particular Forms within the Project for each App User.

Tip: In version 0.6 and earlier of ODK Central, all App Users were granted download and submission rights on all Forms within their Project. These users retain their access when you first upgrade to version 0.7. Once you have version 0.7 installed, you can adjust these Users’ access per form.

To manage App Users, navigate to the project whose App Users you wish to manage, and then click on the App Users tab just below the project name. You should see a listing of...
8.1. Managing Users in Central

users that looks like this:

Creating an App User

To create a new App User, click on the Create app user button on the right side of the App Users listing page. You will see a popup that looks like this:

Once you provide a nickname for the user (usually the name of the data enumerator who will carry the mobile device works well), click Create. The user will be created, and you will see a screen that looks like this:
That App User has now been created and granted access to use their mobile device to list, download, and submit to all available forms within their project. To do so, however, their mobile device will have to get set up with this new account. That is what the QR Code you see on this screen is for. Read on to the next section to find out how to use it.

**Configuring an App User mobile device**

A mobile device will need to be configured to access your ODK Central server as a particular App User in order to gain access to the forms and upload submissions within their project. This is done by way of the Collect Settings QR Code.

The QR Code contains information about how to find your ODK Central server, and how to prove to the server that the mobile device belongs to a valid App User. In future versions of ODK Central, it will be possible to specify other settings to be imported to the device as well.

There are two ways to access the QR Code for an App User. The first is in the second step of the App User creation wizard. Please find the second screenshot in the previous section to see what this looks like. If you close out of this wizard, you can still access the QR Code by clicking on the See code link in the listings table:
If instead of a See code link you see text that says Access revoked, that App User no longer has access to the server. Create a new App User if you need a new QR Code.

Once you have found the QR Code, you will be able to use it to configure ODK Collect. Please see the section on importing settings into Collect to learn how to do this.

Revoking an App User

You may wish to revoke an App User’s access, for instance if their QR Code has been stolen or if they have left the organization. To do so, navigate to the App Users listing page, and use the Actions menu at the right side of the table:

App Users whose access has been revoked will still appear in the App Users listing table, and will still be visible as the submitter of any submissions they uploaded. However, they no longer have a valid QR Code with which they can configure an ODK Collect installation, and any mobile devices already configured with their code will no longer have access to the project.
8.2 Managing Projects in Central

New as of version 0.4, almost everything in ODK Central is organized by Project. Forms, Managers, and App Users are all partitioned by project. Both on the administration website as well as on a mobile device (within ODK Collect, for example), access to each project and its forms can be managed person-by-person. Only the Central administrative staff can create and grant initial access to projects.

8.2.1 Projects Overview and Roadmap

Projects are a work in progress that we will add to and improve over the next few releases. If you are working on ODK Central version 0.4, projects work like this:

- All forms must belong to a project. It is not possible to create a form that is not part of a project. It is not possible to assign one form to multiple projects (though the same form may be uploaded to as many projects as desired).

- All App Users (who may access Project Forms through mobile device applications like Collect) must also belong to a particular project.
  - When a user connects to a project through Collect, they will only be able to see and submit new data to forms within that project.

If you have upgraded to version 0.5, the following changes have been made:

- Only Web Users (who are allowed to administer ODK Central through the management website) marked Administrator have administrative access to the main site settings and all projects.
  - However, all Web Users created before version 0.5 were already marked Administrator. You will have to go change their Site-wide Role to None if you wish to remove these privileges.

- Normal Web Users who are not Administrators can be made Managers on select projects. These users have the ability to manage anything about the project. They can:
  - Appoint other project managers.
  - Create, manage, and archive forms on the project.
  - Access all submitted data within the project.
  - Create, manage, and retire App Users for the project.
  - Manage and archive the project itself.

Since the major changes that occurred in version 0.5, we have additionally made the following improvements:
8.2. Managing Projects in Central

- Better, centralized form state and access management.
- More granular project access, in the form of a Project Viewer role which allows read-only access only to Forms and Submission data.

In future releases, we have a loose roadmap with at least the following goals:

- Change the relationship between Collect and Central so that with one button you can synchronize the mobile device to some centrally managed desired state.
  - So for instance, you can decide which forms should be available on Collect within Central once, and within Collect just press "synchronize" to update to that state.
  - Eventually, Collect app settings may be synchronized this way as well.
  - And eventually, different App Users of different roles may be assigned different device states.
- Download an entire project’s data at once.

If you have ideas on how projects might be made more useful for you, please do not hesitate to leave us feedback on the ODK Forum.

8.2.2 Migrating to Projects

If you have an ODK Central server installed which is version 0.3 or earlier, your existing data will be migrated into a project when you update.

All of your existing forms and App Users will be placed into a project entitled "Forms you created before projects existed". There are no longer site-wide App Users, so that panel will no longer be present.

**Important: Upgrading to version 0.5**

Mobile clients like Collect which were configured to access version 0.3 will continue to work without intervention for version 0.4, but they must be reconfigured with a new QR Code access token from Central before migration to 0.5, because for version 0.5 this backwards compatibility will be removed.

If you do not refresh the access tokens before upgrading to 0.5, you will have to reconfigure the device with a new QR Code from 0.5 in order to restore the connection.

8.2.3 Creating a Project

Only ODK Central administrators may create projects. To create a project, navigate to the Projects section of the Central management homepage, and click on the *New* button.
You will be asked for a name for your new project. When you provide one and press *Create*, your project will be created and you will be taken to its management page.

### 8.2.4 Managing a Project

You can find all the projects you have access to in the Projects section of the ODK Central management website homepage.

When you click on its name, you will be taken to its management page.
8.2. Managing Projects in Central

Here, you will find some basic details about the project, and a listing of all the forms in the project. You can click on any form name to manage that form and view its submission data.

**Editing Project Settings**

To edit Project Settings, first navigate to the Project, then click on the *Settings* tab underneath the Project name.

From here, you will be able to edit the Project Name. You will also see a section for Archiving a Project, which is described in more detail *below*. 
Managing Project Roles

Any Web User may be assigned as a Project Manager or Project Viewer on a Project.

Project Managers may perform any action upon and within that Project, including changing its name, adding more Project Managers, and uploading and managing Forms and Submissions. Any Web Users that are site-wide Administrators will already be able to perform these actions on any Project without being explicitly named a Manager.

Project Viewers can view basic information about all Forms in the Project, and download Submission data or access it over OData for analysis. They cannot make any modifications to any data or settings.

Data Collectors may view the list of Forms, retrieve basic information about them, and submit new records to any Form in the Project.

You will find a detailed breakdown of user roles here.

To assign or remove Managers, Viewers, or Collectors for a Project, first go to the Project overview page, then click on the Project Managers tab under the Project name. You should see the following page:

If roles have not already been assigned to the Project, the table will be empty. This is normal: the table only shows Users with assigned roles on the Project at first. To find a Web User to assign them a role, search for them in the Search for a user field above the table. You can find users by their Display Name or their Email. Type part or all of either into the box, and press Enter. The search results will appear in the table.
8.2. Managing Projects in Central

To make a Web User into a Project Manager, Viewer, or a Data Collector, change the dropdown next to their name in the Project Role column from None to the desired role. You should see the page think for a moment, and then a confirmation of success. If you clear the search in the text box, the newly assigned user should remain.

To demote a Web User from any role, change the dropdown back to None.

Managing Project App Users

To manage App Users for a Project, you can navigate to the Project overview page, then click on the App Users tab under the Project name. For more information about creating, managing, and retiring Project App Users, please see this section.

Managing Form Access

Right now, Central offers two ways to control around Form Access within each Project:

- Each Form’s Lifecycle State controls whether any App User can download and/or submit to that Form. Near the end of a Form’s life, for example, it makes sense to disallow downloading the Form as a blank, but still receive any submissions that have already been created.

- Access to download and submit each Form can be customized per App User associated with the Project. When first creating a Form, for example, it makes sense to only allow a testing user access to the Form so that one can be sure that it works before rolling it out to all users.

We place these access controls for all Forms in a single place, on the Form Access tab at the Project level. To access it, navigate to the Project and select the tab at the top of the page labeled Form Access.
On the left side of the Form Access page, you will find a list of all the Forms in the Project, along with a dropdown selection to set the Form Lifecycle state for each one. Along the top, you will see all active App Users in the Project. At each row/column intersection, there is a checkbox that governs whether each App User is allowed access to each Form.

**Tip:** You may see a pencil icon next to the Lifecycle state dropdown on some Forms. This means that those Forms are currently Drafts, with no published version. They will not be visible to data collection clients no matter the Lifecycle state setting, or the checkboxes on this page. Once a Draft Form is published, then the settings on this page will immediately take effect.

If you are having trouble recalling what each Form State means, the ? icon in the header will give you a quick recap:
As you make changes to Form States and App User access, they will be highlighted in yellow. You can make all the changes you’d like to apply at once (for example, marking an old version of a Form as Closing while granting Open access to the new one), and once you are satisfied with what you see you can click the Save button at the top-right of the screen to apply them all at once.

**Tip:** When you first create an App User, it will not have access to any Forms. When you first create a Form, no App Users will be allowed to access it.

### Archiving a Project

When you Archive a Project, it will appear at the bottom of the Project List on the homepage, with *(archived)* added onto the end of its name.

In version 0.6 of Central, archiving a Project would disable certain features on it. We have eliminated this behavior, so all your archived Projects can still be used and manipulated freely.

To Archive a Project, first navigate to the Project, then click on the *Settings* tab underneath the Project name.
Click on the red *Archive this Project* button on the right, and follow the on-screen instructions to proceed.

### 8.3 Managing Forms in Central

Forms are at the heart of ODK. Once fetched onto a mobile device from ODK Central, they define the questions, validation, and logic to be presented during data collection. They also serve to organize the data coming back from mobile devices.

#### 8.3.1 Forms in ODK Central

In ODK Central, there are four important tasks you’ll perform while managing a data collection project:

1. **Form drafting** is where you design the Form itself, laying out many details like the questions and acceptable responses. ODK Central itself does not help with form design: instead, please take a look at the many available tools and the *introduction to form design* for help creating your form. Central does, however, help with testing your design, with Form Drafts. When you first upload your Form, it will be a Draft to which you can connect a mobile device and submit test data. If you are not satisfied with the Form, you can adjust the design and upload a new version in place of the old Draft. Once you are satisfied, you can Publish the Form to make it ready for use.

2. **Form lifecycle** settings allow you to control who can access and submit to particular Forms. These tools can help manage user permissions, but they can also help phase out outdated Forms as they come to the end of their life. You can control these using the *Form Access* tab on the Project.

3. **Data extraction and analysis** can occur either at the end of the project, or continually as the project runs. Either way, ODK Central provides several different methods
for extracting and analyzing your submission data. This is covered in the Form Submissions article.

4. **Form updates** allow you to make changes to a Form while it is already in use. Central allows you to create a new Draft of any Form at any time. As with initial Form creation, this Draft allows you to test your changes in a staging environment where it will not affect the live Form or its data. When you are satisfied with the Draft, you can again Publish it, and it will replace the live version.

Drafting and version updates are new as of Central 0.8. We will cover all of these topics in the sections below.

### 8.3.2 Uploading a form to ODK Central

As mentioned, ODK Central does not feature a built-in form design utility. Please take a look at the many available tools and the introduction to form design for help creating your form.

As of version 0.7, Central will accept either XForms `.xml` or XLSForm `.xls/.xlsx` files. If you have written your own `.xml` file, we strongly recommend that you first double check that it is valid using ODK Validate. If you upload an XLSForm spreadsheet, Central will convert it to an XForm for you, and it will be automatically validated as part of that process.

Once you have your form file, the next step will be to upload it into ODK Central. To do this, navigate to the Project (click on its name from the ODK Central homepage) to which you would like to add the Form, and locate the Forms listing section at the bottom of that page:
From there, click on the New button next to the section header, and you should see a popup appear:

You can either click on the choose one button to browse for your .xml, .xls, or .xlsx file, or if you already have it handy somewhere, you can drag it over the gray box and drop it to choose it. Either way, once you have chosen your file (you will see the name of your file at the bottom of the gray box when you do), you can click on the Create button immediately below to upload the form.
Some errors you may see:

- If you are uploading an XLSForm, and the converter flags warnings with it, your form will not be immediately created. You’ll be shown the warnings, and given the option to either ignore them and create the form anyway, or else you can fix the issues and start over by uploading a new file.

- You may see a message that reads **A resource already exists with xmlFormId value(s) of xyz.** If you do, there already exists a form within this project with the same unique designation. If you are using XLSForm, try changing the name of the file or the form_id in the settings sheet. If you designed the form by hand, please check the id="..." attribute immediately inside the <instance> tag.

- You may see a message that says **A form previously existed which had the same formId and version as the one you are attempting to create now. To prevent confusion, please change one or both and try creating the form again.** This means there once was a form within this project that has since been deleted that has exactly the same formId (see the previous bullet point) and version designation as the one you are now trying to upload. Central won’t accept the new form, because this conflict could cause confusion with mobile devices that still have the old form sitting around. To upload this form, change either the formId (again, see the previous bullet point) or update the version and try again.

Once the form is successfully uploaded, you will be taken to the Form Draft page. It will not be accessible to data collection clients until you publish the Draft, which we will cover in the following section.

### 8.3.3 Working with Form Drafts

Form Drafts, available as of Central 0.8, provide a way to safely and easily verify the design of your Form before you make it available for use. Drafts are accessible only to privileged Project staff. Each Form Draft has a unique access token which allows configured data collection clients to submit test submissions to the Draft. These test submissions disappear automatically when the Draft is published. Once a Draft is published, it is available for use according to the access rules you have specified in the *Form Access* tab on the Project.
The Draft Status page gives insight into the current status of your Draft, and provides controls for managing it.

On the left, you will find the Draft Checklist, which suggests the steps you might take before publishing your Draft. On the right are details about the currently uploaded Draft version of the Form, including its current version string, and actions you may take on the Draft:

- The Upload new definition button will allow you to upload a new Form definition, which will replace the current Draft version. When this happens, all test submissions will be erased. If you have uploaded Media Files, Central will attempt to preserve any that match the new definition.

- The Publish Draft button will publish the Draft, making it available for use according to the access rules you have specified on the Form Access tab on the Project. Any test submissions you have made will be erased.

- The Abandon Draft button will delete the Draft. When there is not yet a published version, this will delete the entire Form. If the Form has been published, only the Draft will be deleted.

Tip: When a form is first created, none of the existing App Users on the project will be able to access it for download or submission, even once the Form is published. Once you are ready to allow App Users to access the form, use the Project Form Access tab.
When you first create a new Form, the navigation tabs on the left will not be accessible. They pertain to the published version of the Form, and will become available once you publish your Draft. The tabs on the right, within the gray Draft section, relate to the Draft.

If your Draft requires Media Files, there will be a checklist step asking you to upload them, and a Media Files tab at the top of the page. See the next section *Forms With Attachments* for more information about uploading and managing attachments.

The *Testing* Draft tab shows test submissions that have been made to the Draft, and instructions for doing so:

At the top of the page are instructions and a QR Code which will configure a mobile device to submit to the Draft Form. For help configuring a mobile device, please see *importing settings into Collect*. The table below these instructions contains any test submissions that have been made to the current Draft. For help with this table or exporting test data, please see *Form Submissions in Central*.

### 8.3.4 Forms With Attachments

If your Form Draft references any external files (images, audio, or video included as part of your question prompts, or data lookup files used to populate selection lists), Central will see this and open up some additional displays and controls you will need to provide those external files:
If you see this extra **Upload Form Media Files** checklist step and **Media Files** tab at the top of your Form Draft checklist, then Central believes you need to upload some files associated with this form. If the checklist step has been checked off, then you’ve already completed this task: great work! Otherwise, click on the → **Media Files** tab at the top to see what files you’ll need to provide.

This form design references three files that we’ll need to provide, one of which we’ve already uploaded. You can see the name and expected type of the file in the table, as well as when the file was last uploaded. You can click on the name of any uploaded file to download what Central has for it. To upload a new one, you’ll want to drag-and-drop one or more files onto
8.3. Managing Forms in Central

the table.

On File Types and Contents

While Central will detect the type of file the form design expects, and will verify that the name of any uploaded file matches one that is expected, Central will not double-check the type of the file, nor the contents of the file for you. So, just because Central accepts your file does not necessarily mean that it will work correctly.

Once you publish a Draft, you will not be able to modify the Attachments associated with it without creating a new Draft.

Bulk-uploading Many Attachments At Once

If you select and drag many files at once onto the table, Central will automatically try to match each file with a name in the table. You’ll have a chance to see what it came up with and confirm that things look okay before the upload begins. You will see a warning if one or more of your dragged files don’t match any of the expected names.
Uploading One Attachment

If you drag a single file onto the table, you’ll have the option of which table row you’d like to upload that file into. This way, if the file isn’t named exactly what Central expects, you can still upload a file into that slot without having to rename it on your own computer. But if the file does have the appropriate name, you can drop it somewhere other than a specific slot (for example, just below or just above the table) to have Central match it up with the correct slot automatically.

8.3.5 The Form Overview page

Here, you can get a brief summary of the status of your form, and recommended next steps. You are automatically taken here when you publish a Form Draft or click on the form name in the Form listing page. You can also get back here from other form-related pages by clicking the → Overview tab below the name of the form.
8.3. Managing Forms in Central

The documentation on this page is a more detailed introductory explanation of form management in ODK Central, but the checklist you find on the Overview page is tailored to the current status of your form and your project and is a great place to look when you aren’t sure what to do next.

In the future, look forward to seeing even more useful information at-a-glance on this page.

8.3.6 Seeing Form Submissions

To see the current submissions uploaded to Central for a form, you can click on the → Submissions tab below the name of the form. Here, you will see a summary table of all known submissions, and you will find multiple options for downloading and analyzing your submission data. This page and these options are covered in more detail in the Managing Form Submissions in Central article.

8.3.7 Managing Public Access Links

Public Access Links allow broad web-based distribution of a Form for direct responses from subjects. They can be used to conduct large remote self-administered data collection campaigns, or allow direct surveying of the public at large. Respondents will fill the Form directly in their web browser.
For more information, please see the *relevant section* in the Submission article.

### 8.3.8 Managing Form Lifecycle

Forms can be in one of three lifecycle stages: **Open**, **Closing**, and **Closed**. All forms start in **Open** state when they are first created. You can see what each of these means below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Available for download to apps</th>
<th>Accepts new submissions from apps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you can see, you can use the **Closing** state to prevent further distribution of a form while still allowing the final few submissions to come in, while the **Closed** state effectively turns the form off completely. You can always set the form lifecycle stage to whatever you want: you can always, for example, re-open a closed form.

To set the form lifecycle stage, go to the **Form Access** tab for the Project, under the name of the Project at the top of the page. You may have to navigate back out of the Form first by clicking on the **Back to Project Overview** link at the top of the page. Here, you will find the three possible stages in a dropdown for each Form on the left side of the page. Select the ones you want for each Form, then click **Save** at the top-right to save the changes.

You can find more information about the Form Access page [here](https://docs.getodk.org).

### 8.3.9 Updating Forms to a New Version

As of Central 0.8, it is possible to update a published Form with a new definition, or new Media Files, and to test these changes before they are applied to the Form in use.

There is one primary restriction Central enforces on updated definitions: once defined in a published Form version, each field Data Name (in technical terms, the Instance XPath) cannot change its Data Type. Unused fields may be removed, and new fields may be added, but if any field reuses a previously existing Data Name, it must have the same Type as it did before. If you run into an error with this restriction, the easiest solution is usually to rename the changed field to a new name.

To begin the process of updating a published Form, click on the **Create a new Draft** button in the Draft navigation on the Form:
Initially, the new Draft will have the same definition as the published Form. If you only want to update attachment Media Files, this means you don’t have to bother uploading a definition at all: you can go straight to the Media Files tab and upload the changed files.

You can replace the Draft definition, Media Files, and make test submissions as with the initial Form Draft before the Form was first published. Test submissions will not interfere with published Form submissions.

Once you are satisfied that your updated Form is ready to be published for immediate use, you can click on the Publish Draft button on the Draft Status tab.

Form Version naming

If you did not change the definition, or your updated definition did not change the version of the Form, Central will not be able to publish the Form as-is. This is because the version must change in order for data collection clients to understand that they should update. You can upload a new definition with a changed version, or else Central will offer to change it in-place for you.

Once the Draft has been published, it becomes the version in use and there will no longer be a Draft associated with the Form.

What happens to my submissions?

When a new Form version is published in place of an old one, all the previous submissions continue to exist, and will export along with all your data over Zip download or OData. However, only the current Form definition will be used in that export: if, for example, you have deleted a field that used to exist, that field will not appear in the export.

Draft testing submissions will never export with your final data, and only exist as long as the Draft does. If you delete, publish, or replace your current Draft, all test submissions will be cleared away.
8.3.10 Accessing Older Form Versions

If you have published multiple versions of a Form, you can see each of them under the Versions tab.

Each published version of the Form will be listed, along with actions to download the definition of each Form. In future versions of Central, the Media File attachments associated with each version of the Form will be downloadable as well.

8.3.11 Deleting a Form

Do not delete a form until you are completely sure you never need a form or its submissions again. If you only want to turn the form off so that it doesn’t appear to users of mobile data collection apps, we suggest using the form lifecycle controls explained above.

If you are certain you wish to delete a form, you can find the option on the Form Settings page: click on the ➔ Settings tab under the name of the form at the top of the page. On the right side of this page, you will find the Delete this form button.

8.4 Managing Form Submissions in Central

The most common way to use ODK Central is in conjunction with a data collection client, typically on a mobile device, such as ODK Collect. To do this, you will need to connect to it from your mobile device, after which you will be able to uploaded submissions back to Central.

ODK Central also bundles Enketo, which enables preview and submission of forms directly from a web browser. Please note that as with all ODK clients, Enketo does not always behave quite the same as Collect, or support the same features. Any authorized Web User may fill out a Form directly from the browser, as will be described in more detail below.
8.4. Managing Form Submissions in Central

Finally, ODK Central offers Public Access Links. A Public Access Link grants anybody in possession of the link the ability to submit to a Form on your server. You can control whether each respondent can submit more than once, and revoke access from any Link at any time.

Submissions sent to Central are available to browse in a preview table, to connect directly to data analysis tools, and for download.

8.4.1 Direct Web Browser Submissions

Web Users who are Administrators, Project Managers, or Data Collectors can directly fill Forms in the web browser from the Central administration website. This functionality is provided by Enketo, which does not always behave quite the same as Collect, or support the same features.

Administrators and Project Managers can begin a survey by going to the Submissions tab of the Form, and clicking on the New button next to the Submissions header. This will open a new tab which will load the Form in Enketo.

Data Collectors do not have access to the detailed Form management pages. Instead, they will find a Fill Form button next to the Form name in the list of Forms on the Project
8.4.2 Public Access Links

ODK Central allows the distribution of surveys to a broad or open respondent group using Public Access Links. These Links take recipients directly to the Form in their web browser, administered by Enketo.

To create a Public Access Link, go to the Form’s Public Access tab. Click on Create Public Access Link… to begin.

In the window that appears, you’ll need to name the Link. This name is for your own identification purposes in the administration website, and is not displayed to respondents.

You’ll also need to decide whether to allow multiple submissions per respondent. Normally, respondents filling a Form through a Public Link will be redirected to a thank you page after sending a Submission. Pressing the back button will not bring them back to the Form but they could send in another Submission by visiting the Link again. Checking the Single Submission checkbox enables basic protection against more than one Submission being made from the same browser.

**Single submission enforcement**

In Enketo, the enforcement limiting each respondent to a single response is done with in-browser tracking. This means that a user could submit multiple times using different devices or browsers, or distribute the link beyond the intended group.

Also because of this tracking method, respondents will only be able to respond once per Form, not once per single-submission Link. Future versions of Central may change how this works. Please leave feedback on the community forum if this is something you’d like to see.
8.4. Managing Form Submissions in Central

Once a Link is created, it will appear in the table, along with a web address you can copy and paste to distribute the Link to respondents.

You cannot yet edit any of the details of a Public Link. This will come in a future version of Central.

**Revoking a Link**

You can revoke a Link at any time to prevent any further Submissions through it. Once a Link is revoked, all Submissions will be immediately denied, and new attempts to load the Form using the Link will result in an error instead.

To revoke a Link, click on the *Revolve* button in the Link’s row in the table. You will be asked to confirm the action. Once a Link is revoked, there is no way to restore it.

**8.4.3 Accessing Submissions**

To find the Form submissions page, first find the form in the Form listings page (→ *Forms*) and click on it. You will be taken to the *Form Overview* page for that form. Click on the → *Submissions* tab below the form name to find the submissions.
The table preview you see here will at first show you the first ten fields of your survey and their results, with the latest submissions shown closest to the top. Any downloadable files will appear with a green download link you can use to directly download that media attachment. The submission’s instance ID will always be shown at the right side of this preview table.

If your form has more than ten fields, you can show more columns by accessing the *Columns shown* dropdown and checking the columns you wish to see. While the Columns shown pane is open, you can use the search box or your browser’s search feature (usually Ctrl+F or Cmd+F) to search for particular column name if you have many.

You can limit the rows that appear by the submission author and the date. These filter controls are available just above the submission table.

It is not yet possible to screen or delete submissions for quality or edit submission data. These features are planned for future releases. For now, you will need to pull your data out of Central before you can work with it. Right now, you can do this in one of two ways:

1. The **CSV Download** option will get you a *.zip* file containing one or more *.csv* tables, along with any multimedia submitted to the form. This is a good option if you already have custom tools you wish to use, or you want to import it into an offline analysis tool like SPSS or Stata.

2. The **OData connector** allows you connect a live representation of the data to OData-capable tools like Microsoft Excel, Microsoft Power BI, Tableau, SAP, and others. This option has some advantages: the data is transferred more richly to maintain more data format information, and the feed is always live, meaning any analysis or reports you perform in your tool over an OData connection can be easily refreshed as more submissions come in.
When the table has been filtered by submission author or date, that filter also applies to the downloads. This makes it possible to download partial sections of your data at once.

Learn more about these options below:

### 8.4.4 Downloading submissions as CSVs

To download all submission data as a `.zip` of `.csv` tables, click on the `Download all # records` button on the right side of the listing page:

![Participant Survey](image)

Once it completes downloading, you will find one or more files when you extract it:

- A root table `.csv` named after your Form title.
- Join table `.csv` files representing any repeats you may have in your form, with join columns on the left of each table relating each row to its counterpart in the parent table. Each join table is named to reflect its relationship with the others. If there is only one `.csv` file, then your form has no repeats.
- A folder named `files` which contains subfolders, each named after an `instanceId` of a submission. Each subfolder then contains a set of file attachments relating to that submission. If no `files` folder exists, then no multimedia attachments have been submitted to this form.
- If you have enabled Client Audit Logging on your form, and log events have been submitted to the server, then you will find a file that ends with `- audit.csv`. This file combines all the logging data from all submissions to the form into a single table.

### 8.4.5 Connecting to submission data over OData

To connect a third-party tool to Central over OData, you will need a link to paste into the tool. You can find this link by clicking on the `Analyze via OData` button on the right side of the listing page:
Once you click on it, you should see this popup appear:

To connect with Excel or Power BI, follow these steps.

1. Start the Get OData feed action.
   - In Excel, select *Data* menu item, then *Get Data*, *From Other Sources*, then *From OData Feed*.
   - In Power BI, select the *Home* menu item, then *Get Data*, then *OData feed*.
2. Copy and paste in the link from Central and then select *OK*.
3. Switch to *Basic* authentication, enter your Central credentials, and then *Connect*.
4. The Navigator window now appear. Select Submissions, then Load.

Tip: See Import external data into Excel and OData feeds in Power BI for more information.

If you want to use the free and popular R statistics and analysis tool, we recommend you use ruODK. A guide for getting started with it can be found here. ruODK is developed and supported by community members. If you wish to help improve it, you can find information on GitHub.

8.5 Encrypted Forms in Central

As of version 0.6, ODK Central supports the encryption of submitted data, similar to ODK Aggregate.

For Aggregate users already using encryption

If you already use encryption with ODK Aggregate, you can use the same encrypted forms with ODK Central without any change, and decrypt data using Briefcase with the same steps you already use today. However, you may still wish to read the rest of this document to understand what Central does and the easier to use encryption available to you in Central.

8.5.1 Encryption with Central

First, here is what enabling encryption on a project or form will do:

- Collect will encrypt finalized data on the mobile device.
Chapter 8. Using ODK Central

- Submission data is sent encrypted, even if Central is not configured with HTTPS.
- Data (filled forms and their attachments) at rest on the Central server is encrypted, and can only be decrypted by using the appropriate secret key information.

However, here are some things that encryption will not do:

- Increase the security of user passwords or Collect QR codes.
- Encrypt the blank form contents or attachments.
- Prevent a hijacker from replacing forms or redirecting submissions to a malicious server.
- Prevent the creation of phony submissions.
- Substitute for HTTPS security on the web administration panel.

And, here are some limitations that will appear when encryption is enabled on a project or form:

- Encrypted submissions will appear only as metadata records over OData. Metadata like the submitter and the submission date will be available, but none of the actual data from the form will appear.
- The same restriction applies to the submission preview table on the Central administration panel.
- As of version 0.6, enabling encryption will not encrypt already-submitted submissions.
- As of version 0.6, it is not possible to disable project managed encryption (explained below) once enabled.
- As of version 0.6, submissions using self-supplied key encryption (Aggregate-style encryption) can be retrieved and decrypted only through Briefcase or direct API access.

### 8.5.2 Central Encryption Modes

We offer two methods of form encryption in ODK Central:

- **Self-supplied key encryption** is our term for the encryption process already supported by Aggregate and other ODK ecosystem servers. To use self-supplied key encryption, you must generate and securely store your own cryptographic keys which are used to perform the encryption and decryption of the data. The public key (which cannot decrypt the data) is embedded into the XForm itself and this is how it is distributed with the form to Collect and other mobile clients. Decryption is possible only with the private key, and only through Briefcase.

- **Project managed encryption** is new to ODK Central. It uses the same existing ODK encryption standard under the covers, and so it is compatible with existing mobile clients like Collect. However, Central will generate and securely store the cryptographic keys for you. The keys are themselves protected by a passphrase that...
you provide, similar to the Central backups encryption system. You do not need to use Briefcase: if you can supply the correct passphrase, the Central administration panel will decrypt the data on the fly and provide you with exported data as usual. Without the passphrase, the data cannot be decrypted, and as Central does not store the passphrase it cannot decrypt the data without your input.

For most cases, we recommend using project managed encryption. It is easier to use, as you do not have to learn how to generate a cryptographic key, you do not have to manually configure each form with the correct key, and you do not need to use Briefcase to decrypt the data. It can also be more secure in many cases, because cryptographic keys are files that must be stored digitally and can be difficult to secure properly. Conversely, a passphrase can be memorized, saved in a password manager, or written down and physically secured.

If you already have familiarity with the encryption in Aggregate, or you cannot at all trust the security of Central itself due to where it has been installed, you may prefer to use self-supplied key encryption.

### 8.5.3 Using Self-Supplied Key Encryption

To use self-supplied key encryption, please see the Encrypted Forms document.

When using a self-supplied key with Central, you may and must apply encryption to each form in a project individually. The encrypted data will not be available over OData or for download as a ZIP file. You will need to use Briefcase to retrieve and decrypt encrypted submissions.

### 8.5.4 Using Project Managed Encryption

For Aggregate users already using encryption

Central will always respect any encryption settings already present in your Forms. This means that if you have already put `<submission base64RsaPublicKey="..."/>` configuration in your Forms, Central managed encryption will ignore those Forms and you will not be able to decrypt Submissions uploaded to those Forms using your managed encryption passphrase. Perhaps this is something you want to have happen, but if not you should remove encryption configuration from your Forms before turning managed encryption on.

Managed encryption can be enabled only at the Project level. To enable managed encryption, first navigate to the Project, then to the Settings tab underneath the Project name. On the right side, you will find the section managing your encryption settings.
To enable managed encryption for the whole project, first click on the *Enable Encryption* button. You will be presented with some warnings, which we have also described above in this document:

Once you review those warnings and press *Next* to proceed, you will be asked for your passphrase, and an optional passphrase hint:
The passphrase you provide is the encryption secret that will be used to secure your data. Anybody who has it will be able to decrypt your submission data. If you lose it, there is no way to recover it, and no way to decrypt your data. Central does not store your passphrase in any way.

The passphrase hint will be displayed whenever the passphrase is needed to decrypt data. It can be a useful way to store information like where in a shared password manager to look for the passphrase. It is optional.

Once you have provided a passphrase and ensured that it is correct, press Next to proceed. At this time, managed encryption will be turned on for the Project. All Forms within the Project will be updated to include encryption information, and mobile devices will have to fetch these new versions in order to submit successfully to Central.

Once encrypted data has been submitted, the Download button on the Form Submissions page will no longer directly download the data. Instead, you will be asked for your encryption passphrase:
Enter your passphrase and press *Download* to download the data. If the passphrase you provide is incorrect, an error message will be displayed after a moment.

### 8.6 Server Audit Logs in Central

As of version 0.6, ODK Central tracks and logs audit actions for most administrative actions performed on the server. The following actions are logged:

- **Web User Actions**
  - Create
  - Update Details (display name, email, password)
  - Assign Role
  - Revoke Role
  - Retire

- **Project Actions**
  - Create
  - Update Details (name, settings, archival)

- **Form Actions**
  - Create
  - Update Details (state, settings)
  - Update Attachments
  - Delete
To access the audit logs, navigate to System, then select Server Audit Logs from the navigation menu that appears:

Some details will sometimes appear in the Details column. The details view will be improved in future versions.

The table always defaults to only showing audit events from the current calendar day. To select a different date range, click on the date in the filter bar. A calendar will appear:
You can click on two separate days to select a range of those days, or you can select a single day by clicking on it twice. Dates and times are always filtered and displayed according to the local time on the computer you are browsing the administration panel from.

You can also filter by the type of audit action instead. To do this, click on the dropdown to the left of the date, which by default is labeled *(All Actions)*.

You can select a single action to filter by, or you can filter by an entire category (select *Form Actions* to see any action that pertains to Forms, for example).

### 8.7 Using the Central REST API

We provide a fully featured REST API for Central. In fact, everything the Central management website does is over the REST API, so everything it can do you can, too: creating users and forms, managing app users, and so on. We also provide compliant standard APIs for OpenRosa and OData.

For more information on using the Central APIs, please visit our developer documentation.

### 8.8 Using Briefcase with Central

*ODK Briefcase* is a desktop application which provides access to the Central API from graphical and command-line interfaces. It can make it easier for non-developers to automate some aspects of data management. In particular, it is useful for migrating data from another ODK-compatible server to Central.

Briefcase was created to provide features that the older ODK server, Aggregate, did not have. With Central, we encourage users to either *use data exports from the Central interface* or to write scripts to interact directly with the *Central API*. If you find yourself reaching for Briefcase a lot with Central, we would like to hear about what features you use it for on the forum.
Warning: Pulling and pushing media files is memory intensive. If you get a “Success with errors” status from Briefcase, we recommend increasing your Central server memory. If increasing memory is not an option, you can also add swap.

Submission date and submitter are not included in exports from Central.

8.8.1 Migrating from another ODK-compatible server to Central

In most contexts where an existing ODK-compatible server is in use, we recommend completing ongoing data collection projects before switching to Central. However, some long-running studies may want to make the switch before project completion. There may also be some contexts where storing data from past data collection projects in Central makes sense.

ODK Briefcase can be used to perform a migration of both blank forms and form submissions to Central. Please be aware of the following limitations:

- The submission date for all records will be the date that they were migrated to Central, not the date that they were submitted to the original server.

- The submitter for all records will be the user that performs the migration. You may want to create a special user for this purpose and name it something like “Aggregate Migration”.

- Briefcase only keeps track of the latest published form version. For forms that have multiple form versions on the source server, Briefcase will upload the same form definition with different version identifiers. Learn more.

- Migrating multi-version forms where one of the versions is blank is not currently supported automatically. If you need this, we recommend first manually uploading the form definition with a blank version and publishing it. Then you can proceed as normal.

8.8.2 Pushing forms with multiple versions to Central

Note: Briefcase v1.18+ must be used for both the initial pull and the push.

Warning: Pushing multi-version forms where one of the versions is blank is not currently supported. If you need this, we recommend first manually uploading the form definition with a blank version and publishing it. Then you can proceed as normal.

Briefcase only keeps track of the latest published form version. Central only accepts submissions if it knows about the form version that it was created with. To address this, Briefcase
v1.18+ inspects submissions as they are pulled and identifies all of the form versions that are referenced in submissions. On push, Briefcase first pushes and publishes the form definition with versions other than the published one. These are pushed in alphanumerical order. Then it pushes and publishes the form definition with the current version.

Because Briefcase only knows about the latest form version, it can’t push the real older versions. Instead, it pushes the same form definition with different declared versions. This will generally be acceptable because currently, the only thing that can be done with older form versions in Central is to download them. If you’d like to have access to historical edits of the form, you may want to manually upload all of the actual definitions before you push submissions. Be sure to upload the form versions from oldest to newest because the last published definition will be the active one.

If you have pulled submissions with a Briefcase version prior to v1.18, Briefcase will not know what versions submissions correspond to. It will push and publish the active form version and any submissions corresponding to that form version will succeed. However, any submissions corresponding to other form versions will fail. If you let the push complete, you can then retry and Briefcase will create the missing form versions and push the corresponding submissions.

If you end up in a state where the published version is not the correct one, re-upload the form definition that you would like to have published and give it a new version name.
INTRO TO FORMS IN ODK

Forms used in the ODK ecosystem are XML documents following the ODK XForms specification, a subset of the W3C XForms specification. (Example XForms are available for reference.)

Most ODK tools use the ODK JavaRosa library to render forms. Form transfer between ODK components is governed by the OpenRosa API.

Because of the complexity of the XForms format, we do not recommend coding XForms directly in XML. The recommended process is:

1. Begin with one of the Form Building Tools.
2. Edit the XML only if necessary.
   • Before editing an XForm directly, you need to be familiar with the ODK XForm specification.
3. Use ODK Validate to check that the edited XForm is well-formed and fully compliant.

9.1 Excel-based form creation

Most ODK users design their forms in Excel using XLSForm.

9.2 Drag-and-drop form creation

For simple forms, ODK Build is a drag-and-drop form designer that works both online and offline.
XLSForm is a form standard created to help simplify the authoring of forms in Excel. XLSForms are simple to get started with but allow for the authoring of complex forms. Forms designed with Excel can be converted to XForms that can be used with ODK tools.

To design your form, refer to the XLSForm form design documentation. Once the form has been designed, use XLSForm Online, XLSForm Offline, or if you are comfortable on the command line, pyxform.

10.1 XLSForm Online

We recommend starting with XLSForm Online converter because it is always up-to-date and allows you to preview what the form will look like.

Use XLSForm Online.

10.2 XLSForm Offline

XLSForm Offline converter is a great option for users who do not have a reliable connection or may need to design forms offline.

Download XLSForm Offline.

**Tip:** There is a validation option in the XLSForm Offline that requires Java. To enable this option, download and install Java and ensure Java is in your PATH. See How do I set or change the PATH for more.

**Note:** Your anti-virus may report that XLSForm Offline has a virus. This is a false positive that is triggered because virus writers sometimes use the same components we use. You can
confirm the safety of XLSForm Offline by using the free and unbiased VirusTotal. You may also use XLSForm Online as an alternative.

On macOS 10.7 or later, you may get a dialog on startup warning you that the XLSForm Offline is from an unidentified developer. Control-click or right click the icon of the app to bypass this dialog. See About Gatekeeper for more.

## 10.3 pyxform

pyxform is a Python library used as a library in XLSForm Online and XLSForm Offline.

For those who want to convert forms at the command line, pyxform can be installed directly from the command line using pip:

```
$ pip install pyxform
```

The `xls2xform` command can then be used:

```
$ xls2xform path_to_XLSForm output_path
```

**Tip:** Use pyxform together with `adb` to quickly convert an XLSForm and load it to a device’s Collect directory. Once you have both tools installed, convert and push in a single line:

```
$ xls2xform form-name.xlsx form-name.xml && adb push form-name.xml <collect-directory>/forms/form-name.xml
```
QUESTION TYPES

*ODK Collect* supports forms with a wide variety of question types. The exact functionality and display style of each question are specified in your *XLSForm* definition using the type and appearance columns.

- *Text widgets*
- *Number widgets*
- *Date and time widgets*
- *Select widgets*
- *Rank widget*
- *Location widgets*
- *Image widgets*
- *Audio widget*
- *Video widgets*
- *File upload widget*
- *Barcode widget*
- *Range widgets*
- *Note widget*
- *URL widget*
- *Printer widget*
- *Trigger/acknowledge widget*
- *Signature widget*
- *Hidden questions*
• Grouping multiple widgets on the same screen
• Grid of selects on the same screen

Tip: You can find an XLSForm with all available question types here.
For simpler forms you can use ODK Build, which provides a visual, drag-and-drop interface.

Helpful terminology

question  A prompt to the user, usually requesting a response. Questions are written as a single line in an XLSForm, and usually appear on a single screen in Collect.

widget  A rendered question screen in Collect. The type and appearance of a question determine the widget that is displayed.

11.1 Text widgets

All of the text widgets share the text type, and the inputs from them are saved as literal strings.

Warning: If you are using Aggregate and expect answers to be more than 255 characters, you should increase the database field length to over 255 characters.

• Default text widget
• Number text widget
• External app widget

11.1.1 Default text widget

type  text
appearance  none

A simple text input.
11.1. Text widgets

The text entry field expands as the user types, and line breaks can be included. The keyboard displayed depends on the Android device and user settings.

XLSForm

Table 11.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>What is your name?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.1.2 Number text widget

**type**  text

**appearance**  numbers

A numerical input that treats the input as a string, rather than a number.

The number input accepts numerals (0123456789), hyphens (-), and decimal points ( . ). These are the only characters available on the number keypad displayed with this widget.

This is useful for phone numbers, ID numbers, IP addresses, and similar data. It can also be used in place of the *Integer widget* or *Decimal widget* if large numbers are needed. (The
Chapter 11. Question Types

integer widget has a limit of nine digits, and the decimal widget has a limit of 15 characters.

Table 11.2: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>string_number_widget</td>
<td>String number</td>
<td>numbers</td>
<td>text type with numbers appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This appearance can be combined with the thousands-sep appearance.

11.1.3 External app widget

type text
appearance ex.*
11.1. Text widgets

Launches an external app and receives a string input back from the external app. If the specified external app is not available, a manual input is prompted.

The external app widget is displayed when the appearance attribute begins with ex:. The rest of the appearance string specifies the application to launch.

See also:

_Launching External Apps_
XLSForm

Table 11.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>ex_string</td>
<td>string widget</td>
<td>ex:change.uw.android.BREATHCOUNT with appearance (can use other external apps)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.2 Number widgets

Number widgets collect and store number inputs — either integers or floating-point decimals. Number values can also be captured by the Range widgets.

- Integer widget
- Decimal widget
- Number widget appearance options
11.2. Number widgets

- Thousands separator
- Number from an external app

11.2.1 Integer widget

type  integer

appearance  none

A whole number entry input.

Integer widgets will not accept decimal points, and the entry field has a limit of nine digits. If you need numbers larger than nine digits, see the Number text widget.

The integer widget supports:

- Thousands separators
- External apps
Table 11.4: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>What is your age in years?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.2.2 Decimal widget

**type**  decimal

**appearance**  none

A numeric input that will accept decimal points.

Decimal number entry is capped at 15 characters (14 digits and a decimal point). If you need numbers larger than 15 digits, see the *Number text widget*.

The decimal widget supports:

- *Thousands separators*
- *External apps*
11.2. Number widgets

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>weight</td>
<td>Weight in kilograms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.2.3 Number widget appearance options

**Thousands separator**

- **type** integer, decimal, (text)
- **appearance** thousands-sep, (numbers)

If thousands-sep is added to appearance, *integer*, *decimal*, and *number text* widgets will display their values using locale-specific thousands separators.

**Note:** For locales that use the point separator (.), a space is used instead.

Fig. 11.1: The comma separator, used in English/U.S. (and others).
Fig. 11.2: The space separator, used in Français/France (and others).
11.2. Number widgets

Number from an external app

type integer, decimal

appearance ex:* 

By specifying an external app in the appearance, your form can launches an external app and receive a number (integer or decimal) from the external app as input. If the specified external app is not available, a manual input is prompted.
Chapter 11. Question Types

### XLSForm

#### Table 11.6: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>ex_integer_widget</td>
<td>integer type with ex:change.uw.android.BREATHCOUNT appearance (can use other external apps)</td>
<td>ex:change.uw.android.BREATHCOUNT integer type with ex:change.uw.android.BREATHCOUNT appearance (can use other external apps)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### See also:

*Launching External Apps*

### 11.3 Date and time widgets

- Default date widget
  - Date widget with spinner input
11.3. Date and time widgets

- Month and year only
- Year only
- Date widgets with non-Gregorian calendars
  - Coptic calendar
  - Ethiopian calendar
  - Islamic calendar
  - Bikram Sambat calendar
  - Myanmar calendar
  - Persian calendar
- Time widget
- Datetime widget

11.3.1 Default date widget

type date

appearance none
11.3. Date and time widgets

**XLSForm**

Table 11.7: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date_widget</td>
<td>Date widget</td>
<td>date type with no appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Date widget with spinner input**

**type** date

**appearance** no-calendar

The no-calendar appearance displays a spinner-style date selection. This is especially appropriate for selecting dates more than one year in the past or future.
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

Table 11.8: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date_widget_nocalendar</td>
<td>Date Widget</td>
<td>no-calendar</td>
<td>date type with no-calendar appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Month and year only

type  date
appearance  month-year

Collects only a month and year.
11.3. Date and time widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.9: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date_widget_month_year</td>
<td>date widget</td>
<td>month-year</td>
<td>date type with month-year appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Year only

type date

appearance year

Collects only a year.
XLSForm

Table 11.10: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date_widget_year</td>
<td>Date widget</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>date type with year appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.3.2 Date widgets with non-Gregorian calendars

Collect supports several non-Gregorian calendars.

- Coptic calendar
- Ethiopian calendar
- Islamic calendar
- Bikram Sambat calendar
- Myanmar calendar
11.3. Date and time widgets

- Persian calendar

Note: The non-Gregorian calendar is used only on input. The dates are converted and stored as standard Gregorian dates

Coptic calendar

type date
appearance coptic

Ethiopian calendar

type date
appearance ethiopian
Chapter 11. Question Types

Islamic calendar

type  date
appearance  islamc
11.3. Date and time widgets

Bikram Sambat calendar

type date
appearance bikram-sambat
Chapter 11. Question Types

**Myanmar calendar**

type date

appearance myanmar
11.3. Date and time widgets

**Persian calendar**

**type** date

**appearance** persian
11.3.3 Time widget

type  time

appearance  none

A time selector. Captures only a specific time-of-day, not a date and time. For date and time, see the Datetime widget.

The time widget does not accept any appearance attributes.

Note:  The time widget stores the time along with a time zone. This can cause unexpected behavior around Daylight saving time.

For example, if you record a time before the clock change, and then view the time after the clock change, it will appear to be an hour off. This happens because the recorded time data is understood as a specific moment in time that is being "translated" into your current, local time zone.

A similar problem occurs when moving between geographic time zones.

This makes the time widget unsuitable for abstract time-of-day questions such as What time do you usually wake up? For questions like this, you may want to use a Minimal select widget. You can set the options at whatever level of accuracy you need — for example, 15
11.3. Date and time widgets

or 30 minute increments. Alternatively, you could use the select widget for hours, and an *Integer widget* for minutes.
Chapter 11. Question Types

What time do you usually wake up?

Select time

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>38 AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>39 PM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OK

What time do you usually wake up?

Select time

06:30
11.3. Date and time widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.11: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>wakeup</td>
<td>What time do you usually wakeup?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.3.4 Datetime widget

A date and time selector.

For date only, see Default date widget. For time only, see Time widget.
11.3. Date and time widgets

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

Table 11.12: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dateTime</td>
<td>previous_meal</td>
<td>When was the last time you ate?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The *Datetime widget* supports the *no-calendar* spinner-style appearance.

### 11.4 Select widgets

Select widgets offer the *participant* options to pick from. You can offer the participant a *single choice*, or the ability to *choose multiple answers*. The order of the choices can be *randomized* for any of the select types described below. The list of choices available can also be *filtered* based on answers to previous questions.

The options for a select question are listed on a sheet named *choices*, in your XLSForm file. The *choices* sheet has at least three columns:

- **list_name** A set of choices for a single question share a common list_name. The value of list_name is included in the type column on the *survey* sheet.
- **name** The canonical identifier for a specific choice. This value is what is stored on the completed form. If you refer to a select response using a variable, the name string is returned.
  
  As with the *survey* sheet, name must not include spaces.
- **label** The user-facing text displayed for the choice.

Select widgets can *include images as choices*.

- **Single select widget**
  - Minimal select widget
  - Select widget with autoadvance
  - Select widget with autocomplete
  - Select widget with columns-pack appearance
  - Select widget with columns appearance
  - Select widget with columns-n appearance

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.4. Select widgets

- Select widget with no-buttons appearance
- Likert widget
  - Multi select widget
  - Image map select widget
  - Including media files in choices
  - Randomizing choice order
  - Including "other" as a choice

11.4.1 Single select widget

type select_one {list_name}
XLSForm

Table 11.13: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>Select one</td>
<td>select_one type with no appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>select_one_widget</td>
<td>widget</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.14: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minimal select widget

type select_one \{list\_name\}

appearance minimal

Adding the minimal appearance shows the choices in a compact way. This is particularly helpful when the list of choices is long and the select question is displayed on the same screen as other questions. It is often combined with the autocomplete appearance.
11.4. Select widgets

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 11. Question Types

**XLSForm**

Table 11.15: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>Select widget</td>
<td>minimal</td>
<td>select_one type with minimal appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.16: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select widget with autoadvance

type select_one {list_name}

appearance quick

When the quick appearance is added, the form advances immediately to the next question once a selection is made.

Video showing auto-advance after the questions are answered.

**XLSForm**

Table 11.17: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>Select one autoadvance widget</td>
<td>quick</td>
<td>select_one type with quick appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.4. Select widgets

Table 11.18: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select widget with autocomplete

type  select_one {list_name}

appearance  autocomplete

The autocomplete appearance allows the enumerator to filter the list of available choices. This is especially helpful for questions with a large number of choices.
XLSForm

Table 11.19: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_one autocomplete</td>
<td>Select</td>
<td>autocomplete</td>
<td>select_one type with autocomplete appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td></td>
<td>widget</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.20: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select widget with columns-pack appearance

```plaintext
type select_one {list_name} 
```
11.4. Select widgets

**appearance columns-pack**

When the columns-pack appearance is added, the app tries to accommodate as many choices in a single line as possible. If the choice labels have different lengths, they will not be in even columns.

**XLSForm**

Table 11.21: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_widget</td>
<td>columns-pack</td>
<td>select_one type with columns-pack appearance</td>
<td>4 text choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.22: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select widget with columns appearance

**type** select_one {list_name}

**appearance** columns

When the columns appearance is added, the app puts choices in 2, 3, 4 or 5 columns depending on the screen size.

Select widgets support image choices. The images are referenced in the choices sheet, and the image files need to be included in the media folder.

See *Including media files in choices* to learn more about including images in surveys.

---

### XLSForm

**Table 11.23: survey**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_widget</td>
<td>Select one</td>
<td>columns</td>
<td>select_one type with columns appearance, 4 text + image choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>select_widget</td>
<td>Select one</td>
<td>columns</td>
<td>select_one type with columns appearance, 4 text + image choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.4. Select widgets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>a.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>b.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>c.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>d.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Select widget with columns-n appearance**

**type** select_one {list_name}  
**appearance** columns-n

When the columns-n appearance is added, the app puts choices in n columns.
XLSForm

Table 11.25: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_widget</td>
<td>Select one widget</td>
<td>columns-2</td>
<td>select_one type with columns-2 appearance, 4 text + image choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.26: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>a.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>b.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>c.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>d.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Select widget with no-buttons appearance

**type** select_one \{list_name\}

**appearance** no-buttons

When the no-buttons appearance is added, the app displays choices without the selection radio button. If images are specified for choices, only the images are displayed. This is particularly useful for building a grid of images.
11.4. Select widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.27: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>select_widget</td>
<td>Select one widget</td>
<td>columns-pack no-buttons appearance</td>
<td>select_one type with columns-pack no-buttons appearance, 4 image choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.28: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>a.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>b.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>c.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abcd_icon</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>d.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Likert widget

New in version 1.25: ODK Collect v1.25.0
**type** select_one \{list_name\}

**appearance** likert

A single-select question can be styled as a Likert scale. Options can include text, images or both. If both are provided, images appear above text.

If adding images, note that the images are referenced in the choices sheet, and the image files need to be included in the media folder. See *Including media files in choices* to learn more about including images in choices.

---

**XLSForm**

Table 11.29: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>likert</td>
<td>Likert</td>
<td>likert</td>
<td>select_one type with Likert appearance, 5 image choices (strongly_disagree.jpg, disagree.jpg, neutral.jpg, agree.jpg, strongly_agree.jpg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.4. Select widgets

Table 11.30: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>likert_widget</td>
<td>strongly_disagree</td>
<td>Strongly Disagree</td>
<td>strongly_disagree.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likert_widget</td>
<td>disagree</td>
<td>Disagree</td>
<td>disagree.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likert_widget</td>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>neutral.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likert_widget</td>
<td>agree</td>
<td>Agree</td>
<td>agree.jpg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likert_widget</td>
<td>strongly_agree</td>
<td>Strongly Agree</td>
<td>strongly_agree.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.4.2 Multi select widget

**type** select_multiple {list_name}

**appearance** none

Multi select questions support multiple answers.

**Note:** The multi select widget supports all of the same appearance attributes as the Single select widget excluding the quick appearance:
### Chapter 11. Question Types

**XLSForm**

**Table 11.31: survey**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>select_multi_widget</td>
<td>Multi select widget</td>
<td>select_multiple type with no appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>select_multi_widget</td>
<td>Multi select widget</td>
<td>select_multiple type with no appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 11.32: choices**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:** If you are using Aggregate and expect users to select many options, you may need to increase the database field length to over 255 characters.

**11.4.3 Image map select widget**

New in version 1.13.

**type** select_one {list_name}, select_multiple {list-name}

**appearance** image-map

The image map widget displays an SVG image with selectable regions.

To make an image with selectable regions:

1. Create or edit an .svg source file. Include id attributes on any elements you want to be selectable.

2. In the choices tab of your XLSForm, put the value of the id attributes in the name column. Add an appropriate human-friendly label to each choice.

3. In the survey tab of your XLSForm, put the .svg file name in the image column.

4. Include the .svg file in your form’s media folder.

**See also:**

**Inkscape** An open source vector graphics editor.

**SVG Documentation** From Mozilla Developer Network.
11.4. Select widgets

Free SVG Files From Wikimedia Commons.
Chapter 11. Question Types

Choose multiple shapes

Selected: blob, rectangle
11.4. Select widgets

SVG

```xml
<svg width="640" height="480" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" xmlns:svg="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg">
  <title>shapes</title>
  <g>
    <title>Layer 1</title>
    <path id="path" fill="#000080" stroke="#000000" stroke-width="5" d="m125,382c33,56 -193,97 48,55c241,-42 279,-15 62c-38,-47 -13,-42 -106,-40c-93,2 -183,47 -183,47z"/>
    <rect id="rect" fill="#FF0000" stroke="#000000" stroke-width="5" x="52" y="53" width="176" height="149"/>
    <ellipse id="ellipse" fill="#41A317" stroke="#000000" stroke-width="5" cx="423" cy="143" rx="107" ry="78"/>
  </g>
</svg>
```

XLSForm

Table 11.33: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one shapes</td>
<td>choose-shape</td>
<td>Choose a shape</td>
<td>image-map</td>
<td>shapes.svg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple shapes</td>
<td>choose-shapes</td>
<td>Choose multiple shapes</td>
<td>image-map</td>
<td>shapes.svg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.34: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shapes</td>
<td>path</td>
<td>blob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shapes</td>
<td>rect</td>
<td>rectangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shapes</td>
<td>ellipse</td>
<td>ellipse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.4.4 Including media files in choices

As with questions themselves, choices can include *media* (image, video, or audio files):
Table 11.35: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
<th>media::video</th>
<th>media::audio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_media</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>a.jpg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_media</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td>b.mp4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_media</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c.mp3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: select_one and select_multiple questions using the compact appearances will not display media buttons next to choices. However, if a choice has audio, it will be played when the choice is selected.

11.4.5 Randomizing choice order

Note: Randomizing choice order support was added in Collect v1.18.2 and Aggregate v1.7.1. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v1.2.2, XLSForm Offline v1.7.1, or pyxfom v0.11.6.

To reduce bias, choice order can be randomized for any of the select question types described above. To display the choices in a different order each time the question is displayed, set randomize to true in the parameters column of the XLSForm survey sheet:

XLSForm

Table 11.36: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>randomize= true</td>
<td>select_one_random_widget</td>
<td>Select one with random choice order each display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.37: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, each time the question is displayed, the choices will be in a different order. It is often preferable to pick one order that the choices will always be displayed in for a
11.4. Select widgets

given filled form. This can be accomplished by setting an integer seed for the randomization.

XLSForm

Table 11.38: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td></td>
<td>my_seed</td>
<td></td>
<td>once(substr(decimal-date-time(now()), 10))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>randomize=true,seed=${my_seed}</td>
<td>select_one_widget</td>
<td>Select one with random order set once per filled form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.39: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This seed can also be used to recreate the order choices were displayed in. See the XForms spec for a description of the randomization algorithm used.

Note: In the example above, the integer seed is created from the last 8 numbers of the decimal-date-time() which is unlikely to repeat across devices. In the seed expression, once() is important because it makes sure the seed is not changed if the same filled form is opened more than once.

11.4.6 Including "other" as a choice

On the survey sheet, in the type column, after the type and the list_name, you can add or_other. This will add "Other" as an additional option to your choice list. The name value of the choice when selected will be other.
11.5 Rank widget

The rank widget allows the user to order options from a list. The value saved in the form and sent to the server is a space-separated ordered list of the options.

Like with Select widgets, the options are listed on a sheet named choices in an XLSForm.

To change the order of the options in the list, tap the Rank items button. In the resulting dialog, long press on an item and once it gets a border around it, drag it up or down to change the order. If no default is provided, the value for the question is blank until the user taps OK in the ranking dialog.

type rank {list_name}
11.5. Rank widget
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

Table 11.40: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rank</td>
<td>rank_widget</td>
<td>Rank widget</td>
<td>rank type with no appearance, 4 text choices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.41: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abcd</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6 Location widgets

Location widgets capture one or more points representing locations on Earth. Each point is represented as four numbers separated by spaces: latitude, longitude, altitude in meters, and accuracy radius in meters.

For example, if a Collect user captured a point while at the coordinates 12°22’17.0”N 1°31’10.9”W, with a reported accuracy radius of 17.4 meters, and at 305 meters above sea level, the geopoint representation would be:

12.371400 -1.519700 305 17.4

Multiple points that form lines or shapes are separated by semicolons.

Note: The accuracy radius is an estimate of what Android calls the radius of 68% confidence: there is a 68% chance that the true location falls within this radius. This is an estimate reported by the Android system based on the available sensors (GPS, network, etc). The accuracy radius itself may be more or less reliable depending on the sensor(s) used and current conditions. Learn more about getting more accurate locations here.

- Geopoint widget
  - Geopoint with map display
  - Geopoint with user-selected location
11.6. Location widgets

- Geotracer
- Geoshape
  - Calculating the area of a geoshape
- Bearing
- OpenMapKit

11.6.1 Geopoint widget

type geopoint
appearance none

Captures the current geolocation from the device.

For a geopoint with a user-selected location, see Geopoint with user-selected location

Tip: New in version 1.15.

While determining the current coordinates, you will see a dialog box displaying:

  - Number of satellites found
  - Elapsed time

To get an accurate fix on your location, the device must find at least four (4) satellites. If the device cannot find at least four satellites, make sure there is nothing obstructing the device’s view of the sky.

If you have problems with the geopoint widget, be sure to note the elapsed time and accuracy (if applicable), so that you can share it with your support staff or with the ODK Forum.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

Table 11.42: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geopoint</td>
<td>geopoint_widget</td>
<td>Geopoint widget</td>
<td>geopoint type with no appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Geopoint with map display

type geopoint

appearance maps

The default *Geopoint widget* does not display a map to the user. When the appearance attribute is maps, the widget displays a map to help the user get oriented and confirm that the selected point is correct and sufficiently accurate.

When the device’s geolocation is available, it is displayed on the map by a blue cross. A blue shaded circle around the cross represents the accuracy radius of the geolocation. The "add marker" button at the top right of the screen can be tapped to add a point at the location indicated by the middle of the blue cross. The selected point is represented by a small circle with a red outline.
11.6. Location widgets

When the map view is opened again with a selected point, the map is centered on that point. To change the selection, first tap the "trash" icon and then select a new point.

For a geopoint with a location that the user can manually select or adjust, see *Geopoint with user-selected location*.

### XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geopoint</td>
<td>geopoint_widget_maps</td>
<td>Geopoint widget</td>
<td>maps</td>
<td>geopoint type with maps appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Geopoint with user-selected location

**type** geopoint

**appearance** placement-map

The default *Geopoint widget* does not allow the user to place the point anywhere other than the device’s current geolocation.

A geopoint with the appearance attribute placement-map allows the user to select any point from a map. The user can either long press to place the point anywhere, or, if the device knows its geolocation, tap on the “add point” button at the top right of the screen. The selected point is represented by a small circle with a red outline (see arrow in screenshot).

The save button saves the selected point and returns to the question screen. If the point was selected by long pressing, the accuracy radius and altitude will both be 0. If the device’s geolocation was selected, the accuracy radius will be greater than 0.

When the map view is opened again with an existing point, the map is centered on the selected point. To change the selection, first tap the "trash" icon and then select a new point.
XLSForm

Table 11.44: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geopoint</td>
<td>geopoint_widget_placementmap</td>
<td>Geopoint</td>
<td>placement-map</td>
<td>geopoint type with placement-map appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6.2 Geotrace widget

type geotrace

appearance none

A series of points. Identical to geoshape except that the first and last point may be different and at least 2 points are required.

Points can be entered either by tapping the screen to place each point, or by taking readings of the device’s geolocation over time. On a map, each coordinate is represented by small circles with red outlines. These are connected by red lines.
11.6. Location widgets

To collect a geotrace, first select the location-recording mode by tapping the "add point" button in the upper right side of the screen. The selected mode will be displayed in the gray bar at the bottom of the screen. While point collection is ongoing, the "add marker" button changes to a "pause" button. The "back arrow" button can be used to remove the last-entered point either when actively collecting points or when paused. Any point can be manually moved at any time by tapping on it and dragging it. The mode can only be changed if an existing line is first cleared by tapping the "trash" button. Recording must be paused to clear the existing line.

**Tip:** Points that were entered by tapping or adjusted by dragging will always have an accuracy radius of 0. Points that were read from the device location will never have an accuracy radius of 0.

Once the trace has been saved, the coordinates of its points will be displayed on the question screen. The trace can be opened for manual editing by tapping to add more points, moving existing points or deleting the last-added point. After a trace has been saved once, it cannot be added to in manual or automatic location recording modes.

The three location recording modes are:

**Placement by tapping** The user taps the device to place points.

**Manual location recording** The user chooses when to tap the "record a point" button at the top of the screen to capture the device geolocation at that moment.

**Automatic location recording** The user is prompted to select a recording interval and accuracy requirement. If the accuracy requirement is set to None, points are always collected at the recording interval. If the accuracy requirement is set to any other value, a point will only be captured if it meets the requirement. For example, given a recording interval of 20s and an accuracy requirement of 10m, the app places a point at the device location every 20s if the location is accurate to 10m or better.

**Warning:** If you are using Aggregate and you would like to collect more than 5 points at a time, you should increase the database field length to over 255 characters. Otherwise, additional points will be lost.
Chapter 11. Question Types
11.6. Location widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.45: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geotrace</td>
<td>trace_example</td>
<td>Where have you been?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6.3 Geoshape

type geoshape

appearance none

A series of points that form a closed polygon. Identical to geotrace except that the first and last point are always the same and at least 3 points are required.

Points can be entered either by tapping the screen to place each point, or by taking readings of the device’s geolocation over time. On a map, each coordinate is represented by small circles with red outlines. These are connected by red lines.

To collect a geoshape, first select the location-recording mode by tapping the "add point" button in the upper right side of the screen. The selected mode will be displayed in the gray bar at the bottom of the screen. While point collection is ongoing, the "add marker" button changes to a "pause" button. The "back arrow" button can be used to remove the last-entered point either when actively collecting points or when paused. Any point can be manually moved at any time by tapping on it and dragging it. The mode can only be changed if an existing line is first cleared by tapping the "trash" button. Recording must be paused to clear the existing line.

Tip: Points that were entered by tapping or adjusted by dragging will always have an accuracy radius of 0. Points that were read from the device location will never have an accuracy radius of 0.

Once the shape has been saved, the coordinates of its points will be displayed on the question screen. The shape can be opened for manual editing by tapping to add more points, moving existing points or deleting the last-added point. After a shape has been saved once, it cannot be added to in manual or automatic location recording modes.

The three location recording modes are:

Placement by tapping The user taps the device to place points.

Manual location recording The user chooses when to tap the "record a point" button at the top of the screen to capture the device geolocation at that moment.
Automatic location recording  The user is prompted to select a recording interval and accuracy requirement. If the accuracy requirement is set to None, points are always collected at the recording interval. If the accuracy requirement is set to any other value, a point will only be captured if it meets the requirement. For example, given a recording interval of 20s and an accuracy requirement of 10m, the app places a point at the device location every 20s if the location is accurate to 10m or better.

**Warning:** If you are using Aggregate and you would like to collect more than 5 points at a time, you should *increase the database field length to over 255 characters*. Otherwise, additional points will be lost.
11.6. Location widgets

### XLSForm

#### Table 11.46: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geoshape</td>
<td>shape_example</td>
<td>Select an area</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Calculating the area of a geoshape

**type** calculate

**calculation** `area(${geoshape})`

The `area()` function calculates the land area, in square meters, of a polygon defined in a `Geoshape`. The value will be included in your completed survey data, and can also be used in later widgets in the form.
11.6. Location widgets

Record a Geoshape

View or Change GeoShape

The area of the recorded geoshape is:

19322.2 m²
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geoshape</td>
<td>shape</td>
<td>Record a Geoshape</td>
<td>area(${shape})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>shape_area</td>
<td></td>
<td>area(${shape})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>rounded_shape_area</td>
<td></td>
<td>round(${shape_area}, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>shape_area_note</td>
<td>The area of the recorded geoshape is:</td>
<td>${rounded_shape_area} m^2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6.4 Bearing widget

type  decimal
appearance  bearing
Captures a compass reading, which is stored as a decimal.
11.6. Location widgets

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
XLSForm

Table 11.47: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>bearing_widget</td>
<td>Bearing widget</td>
<td>bearing</td>
<td>decimal type with bearing appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.6.5 OpenMapKit widget

OpenMapKit allows you to add questions about OpenStreetMap features in a Collect-rendered form.

For more details, see the OpenMapKit documentation.

11.7 Image widgets
11.7. Image widgets

**Tip:** Image files can be very large. We recommend always including a maximum image size in form design. Also, consider making test submissions to your server with the Internet conditions you expect when gathering data to make sure that you can send files of the size you expect.

- Default image widget
  - Image widget with annotation
  - Image widget with required new image
- Self portrait (selfie) image widget
- Draw widget
- Scaling down images

11.7.1 Default image widget

type image

appearance none

Captures an image from the device. The user can choose to take a new picture with the device camera, or select an image from the device photo gallery.
Chapter 11. Question Types

**XLSForm**

Table 11.48: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_widget</td>
<td>Image widget</td>
<td>image type with no appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Image widget with annotation**

*type* image

*appearance* annotate

Adding the annotate appearance allows the user to draw on the image before submitting it.
11.7. Image widgets

![Image widgets](image)

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.7. Image widgets

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 11. Question Types

XLSForm

Table 11.49: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>annotate_image_widget</td>
<td>Annotate widget</td>
<td>annotate</td>
<td>image type with annotate appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Image widget with required new image

type image

appearance new

An image widget that does not include a Choose Image button. This requires the user to take a new picture.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.7. Image widgets

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_widget</td>
<td>Image widget without Choose button</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>image type with new appearance (can also be added with annotate appearance and on audio and video types)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.7.2 Self portrait (*selfie*) image widget

**type** image

**appearance** new-front

Takes a picture using the front-facing ("selfie") camera. The *Choose image* button is not displayed.

Changed in version 1.15: Prior to v1.15, the appearance attribute for this was selfie. The old appearance attribute will continue to work on existing forms, but new forms should use the new-front appearance.
Chapter 11. Question Types

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.7. Image widgets

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>self-portrait</td>
<td>Self portrait (<em>selfie</em>) widget</td>
<td>image type with new-front appearance</td>
<td>new-front</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.7.3 Draw widget

**type** image

**appearance** draw

Provides the user a drawing pad and collects the drawn image.
11.7. Image widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.51: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>draw_image_widget</td>
<td>Draw wid-</td>
<td>draw</td>
<td>image type with draw appear-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>get</td>
<td></td>
<td>ance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.7.4 Scaling down images

Images created with any of the image widgets described above can be automatically scaled down on save by using the `max-pixels` parameter. If the long edge of the image is larger than the maximum size specified, the image is resized proportionally so that the long edge matches the provided pixel value. This is useful to reduce the upload size when bandwidth is limited.

Available in Collect since v1.10.0 and in XLSForm since 7/2018.
**XLSForm**

In the parameters column, write `max-pixels=` followed by the desired maximum length of the long edge in pixels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>my_scaled_image</td>
<td>Scaled image</td>
<td>max-pixels=1024</td>
<td>image scaled to a max long edge of 1024 pixels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.8 Audio widget

type audio

appearance none

Records audio using the device’s microphone or a connected external microphone. By default, an *external application* is used. Starting with Collect v1.29, you can also use *built-in recording*. 

![Audio Question](https://docs.getodk.org)
11.8. Audio widget

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audio</td>
<td>bird_recording</td>
<td>What does it sound like?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip:** Audio files can be very large so if you record audio in your form, make sure that you consider your audio quality settings. Also, consider making test submissions to your server with the Internet conditions you expect when gathering data to make sure that you can send files of the size you expect.

Android devices can make many sounds during use and these will be included in recordings. We recommend turning off sounds from button presses, camera shutters and notifications before recording.

### 11.8.1 Using the built-in audio recorder

New in version 1.29: ODK Collect v1.29.0

The built-in audio recorder makes it possible to capture audio without having to install an external app. It also enables recording while filling out other questions and is designed to continue recording even if the user switches to another app or if the phone screen is locked.

To use the built-in audio recorder, *specify the desired audio quality* for each audio question in your form. You can also *configure Collect to always use the built-in recorder*. 
Chapter 11. Question Types

When built-in audio recording is enabled and recording is initiated, a recording control bar appears at the top of the screen. At the top left of this bar is an icon to represent whether recording is currently ongoing or paused (1). To the right of this icon is the current length of the recording (2).

**Warning:** Pause is only available on Android 7.0 and above. On lower Android versions, the pause button is hidden.

At the right of the control bar are a pause button (3) and a stop button (4). When the pause button is tapped, recording is temporarily suspended and the button icon changes to a microphone. When the microphone is tapped, recording is resumed. Recording can be paused and resumed as many times as desired. When the stop button is tapped, the recording is ended and can no longer be modified.

Recording status is also displayed below the audio question text. There is a time representing the current length of the recording (5) and a diagram (6) representing the volume of the recording over time. The diagram provides confirmation that the microphone is working and can help a user ensure an even, sufficient volume.

Other questions can be included on the same screen as a built-in recording question. As shown in the screenshot above, this makes it possible to capture quantitative content while recording. To achieve this, put the questions in a *field list*.
11.8. Audio widget

During recording, the user is prevented from leaving the current question screen. However, it is safe to use other applications or to lock the device screen.

Once recording is stopped, the control bar disappears. The recording is made available for playback below the question text.

To replace the audio captured, first delete the current file and then record again.

In some rare cases such as the device running out of space, the recording may complete successfully but not be attached to the form. If this happens, a dialog will be displayed explaining that the file is available but needs to be accessed manually. You can find these files in the recordings folder of the Collect directory. This folder is never cleared so consider emptying it yourself once you have retrieved its files.

11.8.2 Customizing audio quality

ODK Collect v1.29.0, pyxform v1.3.0, XLSForm Online v2.3.0

The quality of audio recordings can be customized using the quality parameter. If a quality is specified, the built-in recorder is always used, regardless of Collect settings. If no quality is specified and Collect is configured to use the built-in recorder, normal is used. The available quality values are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Bit rate</th>
<th>Sample rate</th>
<th>File size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>normal</td>
<td>.m4a</td>
<td>AAC</td>
<td>64kbps</td>
<td>32kHz</td>
<td>~30MB/hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>.m4a</td>
<td>AAC</td>
<td>24kbps</td>
<td>32kHz</td>
<td>~11MB/hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice-only</td>
<td>.amr</td>
<td>AMR</td>
<td>12.2kbps</td>
<td>8kHz</td>
<td>~5MB/hour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip:** We’d recommend only using voice-only for one-on-one interviews in a quiet place as otherwise there might be too much detail loss. low will sound compressed but speech is generally intelligible, even if multiple people are talking at once. normal is similar to typical podcast settings and will sound good on most devices.

It’s a good idea to test the different qualities out with the device (and any other equipment) you’ll be using in the field to see which one fits your use case and setup best.

XLSForm

In the parameters column, write quality= followed by the desired value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audio</td>
<td>voice_only_audio</td>
<td>Voice audio</td>
<td>quality=voice-only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 11. Question Types

Changing audio quality during form entry

If it’s a possibility that an individual question could need different qualities depending on context you can use `relevance` to switch between them:

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>relevance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>is_quiet</td>
<td>Are you currently in a quiet location with only one person speaking at a time?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio recording_voice_only</td>
<td>Please record</td>
<td>quality='voice-only'</td>
<td>${is_quiet} = 'yes'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio recording_normal</td>
<td>Please record</td>
<td>quality='normal'</td>
<td>${is_quiet} = 'no'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.8.3 Recording with an external app

Setting `quality` to `external` will use an external app to record audio rather than use Collect’s built in recording features. Some Android devices provide a default application for audio recording. Others do not, and the user will need to install an audio recording app.

There are many apps available for this, including:

- Axet Audio Recorder (open source)
- RecForge II

Any app that responds to `android.provider.MediaStore.Audio.Media.RECORD_SOUND_ACTION` will be compatible.

11.9 Video widgets
11.9. Video widgets

**Tip:** Video files can be very large. We recommend configuring video options for every device you intend to use for data collection. Also make submissions to your server with the Internet conditions you expect when gathering data to make sure that you can send files of the size you expect. Note that Central has a **100MB file upload size limit by default**.

- Default video widget
- Self portrait (selfie) video widget

11.9.1 Default video widget

Records video, using the device camera.
Chapter 11. Question Types

Please record a video of yourself blinking. 
Three times is probably sufficient.

Record Video
Choose Video
Play Video
11.9. Video widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.57: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>video</td>
<td>blinking</td>
<td>Please record a video of yourself blinking.</td>
<td>Three times is probably sufficient.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.9.2 Self portrait (selfie) video widget

Records video, using the front-facing ("selfie") camera. The Choose Video button is not displayed.
Chapter 11. Question Types

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.10 File upload widget

**XLSForm**

Table 11.58: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>video</td>
<td>selfie-video</td>
<td>Self portrait (selfie) video</td>
<td>new-front</td>
<td>video type with new-front appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.10 File upload widget

New in version 1.15: ODK Collect v1.15.0

Uploads any file from the device to the form.

**Warning:** Users can upload any file type, which includes potentially malicious files. You should not include this widget unless you trust the people using the form.

Even then, you should take precautions before downloading or opening files.

- Run an antimalware scan.
- Verify the file is a type you expect (such as a `.pdf` document), and not a potentially dangerous file (such as `.exe` or `.ini`).
Chapter 11. Question Types
11.11. Barcode widget

**XLSForm**

Table 11.59: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td>some-file</td>
<td>Select a file to upload.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.11 Barcode widget

Scans, decodes, and captures the content of a barcode, using the device camera.

The following barcode formats are supported:

- UPC-A
- UPC-E
- EAN-8
- EAN-13
- Code 39
- Code 93
- Code 128
- Codabar
- ITF
- RSS-14
- RSS-Expanded
- QR Code
- Data Matrix
- Aztec (beta)
- PDF 417 (beta)
- MaxiCode

**Note:** Barcode scanning is built into Collect versions 1.7.0 and greater.

Versions of Collect prior to 1.7.0 require the Barcode Scanner app to be installed.
Chapter 11. Question Types

- Default barcode widget
- Self portrait (selfie) barcode widget

### 11.11.1 Default barcode widget

The flash can be used as a light source when scanning barcodes in a poorly lit environment.
11.11. Barcode widget

Scan any barcode.

Replace Barcode

671860013525
Chapter 11. Question Types

**XLSForm**

Table 11.60: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barcode</td>
<td>barcode_example</td>
<td>Scan any barcode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**11.11.2 Self portrait (**selfie***) barcode widget**

In some cases a front camera may work better. The flash can’t be used in this case.

**XLSForm**

Table 11.61: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barcode</td>
<td>barcode_example</td>
<td>Scan any barcode.</td>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**11.12 Range widgets**

Range widgets allow the user to select numbers from within a range that is visually represented as a number line. The parameters of the range widget are defined by start, end, and step values defined in the parameters column of your XLSForm. The parameter values can be integers or decimals.

- Default range widget with integers
- Default range widget with decimals
- Vertical range widget
- Range widget with picker
- Range widget with rating

**11.12.1 Default range widget with integers**

**type** range

**appearance** none
11.12. Range widgets

If all three parameter values are integers, the input will be stored as an integer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>range_integer_widget</td>
<td>Range integer widget</td>
<td>range integer widget with no appearance</td>
<td>start=1; end=10; step=1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**XLSForm**

**Table 11.62: survey**

11.12.2 Default range widget with decimals

**type** range

**appearance** none

If any of the parameter values are decimals, the input will be stored as a decimal.
### XLSForm

#### Table 11.63: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>range_decimalWidget</td>
<td>range decimal widget with no appearance</td>
<td>vertical</td>
<td>range decimal widget</td>
<td>start=1.5;end=5.5;step=0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 11.12.3 Vertical range widget

**type** range

**appearance** vertical

To display the range widget’s number line vertically, use the vertical appearance. Both integers and decimals are supported.
11.12. Range widgets

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>range_integer_widget_vertical</td>
<td>Range vertical integer widget</td>
<td>vertical</td>
<td>range integer widget with vertical appearance</td>
<td>start=1;end=10;step=1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.12.4 Range widget with picker

**type**  range

**appearance**  picker

When the picker appearance is added, the range widget is displayed with a spinner-style select menu in a dialog. The value between horizontal lines is the selected value. Users can scroll the spinner up and down or can tap on the value above to go up by one and on the value below to go down by one.
11.12. Range widgets

XLSForm

Table 11.65: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>range_integer_widget_picker</td>
<td>picker</td>
<td>range integer widget with picker appearance</td>
<td>start=1;end=10;step=1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.12.5 Range widget with rating

type range

appearance rating

When the rating appearance is added, the range widget is displayed with stars having equal spacing. Number of stars is calculated using the end parameter. When the user taps on an empty star, the stars up to and including that star will be filled. If the stars don’t fit in the device width, they will wrap onto additional lines.
XLSForm

Table 11.66: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>range_integer_widget_rating</td>
<td>Rating widget</td>
<td>rating</td>
<td>range integer widget with rating appearance</td>
<td>end=9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.13 Note widget

**type** note

**appearance** *none*

A note to the user, accepting no input. This example includes *hint* text.
### 11.14 URL widget

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>note_1</td>
<td>This is an example note.</td>
<td>The text displays, but there is no input.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 11.14 URL widget

type: text

appearance: url

Provides a link which the user can open from the survey. Takes no input.

The URL to open is specified with default.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
XLSForm

Table 11.67: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>url_widget</td>
<td>URL widget</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>text type with url appearance and default value of <a href="http://getodk.org/">http://getodk.org/</a></td>
<td><a href="http://getodk.org/">http://getodk.org/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.15 Printer widget

type: text

appearance: printer:org.opendatakit.sensors.ZebraPrinter

Connects to an external label printer, and prints labels that can contain a barcode, a QR code, or text.

See printer-widget for complete details.
11.16 Trigger/acknowledge widget

XLSForm

Table 11.68: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>ex_printer</td>
<td>printer widget</td>
<td>printer:org.opendatakit.sensors.ZebraPrinter</td>
<td>concat('123456789', '&lt;br&gt;', 'QR CODE', '&lt;br&gt;', 'Text')</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.16 Trigger/acknowledge widget

type trigger, acknowledge

appearance none

The trigger widget, also known as the acknowledge widget, presents a single checkbox.

A completed trigger response is stored as the string OK.

The example shown here includes the required attribute.

![Trigger widget example](image-url)
Chapter 11. Question Types

Trigger widget
Prompt for confirmation. Useful to combine with required or relevant.
(type=trigger)
☐ OK. Please continue.

Sorry, this response is required!
11.17. Signature widget

### XLSForm

Table 11.69: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger</td>
<td>my_trigger</td>
<td>widget</td>
<td>Prompts for confirmation. Useful to combine with required or relevant. (type=trigger)</td>
<td>true()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.17 Signature widget

**type** image

**appearance** signature

Collects a signature from the user.
Chapter 11. Question Types

340

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.18. Hidden questions

XLSForm

Table 11.70: table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>signature_widget</td>
<td>Signature widget</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>image type with signature appearance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.18 Hidden questions

Not all question types render as visible widgets in Collect. These questions do collect and store values, which are accessible as variables and available in Aggregate and other data analysis tools.

- Metadata
- Geolocation at survey start
- Calculate

11.18.1 Metadata

Metadata questions capture information about the device or a survey collection event and are not visible to the user.

A more complete record of user behavior within a form can be generated by enabling form audit logging.

These items are dependent on the survey collection event:

- start — The datetime the survey was started in ISO 8601 format (e.g., 2019-09-27T09:45:10.854-07:00).
- end — The last datetime the survey was saved in ISO 8601 format.
- today — The date the survey was started in ISO 8601 format (e.g., 2019-09-27).
- start-geopoint — The geolocation when the survey was started. Read more.

This item is defined at installation time and cannot be changed:

- deviceid

These items are defined in Collect, and can be edited in Settings:
Chapter 11. Question Types

- username
- phononenumber

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deviceid</td>
<td>deviceid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phonenumber</td>
<td>phonenumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start-geopoint</td>
<td>start-geopoint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.18.2 Geolocation at survey start

See also:

Audit log geolocation tracking

**Note:** Geolocation at survey start was added in Collect v1.23 and Aggregate v2.0.4/v1.7.4. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v1.6.1, XLSForm Offline v1.11.1 or pyxform v0.15.1.

The start-geopoint question type is used to capture a single geolocation in geopoint format when the survey is first started. Questions of type start-geopoint may be given any allowable name. Although it is possible to have more than one start-geopoint question in a form, all will have the same value.

Any time a survey with a start-geopoint question is opened in Collect, the enumerator will see a warning that the form tracks device location. If the device battery is low, or if location tracking needs to be turned off for any reason, you can tap → Track location or turn off location providers in Android.

The first time that a survey with a start-geopoint question is opened, Collect will attempt to read the device’s geolocation. The geolocation reading with the highest accuracy received in a 20-second window will be recorded. A location icon will be displayed in the Android status bar while the geolocation is being requested by Collect.

Geolocation is read using data from GPS, WiFi and possibly other signals so this feature should work in most environments.

342 Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
11.19. **Grouping multiple widgets on the same screen**

If geolocation information is unavailable, the question will be left blank. Reasons for a blank value may include the enumerator turning off location providers, Collect not having location permissions, Google Play Services not being installed, the GPS not having satellite lock and more. No troubleshooting information is provided in the form submission.

Including a `start-geopoint` question may make it faster to get high-accuracy geolocation readings for other `location question types` by ”warming” the GPS.

11.18.3 **Calculate**

type calculate

Calculate questions let you evaluate complex `expressions`, storing the values for later use. For more details, see *Calculations*.

11.19 **Grouping multiple widgets on the same screen**

type begin_group

appearance field-list

The field-list appearance attribute, applied to a group of widgets, displays them all on a single screen.

---

**Warning:** Relevance, constraint and calculation evaluation within the same screen is supported in Collect v1.22 and later.

---

**Warning:** Displaying *Repeating questions* on the same screen (inside a field-list group) is not supported.

See also:

*Groups of questions* and *Repeating questions*.

11.20 **Grid of selects on the same screen**

If you have multiple select questions with the same choices, it can be helpful to group them on one screen.
To do this, put your select questions in a field-list group and use the following appearance attributes:

**label** Only the option labels are displayed, without checkboxes. This is used for the top row with the 'Yes' and 'No' options in the example above.

**list-nolabel** Only checkboxes or radio buttons are displayed, without their labels. This is used for the question rows in the example above.

**list** The labels are displayed along with checkboxes for multi-select questions and radio buttons for single-select questions. You could use this instead of having a label row to keep the option labels closer to the checkboxes or radio buttons.
### 11.20. Grid of selects on the same screen

#### XLSForm

Table 11.72: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>underlying_conditions</td>
<td>Underlying conditions</td>
<td>field-list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>condition_labels</td>
<td>Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>Comcond_preg</td>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>Comcond_partum</td>
<td>Post-partum (&lt; 6 weeks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td>underlying_conditions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.73: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
ODK Collect supports a wide range of dynamic form behavior. This document covers how to specify this behavior in your XLSForm definition.

See also:
XLSForm

Warning: Relevance, constraint and calculation evaluation within the same screen is supported in Collect v1.22 and later. In earlier versions of Collect, questions tied by logic must be displayed on different screens.

- Form logic building blocks
  - Variables
  - Expressions
  - Calculations
  - Values from the last saved record
  - Form logic gotchas
- Requiring responses
- Setting default responses
  - Static defaults
  - Dynamic defaults
  - Dynamic defaults in repeats
  - Dynamic defaults from form data
- Triggering calculations on value change
Chapter 12. Form Logic

12.1 Form logic building blocks

12.1.1 Variables

Variables reference the value of previously answered questions. To use a variable in XLSForm, put the question’s name in curly brackets preceded by a dollar sign:

$\{question-name\}$

Variables can be used in label, hint, and repeat_count columns, as well as any column that accepts an expression.
12.1. Form logic building blocks

What is your name?

Adam

Hello, Adam.
Chapter 12. Form Logic

XLSForm

Table 12.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>your_name</td>
<td>What is your name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>hello_name</td>
<td>Hello, ${your_name}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also refer to the current question or to the current question’s parent group or repeat:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>current question’s value</td>
<td>. &gt;= 18</td>
<td>Used in <code>constraints</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current question’s parent group</td>
<td>position(...)</td>
<td>Used with <code>position()</code> to get a parent repeat instance’s index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced: XPath paths

The `{}` notation in XLSForm is a convenient shortcut to refer to a specific field. When an XLSForm is converted, `{}` references are expanded to XPath paths which describe where the field is located in the form.

Some tools like ODK Build do not support `{}` notation so XPath notation must be used. Even in XLSForm, it can be advantageous to use XPath notation, especially in the context of repeats or datasets. The `{}` and XPath notations can be mixed freely.

One way to think about XPath is that it sees a form or dataset like a series of folders and files on your computer. Questions are like files while groups and repeats are like folders because they can contain other elements. Path elements are separated by `/`. Imagine a form with a group with name `outer` which contains another group with name `inner` which contains a question with name `q1`. The absolute path to `q1` is `/data/outer/inner/q1`.

The `data` in the example above is the name of the form root. This root is named data by default but can be modified by adding a name column in the XLSForm settings sheet and specifying a value below it. This is rarely needed. The `/` at the start of the path indicates that the path is absolute.

XPath paths can also be relative. For example, let’s say there’s a relevance expression for `q1` in the example above and that this expression refers to a question with name `age` in the `outer` group. We could refer to it using an absolute expression: `/data/outer/age`. We could also write a relative expression: `././age`.

The `../..` part of the relative expression says to go up two levels from the current position of `/data/outer/inner/q1`. The first `..` goes up one level to `/data/outer/inner` and then the second `..` goes up another level to `/data/outer/`. We want to access a question in the `outer` group so we add that question’s name to get `../../age`.

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
12.1. Form logic building blocks

ODK tools support a subset of XPath described in the ODK XForms specification.

**XPath predicates for filtering**

In *repeats* and *datasets*, an XPath path can refer to multiple nodes. This is called a nodeset. XPath predicates are True/False (boolean) expressions in square brackets that filter the nodeset they come after. When you define a *choice filter* for a select, that expression is used as an XPath predicate to filter the choice items.

You can also write your own expressions with predicates. For example, consider a form with a repeat with name *people* and a question inside with name *age* (see *XPath paths for repeats* for the form definition). The expression `/data/people[age < 18]` evaluates to a nodeset that includes all instances of the *people* instance for which the value of the *age* question is less than 18. *age* in the predicate is a relative expression evaluated in the context of each node in the nodeset. In this case, the relative expression *age* is evaluated in the context of `/data/people`, giving the path expression `/data/people/age`. This means that `/data/people/age` is compared to 18 for every *people* repeat instance.

You can add more path steps after a predicate. For example, `/data/people[age < 18]/pet_count` evaluates to a nodeset that includes all the pet counts for instances of the *people* repeat that have *age* values under 18. Nodesets can be passed in to functions like `sum()` or other functions that take nodeset arguments.

Sometimes forms may use *groups* to organize question sections within repeats. Those groups must be accounted for in predicates. If the *age* question were nested in a group called *inner*, the predicate expression would need to be `inner/age < 18`. Additionally, if the *pet_count* question were nested in a group called *details*, the full expression would be `/data/people[inner/age < 18]/details/pet_count`.

XPath predicates are also the way to reference specific values in a *dataset*. Learn more in the section on *referencing values in datasets*.

**XPath paths for repeats**

When a form definition includes a *repeat*, corresponding filled forms will have 0 or more instances of that repeat. Using the file and folder analogy described above, each repeat instance is like a folder and all of these folders have the name of the *repeat*. Repeat instances are differentiated by their index (first, second, ...).

When writing expressions within a repeat, it can be helpful to use the position of the repeat instance an enumerator is currently filling out. This can be done by using the `position()` function. One context in which this is useful is if you want to first collect a roster of people or things and then ask additional questions about each of those. As shown in the example in the `position()`, you can use a first repeat for the roster and then a second repeat that references items in the first repeat based on their position.
Another use of the `position` function is to access a preceding repeat instance. See an example of this in the section on *dynamic defaults in repeats*.

XPath paths can be useful to reference some or all repeat instances from outside the repeat. XPath notation is particularly helpful for filtering repeat instances, for example to provide a summary from data collected in repeats:

### XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin repeat</td>
<td>people</td>
<td>Person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>Age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>pet_count</td>
<td>How many pets does this person have?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end repeat</td>
<td>people</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
<td>total_pets</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>sum(${people}[age &lt; 18]/pet_count)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>total_note</td>
<td>Total pets owned by children:</td>
<td><code>${total_pets}</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the path expression `${people}[age < 18]/pet_count`, `${people}` uses `{}` notation to refer to all of the instances of the repeat. You could also expand this to the XPath path of `/data/people`. See the section on *XPath predicate* for more details. In this example, the `total_pets` value is displayed to the user. It could be used in many different contexts such as to define the *relevance* of a group if there’s a section of questions that only need to be filled out if there are more than one child-owned pets in the community.

#### 12.1.2 Expressions

An *expression* is evaluated dynamically as a form is filled out. It can include XPath functions, operators, *values from previous responses*, and (in some cases) the *value of the current response*.

**Example expressions**

`${bill_amount} * 0.18` Multiplies the previous value `bill_amount` by 18%, to calculate a suitable tip.
12.1. Form logic building blocks

(concat(${first_name}, ' ', ${last_name})) Concatenates two previous responses with a space between them into a single string.

${age} >= 18 Evaluates to True or False, depending on the value of age.

round(${bill_amount} * ${tip_percent} * 0.01, 2) Calculates a tip amount based on two previously entered values, and then rounds the result to two decimal places.

Expressions are used in:

- Calculations
- Validating and restricting responses
- Conditionally showing questions

12.1.3 Calculations

To evaluate complex expressions, use a calculate row. Put the expression to be evaluated in the calculation column. Then, you can refer to the calculated value using the calculate row’s name.

Expressions cannot be used in label and hint columns, so if you want to display calculated values to the user, you must first use a calculate row and then a variable.
Table 12.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>bill_amount</td>
<td>Bill amount:</td>
<td>round((${bill_amount} * 0.18),2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>tip_18</td>
<td></td>
<td>${{bill_amount}} + ${{tip_18}}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>tip_18_total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>tip_18_note</td>
<td>Bill: ${{bill_amount}}Tip (18%): ${{tip_18}} Total: ${{tip_18_total}}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.1. Form logic building blocks

12.1.4 Values from the last saved record

**Warning:** Support for last-saved was added in Collect v1.21.0. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v2.0.0 or pyxform v1.0.0. Using older versions will have unpredictable results.

You can refer to values from the last saved record of this form definition:

```
${last-saved#question-name}
```

This can be very useful when an enumerator has to enter the same value for multiple consecutive records. An example of this would be entering in the same district for a series of households.

**XLSForm that shows using a last-saved value as a dynamic default**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>street</td>
<td>Street</td>
<td>${last-saved#street}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The value is pulled from the last saved record. This is often the most recently created record but it could also be a previously-existing record that was edited and saved. For the first record ever saved for a form definition, the last saved value for any field will be blank.

Questions of any type can have their defaults set based on the last saved record. References to the last saved record can be used as part of any expression wherever expressions are allowed.

12.1.5 Form logic gotchas

**When expressions are evaluated**

Every expression is constantly re-evaluated as an enumerator progresses through a form. This is an important mental model to have and can explain sometimes unexpected behavior. More specifically, expressions are re-evaluated when:

- a form is opened
- the value of any question in the form changes
- a repeat group is added or deleted
- a form is saved or finalized
This is particularly important to remember when using functions that are not connected to fields in the form such as \texttt{random()} or \texttt{now()}. The value they represent may change as the conditions listed above take place.

To control when an expression is evaluated, use \textit{dynamic defaults} or \textit{trigger calculations on value change}. Dynamic defaults are evaluated exactly once on form load or repeat creation.

**Empty values in math**

Unanswered \textit{number questions} are nil. That is, they have no value. When a \textit{variable} referencing an empty value is used in a math \textit{operator} or \textit{function}, it is treated as Not a Number (NaN). The empty value \textbf{will not} be converted to zero. The result of a calculation including NaN will also be NaN, which may not be the behavior you want or expect.

To convert empty values to zero, use either the \texttt{coalesce()} function or the \texttt{if()} function.

\begin{verbatim}
coalesce(${potentially_empty_value}, 0)
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
if(${potentially_empty_value}=="", 0, ${potentially_empty_value})
\end{verbatim}

**12.2 Requiring responses**

By default, users are able to skip questions in a form. To make a question required, put yes in the required column.

Required questions are marked with a small asterisk to the left of the question label. You can optionally include a \texttt{required_message} which will be displayed to the user who tries to advance the form without answering the question.
12.2. Requiring responses

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
XLSForm

Table 12.5: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>required</th>
<th>required_message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>What is your name?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Please answer the question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.3 Setting default responses

To provide a default response to a question, put a value in the default column. Defaults are set when a record is first created from a form definition. Defaults can either be fixed values (*static defaults*) or the result of some expression (*dynamic defaults*).

12.3.1 Static defaults

The text in the default column for a question is taken literally as the default value. Quotes should **not** be used to wrap values, unless you actually want those quote marks to appear in the default response value.

In the example below, the "Phone call" option with underlying value `phone_call` will be selected when the question is first displayed. The enumerator can either keep that selection or change it.

**XLSForm to select "Phone call" as the default contact method**

Table 12.6: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one contacts</td>
<td>contact_method</td>
<td>How should we contact you?</td>
<td>phone_call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.7: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contacts</td>
<td>phone_call</td>
<td>Phone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contacts</td>
<td>text_message</td>
<td>Text message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contacts</td>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.3. Setting default responses

12.3.2 Dynamic defaults

**Warning:** Support for *dynamic defaults* was added in Collect v1.24.0. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v2.0.0 or pyxform v1.0.0. Using older versions will have unpredictable results.

If you put an expression in the default column for a question, that expression will be evaluated once when a record is first created from a form definition. This allows you to use values from outside the form like the current date or the *server username*. Dynamic defaults as described in this section are evaluated once on record creation. See below for using dynamic defaults in repeats or setting the default value of one field to the value of another field in the form.

**XLSForm to set the current date as default**

Table 12.8: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>fever_onset</td>
<td>When did the fever start?</td>
<td>now()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example below, if a username is set either in the *server configuration* or the *metadata settings*, that username will be used as the default for the question asked to the enumerator.

**XLSForm to confirm metadata like username**

Table 12.9: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>username</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>confirmed_username</td>
<td>What is your username?</td>
<td>${username}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip:** If enumerators will need to enter the same value for multiple consecutive records, dynamic defaults can be combined with *last saved*. For example, if enumerators are collecting data about trees and trees of the same kind grow together, you can use the last saved tree species as the default for new records.
12.3.3 Dynamic defaults in repeats

Dynamic defaults in repeats are evaluated when a new repeat instance is added.

One powerful technique is to use a value from a previous repeat instance as a default for the current repeat instance. For example, you could use the tree species specified for the last visited tree as the default species for the next tree.

Note: If you are collecting data about multiple entities such as trees, you can choose to use repeats or to use one form record per entity. See the repeats section for more information on making that decision. If you use one form record per entity, you can use last saved to get the same behavior as described in this section.

XLSForm to set a default value based on the last repeat instance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>species</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td>${tree}[position() = position(current()/..) - 1]/species</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the default expression above, ${tree} is a reference to the repeat. The expression [position() = position(current()/../) - 1] in brackets says to filter the list of possible tree repeat instances to only include the one with a position that is one less than the current repeat’s position. Finally, /species specifies that the species question from the repeat should be used. This is a mix of XLSForm’s ${} shortcut syntax for specifying question names and raw XPath syntax.

12.3.4 Dynamic defaults from form data

Warning: Support for dynamic defaults from form data was added in Collect v1.24.0. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v2.2.0 or pyxform v1.2.0. Using older versions will have unpredictable results.

It can be helpful to use a value filled out by the enumerator as a default for another question that the enumerator will later fill in. Dynamic defaults as described above can’t be used for this because they are evaluated on form or repeat creation, before any data is filled in.

You also can’t use the calculation column on its own for this because the expression in the calculation would be evaluated on form save and replace any changes the enumerator
12.3. Setting default responses

has made. Instead, use a combination of calculation and trigger. The question reference in the trigger column will ensure that your calculation is only evaluated when that reference changes.

**XLSForm that uses current age as the default for diagnosis age**

Table 12.11: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Child’s name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>current_age</td>
<td>Child’s age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>gender</td>
<td>Gender</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>diagnosis_age</td>
<td>Age at malaria diagno-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sis</td>
<td>${current_age}</td>
<td>${current_age}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, \(\text{${\text{current_age}}}\) in the trigger column means that when the value of the \(\text{current_age}\) question is changed by the enumerator, the calculation for the \(\text{diagnosis_age}\) question will be evaluated. In this case, this means the new value for \(\text{current_age}\) will replace the current value for \(\text{diagnosis_age}\). If the enumerator then changes the value for \(\text{diagnosis_age}\), this value will be retained unless the value for \(\text{current_age}\) is changed again.

Another option for the scenario above is to clear out the value for \(\text{diagnosis_age}\) when \(\text{current_age}\) changes. Making \(\text{diagnosis_age}\) a required question will force the enumerator to update \(\text{diagnosis_age}\) if \(\text{current_age}\) is corrected.

**XLSForm that clears diagnosis age if current age is updated**

Table 12.12: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>required</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Child’s name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>current_age</td>
<td>Child’s age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>gender</td>
<td>Gender</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>diagnosis_age</td>
<td>Age at malaria diagno-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sis</td>
<td>true()</td>
<td>”</td>
<td>${current_age}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, \(\text{diagnosis_age}\) is cleared any time the value of the \(\text{current_age}\) question is changed.
This kind of default is particularly useful if a form is being filled in about entities that there is already some knowledge about. For example, if you have a list of people to interview and you know their phone numbers, you may want to use the known phone number as a default and allow the enumerator to update it as needed.

**XLSForm that looks up default values based on a selection**

Table 12.13: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>trigger</th>
<th>choice_filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>participant</td>
<td>Participant</td>
<td>instance('participants')/root/item[name=${participant}]/phone_number</td>
<td>true()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>phone_number</td>
<td>Phone number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.14: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>phone_number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>participants</td>
<td>kwame_onwuachi</td>
<td>Kwame Onwuachi</td>
<td>+1-850-555-0168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participants</td>
<td>sophia_roe</td>
<td>Sophia Roe</td>
<td>+36 55 562 079</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, when a participant is selected, his or her phone number is populated as a default and can be updated as needed. If the selected participant changes, the phone number is replaced.

**Note:** The `true()` in the choice_filter column for the select_one in the example above is necessary to be able to look up participants’ phone numbers. This is currently needed to overcome a pyxform bug.

### 12.4 Triggering calculations on value change

**Warning:** Support for triggering calculations on value change was added in Collect v1.24.0. Form conversion requires XLSForm Online v2.2.0 or pyxform v1.2.0. Using older versions will have unpredictable results.
12.4. Triggering calculations on value change

*Calculations* are recomputed any time one of the values in its expression changes. For example, if your form includes the calculation \( q_1 + q_2 \), it will be recomputed any time either of the values for \( q_1 \) or \( q_2 \) changes.

Calculations can also be triggered when a value not involved in the calculation changes. This uses the same `trigger` column as *defaults from form data*. It is particularly useful for triggering calculations that involve values not in the form like random numbers or time.

12.4.1 Lightweight timestamping

Knowing how long an enumerator spent answering a question can help with quality control and training. ODK Collect provides an *audit log* that contains rich information about how an enumerator navigated a form. This log is captured as a separate file and can be complex to analyze. A simpler alternative is to capture timestamps when specific questions’ values change. This is similar to the *start* and *end* timestamp *metadata types*.

**Capturing last update timestamps**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dateTime</td>
<td>name_last_update_time</td>
<td></td>
<td>now()</td>
<td>${name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>life_story</td>
<td>Life story</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dateTime</td>
<td>life_story_last_update_time</td>
<td></td>
<td>now()</td>
<td>${life_story}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, the `name_last_update_time` field will be populated with the current time whenever the enumerator changes the value of the `name` question.

You can also capture the first time a question’s value is changed using an `if` in the *calculation*:

**Capturing first update timestamps**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>trigger</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dateTime</td>
<td>name_first_update_time</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${name_first_update_time}=&quot;&quot;, now(), ${name})</td>
<td>${name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>life_story</td>
<td>Life story</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dateTime</td>
<td>life_story_first_update_time</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${life_story_first_update_time}=&quot;&quot;, now(), ${life_story})</td>
<td>${life_story}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
12.5 Validating and restricting responses

To validate or restrict response values, use the constraint column. The constraint expression will be evaluated when the user advances to the next screen. If the expression evaluates to True, the form advances as usual. If False, the form does not advance and the constraint_message is displayed.

The entered value of the response is represented in the expression with a single dot (.).

Constraint expressions often use comparison operators and regular expressions. For example:

\[ . \geq 18 \] True if response is greater than or equal to 18.

\[ . > 20 \text{ and } . < 200 \] True if the response is between 20 and 200.

\[ \text{regex}(.,'p\{L\}+) \] True if the response only contains letters, without spaces, separators, or numbers.

\[ \text{not(contains(., 'prohibited'))} \] True if the substring prohibited does not appear in the response.

Note: Constraints are not evaluated if the response is left blank. To restrict empty responses, make the question required.

See also:

Using regular expressions
12.5. Validating and restricting responses

XLSForm

Table 12.17: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>middle_initial</td>
<td>What is your middle initial?</td>
<td>regex(., 'p{L}')</td>
<td>Just the first letter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.5.1 Read-only questions

To completely restrict user-entry, use the read_only column with a value of yes. This is usually combined with a default response, which is often calculated based on previous responses.
XLSForm

Table 12.18: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>read_only</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>salary_income</td>
<td>Income from salary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>self_income</td>
<td>Income from self-employment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>other_income</td>
<td>Other income</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>income_sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(${salary_income} + ${self_income} + ${other_income})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td>total_income</td>
<td>Total income</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>(${income_sum})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 12.6 Conditionally showing questions

The relevant column can be used to show or hide questions and groups of questions based on previous responses.

If the expression in the relevant column evaluates to **True**, the question or group is shown. If **False**, the question is skipped.

Often, comparison operators are used in relevance expressions. For example:

\(\${age} \leq 5\) True if age is five or less.

\(\${has\_children} = \text{‘yes’}\) True if the answer to has_children was **yes**.

Relevance expressions can also use **functions**. For example:

**selected($\{allergies\}, \text{‘peanut’})** True if peanut was selected in the *Multi select widget* named allergies.

**contains($\{haystack\}, \text{‘needle’})** True if the exact string needle is contained anywhere inside the response to haystack.

**count-selected($\{toppings\}) > 5** True if more than five options were selected in the *Multi select widget* named toppings.
12.6. Conditionally showing questions

12.6.1 Simple example

XLSForm

Table 12.19: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>relevant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one yes_no</td>
<td>watch_sports</td>
<td>Do you watch sports?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>favorite_team</td>
<td>What is your favorite team?</td>
<td>${watch_sports} = 'yes'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.20: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.6.2 Complex example

Video showing a series of select questions. The questions displayed change depending on what choices are selected in the first questions.
### XLSForm

Table 12.21: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>relevant</th>
<th>constraint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple medical_issues</td>
<td>what_issues</td>
<td>Have you experienced any of the following?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple cancer_types</td>
<td>what_cancer</td>
<td>What type of cancer have you experienced?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'cancer')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple diabetes_types</td>
<td>what_diabetes</td>
<td>What type of diabetes do you have?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'diabetes')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>blood_pressure</td>
<td>Systolic blood pressure reading</td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'hypertension')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>systolic_bp</td>
<td>Systolic</td>
<td></td>
<td>. &gt; 40 and . &lt; 400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>diastolic_bp</td>
<td>Diastolic</td>
<td></td>
<td>. &gt;= 20 and . &lt;= 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>other_health</td>
<td>List other issues.</td>
<td></td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'other')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>after_health</td>
<td>This note is after all health questions.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 12.7 Groups of questions

To group questions, use the begin_group...end_group syntax.

---

#### Table 12.22: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>diabetes</td>
<td>Diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>hypertension</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>other</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>lung</td>
<td>Lung cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>Skin cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>prostate</td>
<td>Prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>breast</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>other</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetes_types</td>
<td>type_1</td>
<td>Type 1 (Insulin dependent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetes_types</td>
<td>type_2</td>
<td>Type 2 (Insulin resistant)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:** Calculations are evaluated regardless of their relevance.

For example, if you have a calculate widget that adds together two previous responses, you cannot use relevant to skip in the case of missing values. (Missing values will cause an error.)

Instead, use the if() function to check for the existence of a value, and put your calculation inside the then argument.

For example, when adding together fields a and b:

```
if(${a} != '' and ${b} != '', ${a} + ${b}, '')
```

In context:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a =</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b =</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>a_plus_b</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${a} != ” and ${b} != ”, ${a} + ${b}, ”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>display_sum</td>
<td>a + b =</td>
<td>${a_plus_b}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
XLSForm — Question group

Table 12.23: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>my_group</td>
<td>My text widgets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>question_1</td>
<td>Text widget 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>question_2</td>
<td>These questions will both be grouped together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If given a label, groups will be visible in the form path to help orient the user (e.g. *My text widgets > Text widget 1*). Labeled groups will also be visible as clickable items in the jump menu:

**Warning:** If you use ODK Build v0.3.4 or earlier, your groups will not be visible in the jump menu. The items inside the groups will display as if they weren’t grouped at all.

Groups without labels can be helpful for organizing questions in a way that’s invisible to the user. This technique can be helpful for internal organization of the form. These groups can also be a convenient way to *conditionally show certain questions.*
12.8 Repeating questions

You can ask the same question or questions multiple times by wrapping them in begin_repeat...end_repeat. By default, enumerators are asked before each repetition whether they would like to add another repeat. It is also possible to determine the number of repetitions ahead of time which can make the user interaction more intuitive. You can also add repeats as long as a condition is met.

**XLSForm — Repeating one or more questions**

Table 12.24: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>my_repeat</td>
<td>repeat group label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>repeated_note</td>
<td>All of these questions will be repeated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>What is your name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>quest</td>
<td>What is your quest?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>fave_color</td>
<td>What is your favorite color?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:** Displaying repeating questions on the same screen (inside a field-list group) is not supported.

See also:

*Repeat Recipes and Tips* describes strategies to address common repetition scenarios.

**Tip:** Using repetition in a form is very powerful but can also make training and data analysis more time-consuming. Repeats exported from Central or Briefcase will be in their own files and will need to be joined with their parent records for analysis.

Before adding repeats to your form, consider other options:

- if the number of repetitions is small and known ahead of time, consider “unrolling” the repeat by copying the same questions several times.

- if the number of repetitions is large and includes many questions, consider building a separate form that enumerators fill out multiple times and link the forms with some parent key (e.g., a household ID).

If repeats are needed, consider adding some summary calculations at the end so that analysis will not require joining the repeats with their parent records. For example, if you are gathering household information and would like to compute the total number of households...
visited across all enumerators, add a calculation after the repeats that counts the repetitions in each submission.

12.8.1 Controlling the number of repetitions

User-controlled repeats

By default, the enumerator controls how many times the questions are repeated. Before each repetition, the user is asked if they want to add another.

Note: The label in the begin_repeat row is shown in quotes in the Add ...? message.

A meaningful label will help enumerators and participants navigate the form as intended. We generally recommend using a singular noun or noun phrase such as "observation" or "household member".

This interaction may be confusing to users the first time they see it. If enumerators know the number of repetitions ahead of time, consider using a dynamically defined repeat count.

Fig. 12.1: The user is given the option to add each repetition.
12.8. Repeating questions

**Tip:** The jump menu also provides shortcuts to add or remove repeat instances.

### Fixed repeat count

Use the repeat_count column to define the number of times that questions will repeat.

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>my_repeat</td>
<td>Repeat group label</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>repeated_note</td>
<td>These questions will be repeated exactly three times.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>What is your name?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>quest</td>
<td>What is your quest?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>fave_color</td>
<td>What is your favorite color?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Dynamically defined repeat count

The repeat_count column can reference previous responses and calculations.

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>number_of_children</td>
<td>How many children do you have?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>child_questions</td>
<td>Questions about child</td>
<td>${number_of_children}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>child_name</td>
<td>Child’s name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>child_age</td>
<td>Child’s age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Repeating as long as a condition is met

If the enumerator won’t know how many repetitions are needed ahead of time, you can still avoid the "Add ...?" dialog by using the answer to a question to decide whether another repeat instance should be added. In the example below, repeated questions about plants will be asked as long as the user answers "yes" to the last question.

Table 12.27: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>count</td>
<td></td>
<td>count(${plant})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>plant</td>
<td>Plant</td>
<td>if(${count} = 0 or ${plant}[position()=${count}]/more_plants = 'yes') ${count}+ 1 ${count})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>species</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>estimated_size</td>
<td>Estimated size</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>more_plants</td>
<td>more plants there more plants in this area?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.28: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This works by maintaining a count() of the existing repetitions and either making repeat_count one more than that if the continuing condition is met or keeping the repeat_count the same if the ending condition is met.

In the repeat_count expression, $\{$count$ = 0$ ensures that there is always at least one repeat instance created. The continuing condition is $\{$plant$[position()=\{$count$]}/more_plants = 'yes' which means "the answer to more_plants was yes the last time it was asked." The expression position()=$\{$count$ uses the position() function to select the last plant that was added. Adding /more_plants to the end of that selects the more_plants question.

Repeating zero or more times

Sometimes it only makes sense to collect information represented by the questions in a repeat under certain conditions. If the number of total repetitions is known ahead of time,
12.9 Filtering options in select questions

use *Dynamically defined repeat count* and allow a count of 0. If the count is not known ahead of time, *Conditionally showing questions* can be used to represent 0 or more repetitions. In the example below, questions about trees will only be asked if the user indicates that there are trees to survey.

Table 12.29: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>relevant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>trees_present</td>
<td>Are there any trees in this area?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>Tree</td>
<td>${trees_present} = 'yes'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>species</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>estimated_age</td>
<td>Estimated age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 12.30: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes_no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.9 Filtering options in select questions

To limit the options in a select question based on the answer to a previous question, specify an expression in the choice_filter column of the survey sheet. This expression will refer to one or more column in the choices sheet that the dataset should be filtered by.

For example, you might ask your enumerators to select a state first, and then only display cities within that state. This is referred to as a ”cascading select” and can be extended to any depth. The example below has two levels: job category and job title.

The choice_filter expression for the second select in the example is category=${job_category}. category is the name of a column in the choices sheet and ${job_category} refers to the first select question in the form. The filter expression says to only include rows whose category column value exactly matches the value selected by the enumerator as ${job_category}.

Any expression that evaluates to True or False can be used as a choice_filter. For example, you could add a location column to the choices sheet and also ask the user to enter a location they want to consider jobs in. If the new location question on the survey sheet is named ${job_location}, the choice filter would be category=${job_category} and location=${job_location}. Another example of a complex choice filter is one that uses...
text comparison functions to match labels that start with a certain value. Consider, for example, `starts-with(label, ${search_value})` where `search_value` is the name of a text question defined on the survey sheet.

### XLSForm

**Table 12.31: survey**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>choice_filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one job_categories</td>
<td>job_category</td>
<td>Job category</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one job_titles</td>
<td>job_title</td>
<td>Job title</td>
<td>category=${job_category}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 12.32: choices**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>job_categories</td>
<td>finance</td>
<td>Finance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_categories</td>
<td>hr</td>
<td>Human Resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_categories</td>
<td>admin</td>
<td>Administration/Office</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_categories</td>
<td>marketing</td>
<td>Marketing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>Accounts Receivable</td>
<td>finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>Payroll</td>
<td>finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>recruiting</td>
<td>Recruiting</td>
<td>hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>training</td>
<td>Training</td>
<td>hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>retention</td>
<td>Retention</td>
<td>hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>asst</td>
<td>Office Assistant</td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>mng</td>
<td>Office Manager</td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>reception</td>
<td>Receptionist</td>
<td>admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>creative_dir</td>
<td>Creative Director</td>
<td>marketing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job_titles</td>
<td>copywriter</td>
<td>Copywriter</td>
<td>marketing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 12.10 Generating select ones from repeats

If you use a repeat, you can generate a follow-up `select_one` question using values from the repeat. For example, if you collect information about several household members in a repeat, you can then show a select one with all household members’ names. To do this, add a question of type `select_one` followed by the name of the question in the repeat that you want to use for the select options.
As shown in the example above, you can combine this with other select features such as filtering. Note that in the example above, the question used as select option text is required. If a question used to generate a select_one is not required and it is left blank for some repeat instances, those repeat instances will not be included in the select.
Expressions in calculations, constraints, and relevants can contain operators and functions.

- **Operators**
  - Math operators
  - Comparison operators
  - Boolean operators
  - Path operators
- **Functions**
  - Control flow
  - Accessing response values
  - Strings
  - Math
  - Date and time
  - Geography
  - Utility
Chapter 13. Form Operators and Functions

13.1 Operators

13.1.1 Math operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>addition</td>
<td>${salary_income} + ${self_employed_income}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>subtraction</td>
<td>${income} - ${expenses}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>multiplication</td>
<td>${bill} * 1.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>division</td>
<td>${percent_int} div 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>modulo (division remainder)</td>
<td>(${even_number} mod 2) = 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:** Math operators only work with numbers.

- The addition operator cannot be used to concatenate strings. Use the `concat()` function instead.
- Empty values (that is, variables referencing unanswered questions) are actually empty strings, and will not be automatically converted to zero (0).

13.1.2 Comparison operators

Comparison operators are used to compare values. The result of a comparison is always True or False.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>equal to</td>
<td>${enrolled} = 'yes'</td>
<td>Can compare numbers or strings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>not equal to</td>
<td>${enrolled} != 'yes'</td>
<td>Can compare numbers or strings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>greater than</td>
<td>${age} &gt; 17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>greater than or equal to</td>
<td>${age} &gt;= 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>less than</td>
<td>${age} &lt; 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>less than or equal to</td>
<td>${age} &lt;= 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:**

- The relational operators (> , >=, <, <=) only work with numbers.
- *Empty response values are not automatically converted to zero (0).*
13.2. Functions

13.1.3 Boolean operators

Boolean operators combine two True or False values into a single True or False value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and True if the expressions before and after are True</td>
<td>${age} &gt; -1 \text{ and } {age} &lt; 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or True if either of the expressions before or after are True</td>
<td>${age} &lt; 19 \text{ or } {age} &gt; 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.1.4 Path operators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>. current question’s value</td>
<td>. &gt;= 18</td>
<td>Used in constraints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.. current question’s parent group</td>
<td>position(..)</td>
<td>Used with position() to get a parent repeat instance’s index.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Formally, these are not operators but rather XPath references to the current node (.) and the parent node (..). XPath paths can be used to reference nodes of a form.

13.2 Functions

- Control flow
- Accessing response values
  - Select questions
  - Repeat groups
- Strings
  - Searching and matching strings
  - Combining strings
  - Converting to and from strings
- Math
  - Number handling
Chapter 13. Form Operators and Functions

– Calculation
  • Date and time
    – Converting dates and time
    – Formatting dates and times for display
  • Geography
  • Utility

See also:
Functions in the ODK XForm Specification

13.2.1 Control flow

\textbf{if}(expression, \textit{then}, \textit{else})

Returns \textit{then} if expression evaluates to \textbf{True}. Otherwise, returns \textit{else}.

\textbf{position}(xpath)

Returns an integer equal to the 1-indexed position of the current node within the node defined by \textit{xpath}.

Most often this is used in the form \textbf{position}(..) to identify the current iteration index within a repeat group.
13.2. Functions

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>person_list</td>
<td>Please list the names of the people in your household.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person</td>
<td>Member of household</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td>person_details</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td>count(${person})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person_details</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td>count(${person})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>current_name</td>
<td></td>
<td>indexed-replace(${name}, ${person}, position(..))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>member_bday</td>
<td>Birthday of ${current_name}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

once(expression)

Returns the value expression if the question’s value is empty. Otherwise, returns the current value of the question.

This can be used to ensure that a random number is only generated once, or to store the first value entered for a question in a way that is retrievable even if the response is changed later.

Warning: This function is often misunderstood. Read when expressions are evaluated to learn more.

13.2.2 Accessing response values

Note: The response from most question types can be accessed using variables. Functions are needed for accessing responses to multi select questions and questions inside repeat groups.
Select questions

\texttt{selected} (\textit{space\_delimited\_array}, \textit{string})

Returns \texttt{True} if string is a member of \textit{space\_delimited\_array}, otherwise returns \texttt{False}.

Commonly used to determine if a specific choice was selected in a \textit{select question}. (This is possible because a reference to a select question returns a space-delimited array of choice names.)

Video showing a series of select questions. The questions displayed change depending on what choices are selected in the first questions.
## 13.2. Functions

### XLSForm

Table 13.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>relevant</th>
<th>constraint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>what_issues</td>
<td>have you experienced any of the following?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>what_cancer</td>
<td>what type of cancer have you experienced?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td></td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'cancer')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>what_diabetes_types</td>
<td>what type of diabetes do you have?</td>
<td>Select all that apply.</td>
<td></td>
<td>selected(${what_issues}, 'diabetes')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>blood_pressure</td>
<td>Blood pressure reading</td>
<td>selectd(${what_issues}, 'hypertension')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>systolic_bp</td>
<td>Systolic</td>
<td>. &gt; 40 and . &lt; 400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>diastolic_bp</td>
<td>Diastolic</td>
<td>. &gt;= 20 and . &lt;= 200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>other_health</td>
<td>other issues.</td>
<td>selectd(${what_issues}, 'other')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>after_health_note</td>
<td>This note is after other health questions.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
Chapter 13. Form Operators and Functions

Table 13.2: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>diabetes</td>
<td>Diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>hypertension</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical_issues</td>
<td>other</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>lung</td>
<td>Lung cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>Skin cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>prostate</td>
<td>Prostate cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>breast</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer_types</td>
<td>other</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetes_types</td>
<td>type_1</td>
<td>Type 1 (Insulin dependent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetes_types</td>
<td>type_2</td>
<td>Type 2 (Insulin resistant)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

selected-at($\text{space\_delimited\_array}, n$)

Returns the string at the $n^{th}$ position of the $\text{space\_delimited\_array}$. (The array is zero-indexed.) Returns an empty string if the index does not exist.

This can be used to get the name of a selected choice from a multi-select question. (This is possible because a reference to a select question returns a space-delimited array of choice names.)

Note: If used to get a choice name from a select question, this function returns the name, not the label, of the selected choice. To get the label in the current language, use $jr:\text{choice-name()}$. 
13.2. Functions

What colors do you like?
Select three.
- Red
- Blue
- Yellow
- Green
- Orange
- Purple

Selected colors:
red
green
purple
XLSForm

Table 13.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>color_prefs</td>
<td>What colors do you like?</td>
<td>Select three.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>color_0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>selected-at(${color_prefs}, 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>color_1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>selected-at(${color_prefs}, 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>color_2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>selected-at(${color_prefs}, 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>color_note</td>
<td>Selected colors:</td>
<td></td>
<td>${color_0} &lt;br&gt; ${color_1} &lt;br&gt; ${color_2}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13.4: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

count-selected(multi_select_question)

Returns the number of choices selected in multi_select_question.
XLSForm

Table 13.5: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>color_picks</td>
<td>What colors do you like?</td>
<td>Select three.</td>
<td>count-selected(.)=3</td>
<td>Select exactly three.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13.6: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

jr:choice-name("choice_name", 'select_question')
Returns the label value, in the active language, associated with the choice_name in the list of choices for the select_question.

**Note:** You have to wrap the select_question reference in quotes.

'${question_name}'
13.2. Functions

Selected colors:
- Red
- Green
- Purple

¿Qué colores te gustan?
- Rojo
- Azul
- Amarillo
- Verde
- Anaranjado
- Púrpura
Chapter 13. Form Operators and Functions

Colores seleccionados:
Rojo
Verde
Púrpura
### 13.2. Functions

**XLSForm**

Table 13.7: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English</th>
<th>label::Español</th>
<th>hint::English</th>
<th>hint::Español</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple colors</td>
<td>color_0</td>
<td>What colors do you like?</td>
<td>¿Qué colores te gustan?</td>
<td>Select three.</td>
<td>Seleccionate tres.</td>
<td>jr:choice-name( selected-at(${color_prefs}, 0), '${color_prefs}')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>color_1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jr:choice-name( selected-at(${color_prefs}, 1), '${color_prefs}')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>color_2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>jr:choice-name( selected-at(${color_prefs}, 2), '${color_prefs}')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>color_0</td>
<td>Colores seleccionados:</td>
<td>Colores seleccionados:</td>
<td>${color_0}</td>
<td>${color_0}</td>
<td>${color_0}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13.8: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English</th>
<th>label::Español</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Rojo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Azul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Amarillo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Verde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>Anaranjado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>Purple</td>
<td>Púrpura</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Repeat groups

Helpful terms

nodeset  A collection of XML nodes. In XLSForms, this is typically a collection of response values.

Outside a repeat group, referring to a question by name will return a nodeset containing all the responses to that question.

Nodesets can also be created by joining two or more nodes with pipes: /data/age | /data/name.

indexed-repeat\((name, group, i[, sub_grp, sub_i[, sub_sub_grp, sub_sub_i]])\)
Returns the response value of question name from the repeat-group group, in iteration i.

Nested repeat groups can be accessed using the sub and sub_sub parameters.

See also:

Referencing repeated questions from inside the repeat

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>person_list</td>
<td>Please list the names of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>people in your household.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person</td>
<td>Member of household</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person_details</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td></td>
<td>count(${person})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>current_name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>member_bday</td>
<td>Birthday of ${current_name}</td>
<td></td>
<td>indexed-repeat(${name}, ${person}, position(..))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.2. Functions

**count(nodeset)**

Returns the number of items in nodeset. This can be used to count the number of repetitions in a *repeat group*.

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>person_list</td>
<td>Please list the names of the people in your household.</td>
<td></td>
<td>count($person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person</td>
<td>Member of household</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>person_details</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td></td>
<td>count($person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>current_name</td>
<td>indexed-repeat(${name}, ${person}, position(..))</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>member_bday</td>
<td>Birthday of ${current_name}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**count-non-empty(nodeset)**

Returns the number of non-empty members of nodeset.

**sum(nodeset)**

Returns the sum of the members of nodeset.

Can be used to *tally responses to a repeated select question*. 
### Table 13.9: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>guest_details</td>
<td>Guest details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_name</td>
<td>Guest name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>Meal preference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>chkn</td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'chicken', 1, 0 )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>fsh</td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'fish', 1, 0 )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>veg</td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'vegetarian', 1, 0 )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>chkn_count</td>
<td>sum(${chkn})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>fsh_count</td>
<td>sum(${fsh})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>veg_count</td>
<td>sum(${veg})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 13.10: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>Chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>Fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>vegetarian</td>
<td>Vegetarian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### max(nodeset)

Returns the largest member of nodeset.

### Table 13.11: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>child_questions</td>
<td>Questions about child</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>child_name</td>
<td>Child’s name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>child_age</td>
<td>Child’s age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>age_of_oldest_child</td>
<td></td>
<td>max(${child_age})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.2. Functions

\texttt{min(nodeset)}

Returns the smallest member of nodeset.

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>child_questions</td>
<td>Questions about child</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>child_name</td>
<td>Child’s name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>child_age</td>
<td>Child’s age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>age_of_youngest_child</td>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{min(${child_age})}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning:** The \texttt{min()} and \texttt{max()} functions only work sets of numbers. Empty values (that is, variables referencing unanswered questions) are actually empty strings, and will not be automatically converted to zero (0).

13.2.3 Strings

**Searching and matching strings**

\texttt{regex(string, expression)}

Returns \texttt{True} if string is an \textit{exact and complete} match for expression.

See also:

\textit{Using regular expressions}
Chapter 13. Form Operators and Functions

XLSForm

Table 13.13: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>middle_initial</td>
<td>What is your middle initial?</td>
<td>regex(., 'p{L}')</td>
<td>Just the first letter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

contains\( (string, substring) \)

Returns True if the string contains the substring.

starts-with\( (string, substring) \)

Returns True if string begins with substring.

ends-with\( (string, substring) \)

Returns True if the string ends with substring.

substr\( (string, start[, end]) \)

Returns the substring of string beginning at the index start and extending to (but not including) index end (or to the termination of string, if end is not provided). Members of string are zero-indexed.
13.2. Functions

**substring-before**(string, target)
  Returns the substring of string *before* the first occurrence of the target substring. If the target is not found, or string begins with the target substring, then this will return an empty string.

**substring-after**(string, target)
  Returns the substring of string *after* the first occurrence of the target substring. If the target is not found this will return an empty string.

**translate**(string, fromchars, tochars)
  Returns a copy of string, where every occurrence of a character in fromchars is replaced by the corresponding character in tochars. If fromchars is longer than tochars then every occurrence of a character in fromchars that does not have a corresponding character in tochars will be removed.

**string-length**(string)
  Returns the number of characters in string. If no value is passed in, returns the number of characters in the value of the question that this function call is tied to which can be useful in a constraint expression.

**normalize-space**(string)
  Returns a string with normalized whitespace by stripping leading and trailing whitespace of string and replacing sequences of whitespace characters with a single space. If no value is passed in, normalizes whitespace of the value of the question that this function call is tied to.

**Combining strings**

**concat**(arg [, arg [, arg [, arg [...]]]])
  Concatenates one or more arguments into a single string. If any arg is a *nodeset*, the values within the set are concatenated into a string.

**join**(separator, nodeset)
  Joins the members of nodeset, using the string separator.

**Converting to and from strings**

**boolean-from-string**(string)
  Returns True if string is "true" or "1". Otherwise, False.

**string**(arg)
  Converts arg to a string.
13.2.4 Math

**Warning:** Math functions (except `number()`) only work with number values. You can use `number()` to convert a string of digits to a number, but it is usually better to get a number value directly.

Empty values (that is, variables referencing unanswered questions) are actually empty strings, and will not be automatically converted to zero (0).

**Number handling**

`round(number, places)`
Rounds a decimal number to some number of decimal places.

`int(number)`
Truncates the fractional portion of a decimal number to return an integer.

`number(arg)`
Converts arg to number value.
If arg is a string of digits, returns the number value.
If arg is `True`, returns 1. If arg is `False`, returns 0.
If arg cannot be converted, returns `NaN` (not a number).

`digest(data, algorithm, encoding method (optional))`
Computes and returns the hash value of the data string using the indicated hash algorithm string, and encoding this hash value using the optional encoding string.
Options for the algorithm are MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512.
If the third parameter is not specified, the encoding is base64. Valid options for the encoding are base64 and hex.
This function can be useful if, for example, someone wants to build a unique identifier from sensitive data like a national ID number without compromising that data.

See also:
`count()`, `max()`, `min()`, `number()`

**Calculation**

`pow(number, power)`
Raises a number to a power.
13.2. Functions

\texttt{log(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the natural log of number.

\texttt{log10(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the base-10 log of number.

\texttt{abs(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the absolute value of number.

\texttt{sin(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the sine of number.

\texttt{cos(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the cosine of number.

\texttt{tan(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the tangent of number.

\texttt{asin(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the arc sine of number.

\texttt{acos(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the arc cosine of number.

\texttt{atan(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the arctan of number.

\texttt{atan2(y, x)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the multi-valued inverse tangent of y, x.

\texttt{sqrt(number)}
\hspace{1em} Returns the square root of number.

\texttt{exp(x)}
\hspace{1em} Returns \(e^x\).

\texttt{exp10(x)}
\hspace{1em} Returns \(10^x\).

\texttt{pi()}\texttt{\hspace{1em} Returns an approximation of the mathematical constant \pi.}

13.2.5 Date and time

\texttt{today()}\hspace{1em} Returns the current date without a time component.

\texttt{now()}\hspace{1em} Returns the current datetime in ISO 8601 format, including the timezone.
Warning: This function is often misused. Read \textit{when expressions are evaluated} to learn more.

Converting dates and time

\texttt{decimal-date-time(dateTime)}

Converts \texttt{dateTime} value to the number of days since January 1, 1970 (the Unix Epoch).

This is the inverse of \texttt{date()}.  

\texttt{date(days)}

Converts an integer representing a number of days from January 1, 1970 (the Unix Epoch) to a standard date value.

This is the inverse of \texttt{decimal-date-time()}.  

\texttt{decimal-time(time)}

Converts time to a number representing a fractional day. For example, noon is 0.5 and 6:00 PM is 0.75.

Formatting dates and times for display

\texttt{format-date(date, format)}

Returns date as a string formatted as defined by format.

The following identifiers are used in the format string:

\begin{align*}
\%Y & \text{ 4-digit year} \\
\%y & \text{ 2-digit year} \\
\%m & \text{ 0-padded month} \\
\%m & \text{ numeric month} \\
\%b & \text{ short text month (Jan, Feb, Mar...)} \\
\%d & \text{ 0-padded day of month} \\
\%e & \text{ day of month} \\
\%a & \text{ short text day (Sun, Mon, Tue...).} \\
\end{align*}

Note: Month and day abbreviations are language and locale specific. If form locale can be determined, that locale will be used. Otherwise, the device locale will be used.

\texttt{format-date-time(dateTime, format)}

Returns dateTime as a string formatted as defined by format.
13.2. Functions

The identifiers list in \texttt{format-date()} are available, plus the following:

\begin{tabular}{|l|p{12cm}|}
\hline
%H & 0-padded hour (24-hr time) \\
%h & hour (24-hr time) \\
%M & 0-padded minute \\
%S & 0-padded second \\
%3 & 0-padded millisecond ticks. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

13.2.6 Geography

\texttt{area(noderset} \texttt{| geoshape)}

Returns the area, in square meters, of either a noderset of geopoints or a geoshape value.

It takes into account the circumference of the Earth around the Equator but does not take altitude into account.

\texttt{distance(noderset} \texttt{| geoshape} \texttt{| geotrace)}

Returns the distance, in meters, of either:

- a noderset of geopoints
- the perimeter of a geoshape
- the length of a geotrace value

It takes into account the circumference of the Earth around the Equator and does not take altitude into account.

13.2.7 Utility

\texttt{random()} 

Returns a random number between 0.0 (inclusive) and 1.0 (exclusive).

\begin{center}
\textbf{Warning:} This function is often misused. Read \textit{when expressions are evaluated} to learn more.
\end{center}

\texttt{randomize(noderset[, seed])}

Returns a shuffled noderset.

A shuffle with a numeric seed is deterministic and reproducible.

The primary use for this function is to randomize the order of choices for a select question. The \textit{documentation on select widgets} describes how this is done in XLSForm.
randomize() can only be used in a context where a nodeset is accepted. Note that questions of type calculate cannot reference a nodeset.

uuid([length])
Without argument, returns a random RFC 4122 version 4 compliant UUID.
With an argument it returns a random GUID of specified length.

boolean(arg)
Returns True if arg is:
- a number other than zero
- a non-empty string
- a non-empty collection
- a comparison or expressions that evaluates to True.
Returns False if arg is:
- the number 0
- an empty string
- an empty collection
- a comparison or expression that evaluates to False.

not(arg)
Returns the opposite of boolean(arg).

coaalesce(arg, arg)
Returns first non-empty value of the two args. Returns an empty string if both are empty or non-existent.

checklist(min, max, response[...])
Returns True if the number of responses that are exactly the string "yes" is between min and max, inclusive.
Set min or max to -1 to make the argument not applicable.

weighted-checklist(min, max, response, weight[...])
Returns True if the sum of the weights of each response that is exactly the string "yes" is between min and max, inclusive.
Set min or max to -1 to make the argument not

ture()
Evaluates to True.

false()
Evaluates to False.
ODK forms can use datasets in a variety of ways. These datasets can be either internal or external to the form.

Internal datasets are defined in the `choices` sheet of an XLSForm and are typically used as choices for `selects`. You can also define a dataset in the `choices` sheet to look up values based on user input. Learn how to define internal datasets in the section on `selects`.

External datasets are useful when:

- data comes from another system. Using data files attached to the form generally requires fewer steps than adding the data to a form definition.
- data changes frequently. One or more data file attached to the form can be updated without modifying the form definition.
- data is reused between forms. It may be easier to attach the same data file to multiple forms instead of copying the data into all the form definitions.
- the same forms are used in different contexts. For example, the exact same form definition could be used in multiple countries with different data files listing regions, local products, etc.

**Note:** Most mobile devices released in 2019 or later can handle lists of 50,000 or more without slowdowns. If you experience slowdowns, please share the size of the dataset, the device you are using, and any expressions that reference the dataset on the community forum or to support@getodk.org.

### 14.1 Building selects from CSV files

CSV files can be used as datasets for select questions using `select_one_from_file` or `select_multiple_from_file`. CSV files used this way must have name and label columns. For each row in the dataset, the text in the name column will be used as the value saved
when that option is selected and the text in the label column will be used to display the option. For select multiples, name must not contain spaces.

These files may also have any number of additional columns used in choice filters or other expressions. The example below uses one select from internal choices followed by selects from two different external CSV files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>choice_filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one states</td>
<td>state</td>
<td>State</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one_from_file lgas.csv</td>
<td>local_gov_area</td>
<td>Local Government Area</td>
<td>state=${state}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple_from_file wards.csv</td>
<td>wards</td>
<td>Wards</td>
<td>lga=${local_gov_area}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14.2: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>states</td>
<td>abia</td>
<td>Abia</td>
<td>4112230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>states</td>
<td>ebonyi</td>
<td>Ebonyi</td>
<td>2176947</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14.3: lgas.csv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>state</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aba_n</td>
<td>Aba North</td>
<td>abia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aba_s</td>
<td>Aba South</td>
<td>abia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afikpo_n</td>
<td>Afikpo North</td>
<td>ebonyi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14.4: wards.csv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>lga</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eziama</td>
<td>Eziama</td>
<td>aba_n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umuogor</td>
<td>Umuogor</td>
<td>aba_n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ezeke_amasiri</td>
<td>Ezeke amasiri</td>
<td>afikpo_n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poperi_amasiri</td>
<td>Poperi amasiri</td>
<td>afikpo_n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2 Building selects from XML files

XML files can be used as datasets that populate select questions using select_one_from_file or select_multiple_from_file. This is typically less convenient than using CSV files. However, knowing about the XML representation is helpful for understanding how to reference values in both CSV and XML files.
14.3 Referencing values in datasets

XML files used for selects must have the following structure and can have any number of item blocks:

```xml
<root>
  <item>
    <name>...</name>
    <label>...</label>
  ...
  </item>
  ...
</root>
```

The item blocks are analogous to rows in the CSV representation. Each item must have at least name and label nested nodes and can have any number of additional nodes. These nodes correspond to columns in the CSV representation.

14.3 Referencing values in datasets

XPath paths can be used to reference values in internal or external datasets. These paths will start with the instance(<instance name>) function to identify which dataset is being accessed. The next part of the path is generally /root/item because of the XML structure used to represent datasets for selects. The only exception is when using custom XML files which may have arbitrary schemas if not used for selects.

For internal datasets, the instance name is the list name specified on the choices sheet. For example, to reference the population of the selected state given the form above, the instance name to use is states. The expression would be instance("states")/root/item[name = ${state}]/population. To understand this expression better, read the section on XPath paths and especially the subsection about XPath paths for filtering. You could also do things like count the number of states with a population above a certain threshold using an expression like count(instance("states")/root/item[population > ${pop_threshold}]).

For external datasets, the instance name is the filename specified in the select_one_from_file or select_multiple_from_file declaration without the file extension. For example, to look up a ward’s label given the form above, the instance name to use is wards because the filename referenced is wards.csv. The expression would be instance("wards")/root/item[name = ${ward}]/label.
Questions can include Media such as images, sound or video. Additionally, labels, hints, and choices in an XLSForm can all be styled using Markdown, fonts and colors, and Emoji.

15.1 Media

You can include questions in your form that display images or that play video or audio files by including a media column in your XLSForm. Files referenced should be included in your form’s media folder.

15.1.1 Images

Adding an image to a question displays the image as part of the question.
XLSForm

Table 15.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>Do you want coffee?</td>
<td>mug.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15.2: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yesnodk</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesnodk</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesnodk</td>
<td>dk</td>
<td>I don’t know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.1.2 Audio

Adding audio to a question adds a play/stop button that controls the audio clip.
15.1. Media

XLSForm

Table 15.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::audio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>How does this song make you feel?</td>
<td>amazing.mp3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.1.3 Video

Adding video to a question adds a button that will play the video clip full screen when clicked.
### 15.1.4 Autoplaying Media

Audio and video on questions can also be played automatically when a question is viewed by adding an autoplay column specifying either audio or video.

**XLSForm**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>media::audio</th>
<th>autoplay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>How does this song make you feel?</td>
<td>amazing.mp3</td>
<td>audio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some considerations for autoplaying:
15.2. Markdown

- Audio/video included in select choices will be autoplayed after the question’s media in display order
- If using a field-list appearance for a group no media will be autoplayed
- Appearances for selects that hide buttons will disable autoplay for media

15.2 Markdown

*XLSForm* supports limited used of Markdown.

15.2.1 Headers

Labels and hints can be styled with one of six header levels.

```markdown
# Header H1
## Header H2
### Header H3
##### Header H5
```

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Warning: If a Markdown header is used, the label or hint can only be one line of text. Line breaks in the XLSForm cell will break the header styling.
Fig. 15.1: A comparison of headline sizes. This exact effect *cannot be produced using Markdown*.
XLSForm

Table 15.6: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>broken_header</td>
<td># Attempted H2 Label Header</td>
<td># Attempted H3 hint headline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A line below the headline</td>
<td>Here is some text below the headline.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.2.2 Emphasis

Collect’s Markdown support also includes **bold** and *italic* styling.
15.2. Markdown

```
_italic_
*italic*
__bold__
**bold**
```

**Note:** The label of a form widget is already bold, so bolding text within the label has no effect. Similarly, the hint text of a form widget is already in italics, so italicizing text within the hint has no effect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XLSForm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.2.3 Hyperlinks

Collect’s Markdown support include hyperlinks, which will open in the device’s default browser.

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>hyper-link</td>
<td>This label <a href="http://example.com">contains a link</a>.</td>
<td>This hint <a href="http://example.com">contains a link</a>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.2.4 Escaping Markdown

New in version 1.15.

If you want to include literal asterisks or underscores, escape them with a back-slash (`\`). If you want to include a literal back-slash, you’ll need to escape that too.
15.3. Fonts and colors

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>escape_md</td>
<td># This headline is normal</td>
<td><em>Asterisks</em> and <em>underscores</em> and one slash: \</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.2.5 Inline HTML

Many Markdown implementations support inline HTML, but Collect only supports a small subset of HTML elements. Support of HTML is further limited because:

- Your exact Android device, operating system version, and other device-related factors will affect what HTML can be rendered, and how it is rendered.
- HTML is not supported by other form rendering tools in the XForms ecosystem. For example, HTML elements that work in Collect may not work in Enketo.

For these reasons, we do not recommend using HTML in forms (except the `<span>` element noted below).

See also:
The list of HTML tags currently supported in Collect.

15.3 Fonts and colors

To add custom styling to hint, label, and choice labels, use the style attribute on a span tag. The style attribute accepts CSS-like key-value pairs for setting color and font-family.

- For color, try one of the named HTML color values or use a hex color.
- For font-family, it is best to use generic font categories rather than specific fonts:
  - serif
  - sans-serif
  - monospace
  - cursive
  - fantasy

This will ensure support across most devices. You can also use specific font choices, but you should test these on the actual devices being used.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Note: These two attributes, color and font-family, are the only style attributes supported in Collect.
15.3. Fonts and colors

Going **green**

Going `<span style="color:#008000">green</span>`

*Cursive text*

`<span style="font-family:cursive">Cursive text</span>`
Chapter 15. Form Styling

Formatting works on labels for Choices also.

- Yes
- No

Color and font styling can be combined.
15.4. Emoji

XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Going &lt;span style=&quot;color:red&quot;&gt;red&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Going &lt;span style=&quot;color:#008000&quot;&gt;green&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>cursive</td>
<td>&lt;span style=&quot;font-family:cursive&quot;&gt;Cursive text&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>colored_choices</td>
<td>Formatting works on labels for Choices also.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>combo</td>
<td># &lt;span style=&quot;font-family:cursive; color:purple&quot;&gt;Color and font styling can be combined.&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15.8: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yn</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>&lt;span style=&quot;color:green&quot;&gt;Yes&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yn</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>&lt;span style=&quot;color:red&quot;&gt;No&lt;/span&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.4 Emoji

Emoji can be used in form labels, hints, and answer choices.

Note: The exact visual representation of each emoji character is controlled by the device operating system, and may vary from device to device. If possible, you should check how your rendered forms look on the devices you are using for data collection.
Chapter 15. Form Styling

XLSForm

Table 15.9: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_one pain</td>
<td>pain</td>
<td>What is your current pain level?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain_level</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15.10: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- Styling prompts in XLSForm
15.4. Emoji

- Sample XLSForm with Style
**ODK Collect** and **XLSForm** support multi-language forms.

To add additional languages to your XLSForm, add columns of user-facing content with language-specific columns.

All columns representing user-facing text or media can be multi-lingual:

- label
- hint
- media::*
- constraint_message
- required_message

Each language column adds two colons and the language name, followed by the *two letter language code* in parenthesis.

For example:

- label::English (en)
- hint::French (fr)
- media::image::Español (es)

**Note:** The text shown in Collect’s user interface (e.g., buttons, menus, dialogs) is controlled by device language, not the form language. If you would like Collect’s user interface to support your language, contribute translations at [https://www.transifex.com/getodk](https://www.transifex.com/getodk).
XLSForm — Single language

Table 16.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>hint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple colors</td>
<td>color prefs</td>
<td>What colors do you like?</td>
<td>Select three.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 16.2: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>header</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>Purple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

XLSForm — Multiple languages

Table 16.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English (en)</th>
<th>label::Español (es)</th>
<th>hint::English (en)</th>
<th>hint::Español (es)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple colors</td>
<td>color prefs</td>
<td>What colors do you like?</td>
<td>¿Qué colores te gustan?</td>
<td>Select three.</td>
<td>Seleccionare tres.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 16.4: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English (en)</th>
<th>label::Español (es)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Rojo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Azul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Amarillo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Verde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>Anaranjado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colors</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>Purple</td>
<td>Púrpura</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What colors do you like?
Select three.
- Red
- Blue
- Yellow
- Green
- Orange
- Purple

¿Qué colores te gustan?
Seleccione tres.
- Rojo
- Azul
- Amarillo
- Verde
- Anaranjado
- Púrpura
**Warning:** There is no fallback language.

If you have specified languages for a column, the non-specific version of that column will be treated as if it were a separate language. (The *Change Language* menu will list it as *Default*.)

To avoid this, all columns that can be made multi-lingual need to be created as such for a multi-language form. For example, even if using the same image for a question prompt you will need a `media::image::*` column for each language. However, you may provide the same media filename for each.

Blank cells in a language-specific column will be blank in the form when that language is active, even if the ”default” column has a value.

---

**XLSForm — Multiple languages with media example**

Table 16.5: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English (en)</th>
<th>label::Español (es)</th>
<th>media::image::Español (es)</th>
<th>media::image::English (en)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>Do you want coffee?</td>
<td>¿Quieres café?</td>
<td>mug_es.jpg</td>
<td>mug_en.jpg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 16.1 Switching languages

Typically, if multiple languages are available on a form, the form will display in the language set on the device.

To switch between available languages on a form, go to → *Change Language*.

---

**Note:** Collect will remember the last language you switched to on a form, even if you switch device language.

Changing the form’s language display will not change the device language. If you are in a context that requires switching languages often, make sure you know where to do this in your device’s *Settings* menu.
Collect can log the behavior of enumerators as they navigate through a form. This log has many uses including discovering:

- questions that take a long time to answer
- how enumerators typically navigate through a form
- enumerators who take a particularly long or short time to answer
- if enumerators were at the correct location when filling out a form
- when, why and who changed answers

This information can inform form design and training or feed into data validation processes.

See also:

Lightweight timestamping

**Warning:** If using Aggregate, Aggregate 1.5.0+ required

If a version of Aggregate lower than 1.5.0 is used, audit files will not be saved on the server.
17.1 Enabling audit logging

To enable logging for a form, add a row of type audit and name audit in an XLSForm:

Table 17.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A form may contain at most one row of type audit.

17.1.1 Location tracking

You may add the location of events to the log. To do this, add the following parameters to the XLSForm. All three parameters are required.

- **location-priority** *high-accuracy*: The most accurate location provided by the device, regardless of power use.
  - *balanced*: Block level accuracy (~100 meters). Uses less power than high-accuracy.
  - *low-power*: City level accuracy (~10 kilometers). Uses less power than balanced.
  - *no-power*: No locations will be returned unless another application on the device has requested location updates. Uses no additional power.
- **location-min-interval**: The desired minimum time, in seconds, at which location updates will be fetched by the device.
- **location-max-age**: The maximum time, in seconds, locations will be considered valid by the device. Must be greater than or equal to location-min-interval.

Table 17.2: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>location-priority=balanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>location-min-interval=60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>location-max-age=120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When location tracking is enabled, ODK Collect requests location updates from Android periodically, with an interval determined by location-min-interval. The requests are sent
with location-priority to ensure Android does not use more power than is desired.

When Collect receives the location updates, it stores the locations in a timestamped cache. At the time of an event, Collect checks the cache for locations stored over the last location-max-age and returns the most accurate location in the cache.

For the most accurate locations, set location-priority to high-accuracy. For the most recent locations, use low numbers for location-min-interval and location-max-age.

**Warning:** Location tracking can be an invasion of privacy. Users of ODK Collect will be informed that their location is being tracked when they open a form with this feature enabled.

Users can control their privacy by disabling location providers in Android, refusing to grant Collect location permissions, or by disabling location tracking of specific forms in Collect.

Disabling location tracking will not prevent users from filling out forms, but these changes are logged as events in the log.

### 17.1.2 Change tracking

You can enable change tracking so that old answers and new answers will be added to the question events. To do this, add the following parameter to the XLSForm: track-changes=true.

Table 17.3: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>track-changes=true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.1.3 Reason for changes

New in version 1.25: ODK Collect v1.25.0

You can add to track-changes-reasons=on-form-edit to prompt enumerators to enter a reason before they save changes to a form:

Table 17.4: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>track-changes-reasons=on-form-edit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This will prevent filled out forms being edited without a reason being given. If a reason is
given the form will be saved normally and the audit log will include a change reason event with the reason recorded in the change-reason column.

### 17.1.4 Enumerator identification

**ODK Collect v1.25.0**

If your form needs a record of the identity of the enumerator you can use identify-user=true.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audit</td>
<td>identify-user=true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This will cause Collect to prompt the enumerator for their identity before filling out or editing a form instance. In the audit log, a user column will be included that will be populated for each event. The enumerator will not be able to fill in or edit the form without entering a non-blank identity.

**Tip:** identify-user is useful for data collection workflows where devices might be passed between multiple enumerators for data verification or completion.

In cases where a device will only ever used by a single enumerator, it might make more sense to use username metadata. This will write the username to each submission instead of to the audit log.

### 17.2 Viewing audit logs

Central will export a CSV with audits from all submissions if an export is requested for a form with an audit.

If using Aggregate, audit logs can be reviewed and downloaded for further analysis using Briefcase.

In Aggregate 1.5.0+, audit logs can be viewed by clicking on the media icon in the meta audit column on the Submissions page:

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
17.3 Log structure

If a form includes an audit, Collect will create an `audit.csv` file as the form is filled out. The `audit.csv` file has the following structure:

**Audit CSV contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Node</th>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form start</td>
<td>/data/text_field</td>
<td>Mon Mar 19 11:46:24 GMT-700 2018</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form save</td>
<td>/data/date_field</td>
<td>Mon Mar 19 11:46:28 GMT-700 2018</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group questions</td>
<td>/data</td>
<td>Mon Mar 19 11:46:29 GMT-700 2018 Mon Mar 19 11:46:30 GMT-700 2018</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tip:** Aggregate currently only displays event, node, start, and end in the audit popup. To view locations, changed answers, or to perform more sophisticated analysis, logs can be downloaded along with their submissions using Briefcase.
Table 17.6: audit.csv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>event</th>
<th>node</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/name</td>
<td>1523403169208</td>
<td>1523403170733</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values in the event column represent a particular user action such as opening a form, saving a form, or displaying a question. Possible event types are described in the Event types section.

Values in the node column represent the node in the form that the event refers to, if applicable.

Values in the start and end columns are timestamps represented as the number of milliseconds since midnight, January 1, 1970 UTC. This is known as epoch time and provides a standard way of representing date/time even across timezones. The Timestamps section contains more information about timestamps.

If both location tracking and change tracking are enabled in the log, the CSV will look like this:
17.3. Log structure

Table 17.7: audit.csv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>event</th>
<th>node</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>latitude</th>
<th>longitude</th>
<th>accuracy</th>
<th>old-value</th>
<th>new-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form start</td>
<td></td>
<td>1550615022663</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location tracking enabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>1550615022671</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/name</td>
<td>15506150248840</td>
<td>15506150249279</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477 John</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location permissions granted</td>
<td></td>
<td>1550615068610</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location providers enabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>1550615068665</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location tracking disabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>1550615095914</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/age</td>
<td>15506150959524</td>
<td>15506150959963</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.0869998931884770</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/name</td>
<td>15506150959614</td>
<td>15506150959963</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477 John Smith</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location tracking enabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>15506150959767</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/age</td>
<td>15506150959914</td>
<td>15506151000312</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end screen</td>
<td></td>
<td>15506151000312</td>
<td>15506151000962</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form save</td>
<td></td>
<td>15506151000962</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form exit</td>
<td></td>
<td>15506151000962</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form finalize</td>
<td></td>
<td>15506151000962</td>
<td>37.4229983</td>
<td>-122.084</td>
<td>14.086999893188477</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values in the latitude and longitude columns represent the latitude and longitude in decimal degrees. Values in the accuracy column represents accuracy in seconds.

**Note:** Locations will often be repeated in the log. This is because locations are not captured at the time of the event, but rather retrieved from a cache of the most accurate points captured over the last location-max-age.
Note: Answers will be recorded only if they differ (if the new answer is different than the old one), otherwise, cells should be empty. Answers which contain commas will be surrounded by double quotes.

17.4 Event types

The event column of the audit log can have the following values:
## 17.4. Event types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Node?</th>
<th>Timestamps?</th>
<th>Coordinates?</th>
<th>Answers?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form start</td>
<td>Start filling in the form</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>View a question</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group questions</td>
<td>View multiple questions on one screen (field-list)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jump</td>
<td>View the jump screen</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add repeat</td>
<td>Add a repeat</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delete repeat</td>
<td>Delete a repeat</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end screen</td>
<td>View the end screen</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form save</td>
<td>Save the form</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form exit</td>
<td>Exit the form</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form resume</td>
<td>Resume the form</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form finalize</td>
<td>Finalize the form</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save error</td>
<td>Error trying to save</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finalize error</td>
<td>Error trying to finalize the form (probably encryption related)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint error</td>
<td>Constraint or required error on finalize</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>start only</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location tracking</td>
<td>Toggle location tracking in Collect</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location providers</td>
<td>Toggle location providers in Android</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If enabled and available</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.5 Timestamps

If we relied entirely on the time reported by the device for timestamps, users or the network could change the device time and manipulate the correctness of the audit log. For this reason, we only use device time for the form start timestamp. All subsequent event timestamps are the result of elapsed time, which users cannot change, added to the form start timestamp. This means that while the timestamps themselves may potentially be inaccurate, the time elapsed within and between the timestamps are always accurate within one form editing session.

Using epoch time makes it easy to compute elapsed time by subtracting start from end. For example, given the following log:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>event</th>
<th>node</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>form start</td>
<td></td>
<td>1488761807863</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>/data/name</td>
<td>1488761807868</td>
<td>1488761809157</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The enumerator spent 1488761809157 - 1488761807868 = 1289 milliseconds on the screen showing the /data/name question. This corresponds to 1289 / 1000 = 1.289 seconds.

To convert from epoch time to time in UTC in most common spreadsheet programs, divide the epoch time by 86400000 ms per day and add 25569 days between January 1, 1900 (what spreadsheet programs use as "day zero") and January 1, 1970. For example, to convert the timestamp 1488761807868:

\[
\frac{1488761807868}{86400000} + 25569 = 42800.03944
\]

When the cell is set to type date time in common spreadsheet programs, it will show 3/6/2017 0:56:48 UTC. A common workflow if device time is needed in a human-readable format will be to add a column for the calculation above and change that column’s type to date time.

17.6 Known limitations

- If the device is turned off while a form is being filled, Collect will not record a log entry for the screen that was shown at the time of device shutdown. Events before and after the shutdown will be logged.
- Editing a saved form that was saved using different audit log options can result in a corrupt audit. It might take place when a user saves a form then updates a form definition (changing audit log options) and tries to edit the saved form.
LAUNCHING EXTERNAL APPS

See also:

Launching ODK Collect from External Apps

18.1 Launching external apps to populate single fields

ODK Collect can launch external applications using the `ex:intentAction(intentExtras)` appearance on string, integer or decimal fields. The application launched could be one that the enumerator uses and quits without Collect needing any data from it. For example, a form could configure the Maps.me application to provide directions to a destination and not need any information back from the app. An external application could also be used to populate the string, integer or decimal field that launched it. In order to populate a field, the app that is launched must be designed to returned a value as described in the external app design section below.

This feature configures an Android intent. Intents are messaging objects used to request an action from another app component. Learn more in the Android docs.

Collect builds the action using the text immediately after `ex:` and before an opening parenthesis (if it exists). For example, in the string `ex:org.opendatakit.counter(intentExtras)`, the action name is `org.opendatakit.counter`. An action name must include a namespace, such as `org.opendatakit` or `com.google`. For example, `ex:org.opendatakit.counter` is valid but `ex:counter` is not.

The parameters defined in the optional parentheses represent extended data ("extras") to be added to the intent. Extras are specified by a comma-delimited list of `name=value` pairs. The text to the left of the equals sign represents the extra name and may require a namespace. The text to the right of the equals sign represents the extra value.

The values of extras can be:

- XPath expressions referring to other fields and including function calls
- String literals defined in single quotes

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 18. Launching External Apps

- Raw integers or decimals

An extra named value that holds the current value for the current field is always passed with the intent. Since v1.4.3, additional parameters with user-defined names can be specified. There are two reserved names: value and uri_data.

Since Collect v1.16.0, the data that the intent operates on can be set by using the reserved uri_data parameter. This is particularly useful for implicit intents such as android.intent.action.SENDTO.

### 18.1.1 XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>int-</td>
<td>counter</td>
<td>click launch to start the counter app</td>
<td>ex:org.opendatakit.counter(form_id='counter-form', form_name='Counter Form', question_id='1', question_name='Counter')</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 18.1: survey

In the examples above, the extras specified have names form_id, form_name, question_id, and question_name.

### 18.2 Designing an external app to return a single value to Collect

When an activity that is launched returns to Collect, Collect will look for an intent extra named value and use its value to populate the field that triggered the application launch. See a counter app to see an example of how this is done.

### 18.3 Launching external apps to populate multiple fields

Since v1.4.3, a field-list group can have an intent attribute that allows an external application to populate it. Notice that the ex: prefix used when populating a single field is not included to populate multiple fields.
18.3.1 XLSForm

Table 18.2: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>appearance</th>
<th>body::intent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>my-group</td>
<td>Fields to populate</td>
<td>field-list</td>
<td>org.mycompany.myapp(my_text='Some text', uuid=/myform/meta/instanceID)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>some-text</td>
<td>Some text</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>some-integer</td>
<td>Some integer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```xml
<group ref="/myform/mygroup" appearance="field-list"
  intent="org.mycompany.myapp(my_text='Some text', uuid=/myform/meta/instanceID)"
>
  <label>Fields to populate</label>
  <input ref="/myform/mygroup/sometext">
    <label>Some text</label>
  </input>
  <input ref="/myform/mygroup/someinteger">
    <label>Some integer</label>
  </input>
</group>
```

The intent attribute is only used when the group has an appearance of field-list. The format and the functionality of the intent value is the same as above. If the bundle of values returned by the external application contains values with keys that match the type and the name of the sub-fields, then the values from the bundle overwrite the current values of those sub-fields.

The external app is launched with the parameters that are defined in the intent string plus the values of all the sub-fields that are either text, decimal, or integer. Any other sub-field is invisible to the external app.

18.4 Specifying a URI as intent data

Since Collect v1.16.0, the value for the reserved parameter name uri_data is converted to a URI and used as the data for the intent. The intent data determines which application to launch when using implicit intents such as SENDTO. For example:

```java
ex:android.intent.action.SENDTO(uri_data='smsto:5555555', sms_body=${message})
```
Chapter 18. Launching External Apps

Launches a new message in an SMS app with the destination number set to 5555555 and the message body set to the contents of the message field.

ex:android.intent.action.SENDTO(uri_data='mailto:example@example.com?subject=${subject}&body=${message})
Launches a new message in an email app with destination address set to example@example.com, the subject set to the contents of the subject field and the body set to the contents of the message field.

ex:android.intent.action.DIAL(uri_data='tel:5555555') Launches a phone dialer with the number 5555555 as the number to dial.

Notice that the URI must include a scheme, such as mailto: or https://.
19.1 ODK Build

ODK Build is a form designer with a drag-and-drop user interface. Build is an HTML5 web application and works best for designing simple forms.

Tip: For a more powerful form designer from ODK, try XLSForm.

19.1.1 Using ODK Build

Go to http://build.getodk.org and sign in.
Note: There is a downloadable version of ODK Build available.

Tip: Clicking on About ODK Build... option in the Help menu provides basic information about ODK Build.
19.1. ODK Build

**Creating and Saving forms**

Options to create, open and save forms are available in the *File* menu.
• Click on *New Form* to start creating a new form.

**Tip:** When you start building a form on ODK Build, it is named as *Untitled Form*. To rename it click on *rename* next to the form name and give a name to your form.

• Click on *Open Form…* to open a saved form and edit it. Select the form and click on *Open* option in the open form window. You can also delete a saved form by clicking on *X* beside the form name.

• To save a form click on *Save*. If you want to save an edited version of a previously saved form as a new form, click on *Save Form as…* and provide a name to the form.

• To save your form on your local machine, click on *Save Form to File…*. You can open a form saved into your local machine by clicking on *Load Form from File…*.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
19.1. ODK Build

**Note:** Forms which are saved to your local machine have extension `.odkbuild` and only these forms can be loaded into ODK Build.

**Form building**

- Add a new prompt, by dragging the elements from the bottom of the screen onto the blank canvas.
- You can remove a prompt by clicking on X sign on the prompt.
- For each prompt, modify its properties on the right portion of the screen.
- Prompts can also be rearranged through drag and drop.
- You can collapse the question prompts by checking the *Collapse Questions* option in the *View* menu.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
• Information about prompts is displayed in the properties section.

• Unchecking the *Show Information* option in the *Help* menu will hide the information which is displayed in properties section.
Upload forms to Aggregate

You can upload a form to Aggregate server by clicking on *Upload Form to Aggregate...* in the *File* menu. In the window which opens up, enter the url for your Aggregate server. In the username and password box, you need to enter your Aggregate account credentials with Form Manager or greater capabilities. The account type in Aggregate has to be ODK, not Google. You may leave these blank if your Aggregate instance allows anonymous form uploading.
Export forms

- To view XML for your form, click on Export to XML… in the File menu. You can
download the .xml file for your form by clicking on Download option in the output
XML window.

- You can download .xlsx file for your form by clicking on Export to XLSForm in the
File menu.

Changing form properties

You can change the form properties by clicking Form Properties… in the Edit menu.
A form properties window will appear, where you can enter the instance name, public key and submission url for your form.
Chapter 19. Form Building Tools

Instance name specifies names you want to give to submitted data. You can see more info on public key here. Submission url directs your submissions somewhere other than the Aggregate that supplied the form. This is the ODK Aggregate website url with Aggregate.html replaced by submission.

Tip: You can give an instance name which uses calculated expressions to name submissions based on submission data. Note that whatever you put in the instance name box should evaluate to a string.

For example, you might use a concatenation of a unique student ID (sid) with the student name (s_name) as the name of the filled-in form. So you can provide a instance name as: `concat(${sid},' - ', ${s_name})`.

This is implemented in XML as an instanceName field within the meta block. If this value is present and not an empty string (""), it will be used as the name of the filled-in form. Otherwise, the current default naming, based upon the date the form was first saved, will be used.

```
<instance>
  <data id="build_example1_1508999324">
    <meta>
      <instanceID/>
      <instanceName/>
    </meta>
    <s_name/>
    <sid/>
  </data>
</instance>
```

Add, remove and display new languages

You can add a new language for your form by clicking on Manage Translations… in the Edit menu.
When you add a new language, the language box will be displayed in the properties section of the form.

You can also remove any translation by clicking on remove option in the Translation box.
You can change the display language for your form by checking the language you want to use as display language in the View menu.

19.2 ODK Validate

ODK Validate is a tool that ensures an XForms XML file conforms to the XForms specification.

Validate should be used to check hand-edited XForms. It is not needed when creating forms with XLSForm or ODK Build, unless you edit those forms manually after creating them.

19.2.1 Setting up Validate
19.2. ODK Validate

Note: The Validate file available for download is an executable Java application. Once downloaded, it can be run directly and does not need to be installed.

Before you begin...

Make sure Java 8 is installed on your system.

1. Download Validate.
2. If you wish, move Validate to your Applications directory or another suitable location.

19.2.2 Using Validate

1. Open Validate.
2. Find your XForms *.xml file using Choose file, and Open it.
3. Review and fix any warning messages.
4. If needed, Validate Again.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Command line

Validating a single form:

```
$ java -jar {path/to/validate-jar-file} {path/to/xform.xml}
```

Validating multiple forms:

```
$ java -jar {path/to/validate-jar-file} [--fail-fast] {path/to/xform1.xml} {path/to/xform2.xml} {path/to/xform3.xml}
```

The optional `--fail-fast` flag tells Validate to exit on the first error rather than validating all forms and reporting an error at the end.

**Warning:** This tool validates XML files against the XForms specification. It does not check every detail needed to ensure smooth operation in the ODK ecosystem. For example, Aggregate requires that forms have a unique form ID, which this tool does not check.
20.1 Repeat Recipes and Tips

See also:

*Repeating questions* describes repeat basics.

- Referencing repeated questions from inside the repeat
- Referencing repeated questions from outside the repeat
- Counting repeats and answers
  - Counting the total number of repeat instances
  - Counting the number of times a particular answer was given
- Using additional repeats to follow up on repeated questions
- Setting a max limit on repetitions
  - Using a constraint to limit repetitions
  - Using relevants to limit repetitions

20.1.1 Referencing repeated questions from inside the repeat

Within a repeat, you can reference other questions in that same repeat instance in the usual manner.
XLSForm

Table 20.1: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>child_questions_note</td>
<td>Please provide the following details about each child in your household.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>child_details</td>
<td>Children in household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>child_first_name</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>child_age</td>
<td>Age of ${child_first_name}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To reference a question from a different repeat instance, or from outside the repeat, use `indexed-repeat()` and `position()`.

### 20.1.2 Referencing repeated questions from outside the repeat

A question in a repeat can be referenced from outside the repeat with `indexed-repeat(${question-name}, ${repeat-name}, index)`.

### 20.1.3 Counting repeats and answers

#### Counting the total number of repeat instances

Use `count(${name-of-repeat})` to get the number of repeat instances.

#### Counting the number of times a particular answer was given

To count the number of times a specific response is given, add a calculate field inside the repeat which evaluates to 1 or 0 depending on the answer. Then, outside the repeat, calculate the `sum()` of the calculate field.
20.1. Repeat Recipes and Tips

XLSForm

Table 20.2: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>guest_details</td>
<td>Guest details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_name</td>
<td>Guest name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>Meal preference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>chkn</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'chicken', 1, 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>fsh</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'fish', 1, 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>veg</td>
<td></td>
<td>if(${meal_preference} = 'vegetarian', 1, 0 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>chkn_count</td>
<td></td>
<td>sum(${chkn})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>fsh_count</td>
<td></td>
<td>sum(${fsh})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>veg_count</td>
<td></td>
<td>sum(${veg})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.3: choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>Chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>Fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal_options</td>
<td>vegetarian</td>
<td>Vegetarian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.1.4 Using additional repeats to follow up on repeated questions

Sometimes it is convenient to gather an initial set of responses, and then ask more detailed question after you have collected the whole set.

For example:

- collecting the names of all the people in a household, and then asking questions about each person
- collecting the names of each type of crop being grown, and then asking questions about each crop

This can be done by using `count()` and `position(..)`. `count()` is used to guarantee that the second repeat has the same number of instances as the original repeat. `position(..)` provides the index of the repeat instance it was called from. This is used to refer to questions from the first repeat in the follow-up repeat.
20.1.5 Setting a max limit on repetitions

If you want the user to decide how many times to repeat, but you also want to limit the maximum number of repetitions, you have a few options.

Using a constraint to limit repetitions

If the user knows how many repetitions they will complete, you can ask them this in a question before the repeat group and set a constraint on that question.
20.1. Repeat Recipes and Tips

XLSForm

Table 20.4: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>number_in_party</td>
<td>How many guests are in your party?</td>
<td>. &lt;= 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>party_names_note</td>
<td>Please provide details for each guest.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>guest_details</td>
<td>Guest details</td>
<td></td>
<td>${number_in_party}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_name</td>
<td>Guest’s name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_dietary</td>
<td>Does this guest have any dietary restrictions?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** If the count is decreased by a user, no groups will be deleted. This avoids accidental data loss: a user who accidentally sets the count too low can set it to a higher number and still have the repetitions that were previously created.

A recommended way to handle this case is using relevance to hide any extra values:

Table 20.5: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>repeat_count</th>
<th>relevant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>number_in_party</td>
<td>How many guests are in your party?</td>
<td>. &lt;= 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>party_names_note</td>
<td>Please provide details for each guest.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_repeat</td>
<td>guest_details</td>
<td>Guest details</td>
<td></td>
<td>${number_in_party}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin_group</td>
<td>guest_details_gr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>position(..) &lt;= ${number_in_party}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_name</td>
<td>Guest’s name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>guest_dietary</td>
<td>Does this guest have any dietary restrictions?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_group</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end_repeat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
Using relevants to limit repetitions

If asking the user ahead of time doesn’t make sense, another strategy is to manually repeat the question in the form and use the relevant column to skip repetitions if the previous question is left blank. This sets a maximum number of responses: the number of times you included the question in the form.

To check if the previous question has a response, reference the question in the relevant column.

**XLSForm**

Table 20.6: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>relevant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>images_note</td>
<td>Take up to five pictures.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_1</td>
<td>Image 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_2</td>
<td>Image 2</td>
<td>${image_1}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_3</td>
<td>Image 3</td>
<td>${image_2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_4</td>
<td>Image 4</td>
<td>${image_3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_5</td>
<td>Image 5</td>
<td>${image_4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This pattern can be combined with required responses to enforce a minimum number of responses.

**XLSForm**

Table 20.7: survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>required</th>
<th>relevant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>images_note</td>
<td>Take 3-5 pictures.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_1</td>
<td>Image 1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_2</td>
<td>Image 2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_3</td>
<td>Image 3</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_4</td>
<td>Image 4</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image</td>
<td>image_5</td>
<td>Image 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20.2 Using regular expressions

20.2.1 Regular Expressions

A regular expression is a special text string for describing a search pattern. Regular expressions find an important use in specifying constraints in your forms. You might want to set constraints on the length, character set allowed and various other fields in the data input by the user. All this can be achieved by using regular expression constraints in your form.

Some basic operations on regular expressions are:

1. **Boolean or**: A vertical bar separates alternatives. For example, `gray|grey` can match gray or grey.

2. **Grouping Parentheses**: They are used to define the scope and precedence of the operators. For example, `gray|grey` and `gr(a|e)y` are equivalent patterns which both describe the set of gray or grey.

3. **Quantification**: A quantifier after a token (such as a character) or group specifies how often that preceding element is allowed to occur.
   - Square brackets indicate the occurrence of elements within. For example, `[abc]` matches either a, b or c character, `[a-g]` matches any character from a to g, `[^abc]` matches any character except a, b or c.
   - The question mark indicates zero or one occurrence of the preceding element. For example, `colou?r` matches both color and colour.
   - The asterisk indicates zero or more occurrences of the preceding element. For example, `ab*c` matches ac, abc, abbc, abbbc, and so on.
   - The plus sign indicates one or more occurrences of the preceding element. For example, `ab+c` matches abc, abbc, abbbc, and so on, but not ac.
   - `{n}`: The preceding item is matched exactly n times.
   - `{min,}`: The preceding item is matched min or more times.
   - `{min,max}`: The preceding item is matched at least min times, but not more than max times.

For a clear understanding of regular expressions, try these regex online checker tools:

- [https://regex101.com/](https://regex101.com/)
- [https://www.regextester.com/](https://www.regextester.com/)
- [https://regexr.com/](https://regexr.com/)

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
20.2.2 Tips on using regular expressions

- Regular expressions only apply to **strings**. The function used is of the form: `regex(string value, string expression)` where it returns the result of regex test on provided value. If the result is true, the input value is valid and satisfies the constraint. If the result is false, input value is not valid and user may need to re-enter the input. The regex function will be placed in the constraints column in your XLSForm.

- Be careful while setting limits on length of a constraint. For example, if you want to restrict a text input to a maximum of six alphabetic characters, you can do so as follows:

  In XLSForm:

  `| type | name | label       | constraint                                      | constraint_message                        |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>ex</td>
<td>Enter example</td>
<td>regex(.,'^[a-zA-Z]{0,6}$')</td>
<td>Input can have a maximum of 6 alphabetic characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  In XForm XML:

  <bind constraint="regex(.,'^[a-zA-Z]{0,6}$')" jr:constraintMsg="Input can have a maximum of 6 alphabetic characters." nodeset="/regex_ex/ex" type="string"/>

  <input ref="/regex_ex/ex">
    <label>Enter example</label>
  </input>

Instead if you used a constraint of the form `regex(.,'^[a-zA-Z]{6}$')`, it would require an input of exactly six alphabetic characters.

**Note:**

- . denotes the input string.
- ^ and $ denote start and end of string respectively.

- If you want to use a regular expression constraint on a number, make sure that the type of your question is **text** and appearance is **numbers** and then apply the constraint.

The following example will validate a 10-digit North American telephone number. Separators are not required, but can include spaces, hyphens, or periods. Parentheses around the area code are also optional.

  In XLSForm:
20.2. Using regular expressions

Table 20.9: Survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
<th>appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>tel_no</td>
<td>your Telephone number</td>
<td>regex(.,'^(([0-9]{1})[<em>-[.][0-9]{3}]</em>[0-9{3}]*[0-9{4}]+$')</td>
<td>Telephone numbers should have 10 digits with optional separators.</td>
<td>numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In XForm XML:

```xml
<bind constraint="Regex(.,'^((0-9){1})*[- .]*(0-9\{3\})*[- .]*[0-9\{3\}]\[0-9\{4\}]+$')" jr:constraintMsg="Telephone numbers should have 10 digits with optional separators." nodeset="/regex_ex/tel_no" type="string" />
<input appearance="numbers" ref="/regex_ex/tel_no">
  <label>Enter your Telephone number</label>
</input>
```

Another alternative to this would be to use a regular expression of the form:

```regex\r\nregex\r\n```

But this should be avoided since the value of `string(.)` would be after whatever you entered was converted to an integer. So if you entered 0004, `string(.)` would be 4.

- Integers are limited by binary representation to 9 decimal digits. If you want something longer (like 10 numbers) then make sure to use a text type with appearance as numbers and add a constraint restricting the input string to be a number. Constraint is required since appearance setting changes the keyboard style of the pop-up keyboard to the number keyboard when you attempt to enter data into the field but does not prevent non-numbers from being entered. This relies upon the device’s keyboard supporting (See this).

For example, a constraint of the form `regex\r\nregex\r\n``` will restrict the input string to be a number of exactly 11 digits.

- Avoid using complex regex patterns as that may cause stack overflow crashes. Also, avoid placing constraints on names since your regex will certainly not capture all the punctuation or random characters that names can contain and they are hard error-prone and hard to maintain.

See also:

You can refer this list for various common regex patterns.
ODK Briefcase is a desktop application that runs on macOS, Windows, and Linux. It is used for pulling, pushing, and exporting forms on ODK servers such as ODK Central and ODK Aggregate. You can also use Briefcase to pull forms directly from ODK Collect.

With Briefcase you can:

- Pull forms from Collect, Central, Aggregate.
- Push forms to a Central or Aggregate server.
- Export data from forms to CSV files.
- Decrypt encrypted forms.
- Back up forms from servers.
- Transfer forms between servers.
- Work from a command line.
- Work offline.
Chapter 21. ODK Briefcase

21.1 Learn more about Briefcase

- Setting Up ODK Briefcase
- Using ODK Briefcase
SETTING UP ODK BRIEFCASE

Before you begin...

We verify Briefcase with Java 11. We recommend installing OpenJDK 11 LTS from AdoptOpenJDK.

1. Download the ODK Briefcase JAR file from GitHub.
   
   Some browsers may warn that JAR files might harm your computer. Do not worry, Briefcase when downloaded from our GitHub page is safe.

2. Double-click the downloaded JAR file or, from the command line, run `java -jar {path/to/ODK-Briefcase-vX.Y.Z.jar}`

   macOS will warn that Briefcase is from an unidentified developer. This is normal and expected. Follow these instructions from Apple to open the file.

3. Follow the instructions to start using Briefcase
Chapter 22. Setting Up ODK Briefcase

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

ODK Aggregate is an open source Java application that stores, analyzes, and presents XForm survey data collected using ODK Collect or other OpenRosa-compliant applications. It supports a wide range of data types, and is designed to work well in any hosting environment.

With Aggregate, data collection teams can:

- Host blank XForms used by ODK Collect or other OpenRosa clients
- Store and manage XForm submission data
- Visualize collected data using maps and simple graphs
- Export and publish data in a variety of formats

Aggregate can be hosted on cloud providers such as DigitalOcean, and Amazon Web Services, or your own local or cloud server. There’s also a pre-configured virtual machine image that is ready to deploy on any computer.
Chapter 23. ODK Aggregate

23.1 Learn more about ODK Aggregate

- Setting Up ODK Aggregate
- Using ODK Aggregate
- Getting Started With ODK

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR

SETTING UP ODK AGGREGATE

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

24.1 Planning Your Aggregate Deployment

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

ODK Aggregate can be deployed to any local or cloud server that runs Tomcat, Java8, and PostgreSQL (MySQL is supported too).

You can also use these guides for some specific cloud providers:

- DigitalOcean
- Amazon Web Services

There is also a fully set-up virtual machine that can be run in nearly any environment.

If you have highly-technical user, you can also try using:

- A Docker image
- A Docker Compose setup

Previous versions of Aggregate (v1.x) can be deployed in Google App Engine, but we strongly recommend deploying Aggregate v2.x using any of the guides above.

You can also go without Aggregate altogether and use ODK Briefcase.

This document provides general advice for thinking through your deployment decisions.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 24. Setting Up ODK Aggregate

24.1.1 Internet access

DigitalOcean and Amazon Web Services both require internet access. If you don’t have consistent internet access, *ODK Briefcase* may be more appropriate.

Tomcat deployments can operate without internet access. In such an environment, Collect would only be able to upload finalized forms after it connects to the network containing the Tomcat deployment.

24.1.2 Computer skills

Custom Tomcat deployments in local or cloud servers, including the one described in the *Amazon Web Services* guide, have a steep learning curve and require technical aptitude. At a minimum you will be:

- changing network configuration
- selecting and using a website hosting service or specifying and configuring your own server and network router(s)
- installing software
- ensuring that your site has proper power-failure and data-backup systems in place

If this level of systems administration skill is not available, you will have more success using the *DigitalOcean* guide, which leverages a Cloud-Config stack that will do most of the heavy lifting for you.

24.1.3 Component versions

ODK Aggregate should work with these minimum component versions. In most cases, newer versions should also work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Java</td>
<td>v1.4.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomcat</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL (not MariaDB)</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.1.4 Ongoing support

- You should consider doing periodic backups of your data.
- If data security is a concern, you should have a system administrator or database administrator periodically review logs and look for malicious activity.
24.1. Planning Your Aggregate Deployment

24.1.5 Infrastructure architecture

In these docs we explain how to deploy a monolithic server with everything Aggregate needs to run (Tomcat, PostgreSQL, SSL support), but there is a multitude of scenarios that you might want to consider:

- You could deploy Aggregate on one machine and the database in a separate machine, or even use a cloud database.
- You could have high-availability or an horizontal scalability option by using a load balancer.
- You could provide SSL security with a load balancer or proxy.

If you are considering alternative architectures for your specific needs, we recommend you ask for help in the support forum.

24.1.6 Dataset size

You have to take into account the size of the data set you need to store, which grows not only with the number of submissions but also with the structure of the forms. Forms with more media attachments will produce larger data sets.

When sizing your infrastructure, take into account:

- Greater storage capacity usually comes associated with higher costs.
- Storage is usually hard to scale. Try to start with enough capacity for your data set and add a little bit extra.
- The computing power doesn’t necessarily have to scale with the data set size.

Note: For historical reasons, individual text database fields are capped at a length of 255 by default. If you intend to collect text data longer than 255 characters (including using types geotrace, geoshape or select multiple), your forms should specify database field lengths greater than 255.

24.1.7 Data locality

Cloud providers have servers located all over the world. Most of these providers will let you choose where your server should be located.

Depending on the sensitivity of the data and specific storage rule, regulations, or restrictions of your country or organization, the server infrastructure may not have all necessary locality guarantees or security precautions.
24.1.8 Secure and protected data

If you need to prevent eavesdroppers from seeing your data as it is transmitted to your ODK Aggregate instance, you need to do one of the following:

- only connect to ODK Aggregate from within your organization’s network (when the submitting devices are on your premises)
- obtain an SSL certificate and install it on your server (a certificate is required to secure transmissions over https)
- use Encrypted Forms

Encrypted forms can be used in conjunction with either of the first two suggestions.

If you are not using encrypted forms and are handling sensitive data, a computer security specialist should review your system and your security procedures.

**Note:** Use of an SSL and https is recommended for any deployment accessed from the internet.

24.1.9 Availability

Decide the availability of your server depending on how frequently you want to update and upload forms. If you do need a high-availability server, you need to talk to your Internet Service Provider (ISP) as to their availability guarantees.

24.1.10 Data loss

Your tolerance to data loss will impact your backup schedule and your server hardware. Invest in a system based on your tolerance to data loss. Seek technical assistance for these requirements.

24.2 Installing Aggregate

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

24.2.1 Installing on Tomcat

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

Apache Tomcat is an open source Java web server that can be used to serve ODK Aggregate. This document guides you through the installation and initial setup of a self-hosted instance of ODK Aggregate, running on Tomcat with a PostgreSQL, or MySQL database server. "Self-hosted" could mean on your own hardware or on a cloud-based server.

If you’re planning on hosting your server on a cloud provider, you can use these provider-specific guides:

- *DigitalOcean (recommended)*
- *Amazon Web Services*
- *Google Cloud*
- *Microsoft Azure*

**Note:**

- Local hosting implies that you are taking ownership of the off-site back up and restoration of your data and are documenting the steps necessary to return your systems to operation in circumstances that might include a full hardware failure or the destruction of your facility. You must also plan for the security of your data and systems.

- Local hosting requires that you configure your network routers. It is recommended to seek assistance from your local computer technical support community before proceeding. The set-up of the ODK Aggregate web server and database are very easy in comparison.

**Considerations before you begin**

Please, read the *Aggregate deployment planning* guide before continuing.

**Database systems**

ODK Aggregate works with any of these database servers:

- *PostgreSQL*
  PostgreSQL is the recommended database server for Aggregate.
MySQL

Although MySQL is supported, it’s not actively being tested during the release cycle. MySQL tables have a row size limit that will affect performance for very large forms.

Installation procedure

1. Install Java 8.0.221 or higher. We recommend using OpenJDK 11 LTS from AdoptOpenJDK:

   Windows
   macOS
   Ubuntu
   Download OpenJDK 11 LTS and run it as administrator.
   Download OpenJDK 11 LTS and install it.
   
   ```
   sudo apt-get install openjdk-11-jre
   ```

2. Ensure that the installed Java bin directory is in the PATH environment variable.

3. Install Apache Tomcat 8.5:

   Windows
   macOS
   Ubuntu
   Download the Windows Service installer, and run it as administrator.
   If you have Homebrew, run:
   
   ```
   brew install tomcat@8.5
   ```
   
   ```
   sudo apt-get install tomcat8 tomcat8-common tomcat8-user tomcat8-admin
   ```

4. Configure your server and network devices so that laptops or Android devices connecting to the internet from an external access point can access your server.

   If your organization has a network or systems administrator, contact them for assistance. The steps for this are:
   
   - configure your server firewall to allow access
   - make your server visible on the internet (optional)
   - establish a DNS name for the server

5. Obtain and Install an SSL certificate if you need secure https access.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

6. Install PostgreSQL:
   - Windows
   - macOS
   - Ubuntu

Download the PostgreSQL 10.6 Windows installer, and run it as administrator.

Download the PostgreSQL 10.5 Postgres.app DMG installer, and open it.

```bash
sudo apt-get install postgresql-10
```

7. Install ODK Aggregate. Select the latest release for your operating system.

The installer will guide you through configuring ODK Aggregate for your setup. The installer will produce a WAR file (web archive) containing the configured ODK Aggregate code, a `create_db_and_user.sql` script for creating the database and user that ODK Aggregate will use to access this database, and a `Readme.html` file with instructions on how to complete the installation.

---

**Tip:**

- When asked for the fully qualified hostname of the ODK Aggregate server, you should enter the DNS name you established above.

- The install also asks for a database name, user and password. The user should not be postgres (PostgreSQL), or root (MySQL).

- ODK Aggregate will use this user when accessing this database (and it will only access this database).

- By specifying different databases and users, you can set up multiple ODK Aggregate servers that share the same database server, store their data in different databases, and operate without interfering with each other.

- If you are upgrading to a newer version of ODK Aggregate, as long as you specify the same database name, user and password, you do not need to re-run the `create_db_and_user.sql` script.

---

24.2.2 Installing on DigitalOcean (recommended)

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.
Warning: To use this setup, you must be able to link a domain name to the machine’s IP address. If you don’t own a domain, services such as FreeDNS offer free sub-domains under a range of domains.

Tip: If you have not already created a DigitalOcean account, use our referral link to do so: https://m.do.co/c/39937689124c.

DigitalOcean will give you $100 of credit to spend during the first 60 days so that you can try things out. Once you have spent $25 with them, we’ll get $25 to put towards our hosting costs.

Create your Droplet

1. Log into DigitalOcean and create a new Droplet.
2. Select the distribution for your new Droplet: Select the option 18.04.x x64 from the Ubuntu box.
3. Select a size fit for your intended usage. The $5 Standard Droplet should be enough for light Aggregate use. If you find yourself needing more, DigitalOcean makes it easy to resize to a bigger Droplet.
4. If you would like automatic weekly backups, enable them.
5. You will not need block storage.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

6. Select a datacenter region physically close to where data collection is going to happen.

7. Under *Select additional options*, check the *User data* checkbox. Copy and paste the contents of this Cloud-Config script.

8. In the *Choose a hostname section*, enter the domain name (e.g., your.domain). This hostname will be used by the Cloud-Config script to configure your server’s HTTPS support.

9. You will not need to add public SSH keys (unless you know what that is and you want to).

10. Click on the *Create* button. The Droplet takes a few seconds, the actual Aggregate installation will take up to 10 minutes to complete.

**Set up your domain**

**Tip:** DigitalOcean Droplets use IP addresses which can change if you destroy the machine. To ensure your Aggregate install will always be reachable using the same IP address, use a Floating IP by following these instructions.

1. Once the Droplet is running, take note of its public IP address (e.g., 12.34.56.78) and set a *DNS A record* pointing to it.
If you own a domain, check your domain registrar's instructions. If you don’t own a domain, we recommend using FreeDNS to get a free sub-domain.

Your domain’s TTL setting will affect to how much time you will have to wait until you can proceed to the next step. If your provider gives you the option of setting a TTL, use the lowest value you can.

2. Open a web browser, and periodically check the domain until you see the Aggregate website. You won’t be able to continue the install until you see the website load.

Enable HTTPS

1. From the DigitalOcean Control Panel, click the name of your droplet, then select Access from the left navigation. Click the Launch Console button to open a web-based console session.

2. When the console opens, click the console screen, and at the login prompt, enter the user: root. Your password will be the root password that DigitalOcean emailed you.

   If you do not have the root password, click the name of your droplet, select Access from the left navigation and choose Reset the root password so that a password gets emailed to you.

   You may also login over SSH using the ssh root@your.domain.

3. Once you are logged in, run sudo certbot run --nginx --non-interactive --agree-tos -m YOUR_EMAIL --redirect -d YOUR_DOMAIN.

   Be sure to replace YOUR_EMAIL and YOUR_DOMAIN with your email address and your domain.

   Lets Encrypt uses the email you provide to send notifications about expiration of certificates.

Log into Aggregate

1. Go to https://your.domain and check that Aggregate is running.

2. Click Sign in with Aggregate password to login with the default username and password.

   username: administrator
   password: aggregate

3. Change the administrator account’s password!
24.2. Installing Aggregate

24.2.3 Installing on Amazon Web Services

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

**Warning:** To use this setup, you must able to link a domain name to the machine’s IP address. If you don’t own a domain, services such as FreeDNS offer free sub-domains under a range of domains.

**Tip:** Make sure you have selected the availability zone where you want to perform your actions. You can choose the availability zone using the dropdown menu at the top-right corner of the AWS console website. Choose a region that’s close to the location where data is going to be collected.

Create a VPC

1. Go to the VPC Dashboard.
2. Click on *Launch VPC Wizard*.
3. Follow the wizard for the *VPC with a Single Public Subnet* configuration.
4. Enter `aggregate-vpc` (or your desired name) in the *VPC Name* field.
5. Click on *Create VPC*.

Create a security group

1. Go to the *VPC - Security Groups* tab.
2. Click on *Create security group*.
3. Follow the wizard for the *VPC with a Single Public Subnet* configuration.
4. Enter `aggregate-sg` (or your desired name) as the name and description.
5. Select the VPC you previously created.
6. Click on *Create*.
7. Click on the newly created security group from the list, click on the *Inbound rules* tab, the *Edit rules*.
8. Add the following rules to allow SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS traffic.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SSH</td>
<td>Anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP</td>
<td>Anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTPS</td>
<td>Anywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Click on *Save rules*.

### Create an IAM role

The EC2 machine needs an IAM role to query its tags.

1. Go to the IAM - Roles tab.
2. Click on *Create role*.
3. Select the *AWS service* box, and click on the *EC2* link.
4. Click on *Next: Permissions*.
5. Search for *AmazonEC2ReadOnlyAccess*, and select it.
6. Click on *Next: Tags* and do nothing.
7. Click on *Next: Review*.
8. Enter *aggregate-role* (or your desired name) as the name.
9. Click on *Create role*.

### Create an EC2 machine

1. Go to the EC2 Dashboard.
2. Click on *Launch instance*.
3. Search for the *Ubuntu Server 18.04 LTS AMI*.
4. Select the *64-bit (x86)* option and click on *Select*.
5. Select the instance type you want to use.
   
   A minimum setup is a *t2.small* instance type (1 vCPU, 2GiB RAM), but you should review your requirements and choose a bigger instance type according to your needs.
6. Click on *Next: Configure Instance Details*.
7. Select the VPC you previously created in the *Network* dropdown.
8. Select *Enable* in the *Auto-assign Public IP* dropdown.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

9. Select the IAM role you previously created in the IAM role dropdown.

10. Toggle the Advanced Details section and copy and paste the contents of this Cloud-Config script.

11. Click on Next: Add Storage and edit the storage settings.

   A minimum setup is 30 GiB of storage, but you should review your requirements and adjust the value of the Size (GiB) field according to your needs.

12. Click on Next: Add Tags.

13. Add a aggregate.hostname key with the domain name as the value (e.g., your.domain). This hostname will be used by the Cloud-Config script to configure your machine’s HTTPS support.


15. Select an existing security group and select the security group you previously created.

16. Click on Review and Launch and after review, click on Launch.

17. You will be offered the option of using an existing key pair or creating one. It’s very important that you follow the dialog’s instructions carefully to be able to access your machine once it’s created.

18. When you’re ready, click on Launch instances.

**Set up your domain**

**Tip:** EC2 machines use IP addresses which can change if you stop and start (but not reboot) the machine. To ensure your Aggregate install will always be reachable using the same IP address, use an Elastic IP by following these instructions.

1. Go to the EC2 - Instances tab and find your machine.

2. Take note of the IPv4 Public IP address (e.g., 12.34.56.78) and set a DNS A record pointing to it.

   After clicking on the instance from the list, look for under the Description tab at the bottom of the window. The IPv4 Public IP field is in the right column.

   If you own a domain, check your domain registrar’s instructions. If you don’t own a domain, we recommend using FreeDNS to get a free sub-domain.

   Your domain’s TTL setting will affect to how much time you will have to wait until you can proceed to the next step. If your provider gives you the option of setting a TTL, use the lowest value you can.
3. Open a web browser, and periodically check the domain until you see the Aggregate website. You won’t be able to continue the install until you see the website load.

**Enable HTTPS**

1. Connect to your machine via SSH using `ssh -i /path/to/the/key.pem ubuntu@your.domain`.
   
   Make sure your PEM key pair file has the correct file permissions.

2. Once you are logged in, run `sudo certbot run --nginx --non-interactive --agree-tos -m YOUR_EMAIL --redirect -d YOUR_DOMAIN`.
   
   Be sure to replace YOUR_EMAIL and YOUR_DOMAIN with your email address and your domain.

   Lets Encrypt uses the email you provide to send notifications about expiration of certificates.

**Log into Aggregate**

1. Go to `https://your.domain` and check that Aggregate is running.

2. Click **Sign in with Aggregate password** to login with the default username and password.
   
   username: administrator
   
   password: aggregate

3. Change the administrator account’s password!

### 24.2.4 Installing on Google Cloud

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

**Warning:** To use this setup, you must able to link a domain name to the machine’s IP address. If you don’t own a domain, services such as FreeDNS offer free sub-domains under a range of domains.

**Tip:** If you are new to Google Cloud, you will need to create a Google Cloud Platform project and make sure billing is enabled.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

Create an instance

1. Go to the GCP Dashboard.
2. Click on Create.
3. In the Name text box, enter aggregate (or your desired name).
4. Select the desired region and zone.
   Choose a region that’s close to the location where data is going to be collected.
5. Select the instance type you want to use.
   A minimum setup is a small instance type (1 vCPU, 1.7 GB of memory), but you should review your requirements and choose a bigger instance type according to your needs.
6. Click on Change under the Boot disk section.
7. Select Ubuntu 18.04 LTS.
8. Set the desired storage size for your VM, and click Select.
   A minimum setup is 30 GB of storage, but you should review your requirements and adjust the value of the Size (GiB) field according to your needs.
9. Under the Firewall section, check Allow HTTP traffic, and Allow HTTPS traffic.
10. Expand the Management, security, disks, networking, sole tenancy section.
11. In the Management tab, under Automation, copy the contents of this startup script into the Startup script text box.
12. In the Networking tab, set the Hostname with the domain name (e.g., your.domain) you want to use for Aggregate. This hostname will be used by the startup script to configure your instance’s HTTPS support.
13. Click on Create.

Set up your domain

**Tip:** GCP instances use IP addresses which can change if you delete the instance. To ensure your Aggregate install will always be reachable using the same IP address, use a static IP address by following these instructions.

1. Go to the GCP - VM Instances page and find your instance.
2. Take note of the IP address (e.g., 12.34.56.78) in the External IP column and set a DNS A record pointing to it.

   If you own a domain, check your domain registrar’s instructions. If you don’t own a domain, we recommend using FreeDNS to get a free sub-domain.

   Your domain’s TTL setting will affect how much time you will have to wait until you can proceed to the next step. If your provider gives you the option of setting a TTL, use the lowest value you can.

3. Open a web browser, and periodically check the domain until you see the Aggregate website. You won’t be able to continue the install until you see the website load.

Enable HTTPS

1. In GCP - VM Instances page, SSH into your VM clicking the SSH button in the External IP column.

2. Once you are logged in, run `sudo certbot run --nginx --non-interactive --agree-tos -m YOUR_EMAIL --redirect -d YOUR_DOMAIN`.

   Be sure to replace YOUR_EMAIL and YOUR_DOMAIN with your email address and your domain.

   Lets Encrypt uses the email you provide to send notifications about expiration of certificates.

Log into Aggregate

1. Go to https://your.domain and check that Aggregate is running.

2. Click Sign in with Aggregate password to login with the default username and password.

   username: administrator
   password: aggregate

3. Change the administrator account’s password!

24.2.5 Installing on Microsoft Azure

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

Warning: To use this setup, you must able to link a domain name to the virtual machine’s IP address. If you don’t own a domain, services such as FreeDNS offer free sub-domains under a range of domains.

Create a VPC

1. Go to the Virtual machines dashboard.
2. Click on Add.
3. Ensure you have a Subscription and a Resource group. If no resource group exists, create one called Aggregate (or your desired name).
4. In the Virtual machine name text box, enter Aggregate (or your desired name).
5. Select the desired region.
   Choose a region that’s close to the location where data is going to be collected.
6. In Image, select Ubuntu 18.04 LTS.
7. Select Size of VM you want to use.
   A minimum setup is a B1ms type (1 vcpu, 2 GB of memory), but you should review your requirements and choose a bigger VM according to your needs.
8. Set a Authentication type to Password and enter a secure Username and Password.
   Alternatively, use a SSH public key if you know what that is and how to use it.
9. Under Public inbound ports, select Allow selected ports.
10. In Select inbound ports, select HTTP, HTTPS, and SSH.
11. Click Next : Disks >.
12. Click Create and attach a new disk.
13. Select Disk type and Size of disk you want to use.
   A minimum setup is a Standard SSD disk type and 30 GiB size, but you should review your requirements and adjust appropriately.
14. Click on the Advanced. It’s in the tabs at the top of the screen.
15. In the Cloud init text box, paste the contents of this Cloud-Config script.
16. Click Next : Tags >.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
18. Add Name of aggregate.hostname and a Value of your domain (e.g., your.domain). This hostname will be used by the Cloud-Config script to configure your VM’s HTTPS support.

19. Expand the Next: Review + create, then Create.

Set up your domain

**Tip:** Azure VPCs use IP addresses which can change if you destroy the VPC. To ensure your Aggregate install will always be reachable using the same IP address, use a static IP by following these instructions.

1. In Virtual machines dashboard, find your VM from the list. Click on it and find the value of the Public IP address field in the overview section.

2. Take note of the IP address (e.g., 12.34.56.78) and set a DNS A record pointing to it.

   If you own a domain, check your domain registrar’s instructions. If you don’t own a domain, we recommend using FreeDNS to get a free sub-domain.

   Your domain’s TTL setting will affect to how much time you will have to wait until you can proceed to the next step. If your provider gives you the option of setting a TTL, use the lowest value you can.

3. Open a web browser, and periodically check the domain until you see the Aggregate website. You won’t be able to continue the install until you see the website load.

Enable HTTPS

**Warning:** Azure VMs seem to be slower to install software than other cloud providers. If you are having trouble running the commands in this step, wait 15 minutes and try again.

1. Connect to your VM via SSH.

2. Once you are logged in, run `sudo certbot run --nginx --non-interactive --agree-tos -m YOUR_EMAIL --redirect -d YOUR_DOMAIN`.

   Be sure to replace YOUR_EMAIL and YOUR_DOMAIN with your email address and your domain.

   Lets Encrypt uses the email you provide to send notifications about expiration of certificates.
24.2. Installing Aggregate

Log into Aggregate

1. Go to https://your.domain and check that Aggregate is running.
2. Click Sign in with Aggregate password to login with the default username and password.
   
   username: administrator
   password: aggregate
3. Change the administrator account’s password!

24.2.6 Installing the Virtual Machine

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

This document provides instructions for installing ODK Aggregate using the Virtual Machine (VM) and VirtualBox.

Setting up the VM

1. Download and install VirtualBox.
2. Download the latest Aggregate VM from the GitHub releases page and unzip the file.
3. Double-click the OVA file inside the zip to let VirtualBox import the VM. Accept the default settings.
4. After the import completes, start the VM. Select it with your mouse and click on the Start button on the VirtualBox top toolbar. A new black and white window will open.
5. After the VM starts, wait for Welcome to ODK Aggregate VM message to appear.
6. Do not log into the screen of the VM. Instead, on your computer, open a web browser.
7. Go to the web address shown in the VM screen. (Usually http://localhost:10080.) If everything worked, you will see the Aggregate login screen.
8. Sign in with Aggregate password

   username: administrator
   password: aggregate

9. Aggregate will remind you to change your administrator user’s password. Please choose a secure password!
Tip: Once VirtualBox has imported the VM, the zip file and the OVA file can be deleted.

Note:

- Read the Running your virtual machine manual page to learn more about working with VirtualBox and your Aggregate VM.

- Windows: if you get an VirtualBox error message with "File is busy" or "File access error" after launching the VM, it is likely due to improper unzipping or write permissions. Try right-clicking the zip file, then select ”Extract All” and save the files to a folder on the Desktop.

- Linux: if you get a VirtualBox error message about ”PAE: Unable to boot”, make sure VirtualBox has PAE/NX enabled. That setting is usually under System/Processor.

Securing the VM

The Aggregate VM is configured with a default root user password which is not secure. Before using the VM with important data, we recommend you log in and change the default password.

1. Start the VM. When the VM has finished booting up, you will be prompted to log into the VM.

2. Click on the screen to capture your mouse and keyboard.

3. Log into the command line interface with the following credentials:
   
   username: root
   password: aggregate

4. You will be forced to change the default password the first time you login. Please choose a secure password!

5. Once you have logged in, you can exit the command line interface with the exit command.

Note: Make sure you understand how VirtualBox captures your mouse and keyboard and how to release them.
Connecting to the VM from external apps

The VM defaults to a NAT network adapter, so you will only be able to connect to it from your computer. This is the default behavior because it is the safest configuration.

If you’d like to connect to the VM from an external device (for example, *ODK Collect* on your phone or *ODK Briefcase* on another computer), you must set a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or globally accessible address.

**Tip:** Aggregate’s form download (but not form listing) relies on the FQDN. If you want to use Collect and Briefcase to interact with Aggregate, you must set the FQDN.

To set the FQDN, do the following:

1. **Secure the VM.**
2. Change the VM’s network adapter settings in VirtualBox from NAT to Bridged and reset/reboot the VM.
3. After the reset/reboot, the VM will behave like any other machine on your network and get an IP address from your router. The IP address will be shown to you after the `Welcome to ODK Aggregate VM` message.
4. Log into the command line interface of the VM and run the `aggregate-config` script to set a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) using the IP address that was shown to you (e.g., `192.168.5.2`).

```
aggregate-config --fqdn 192.168.5.2 --http-port 8080 --https-port 8443
```

5. After the configuration, use your host computer or any other computer on your network to log into Aggregate at the FQDN and port (e.g., `http://192.168.5.2:8080`).

**Note:** Learn more about [VirtualBox’s networking options](https://docs.getodk.org).

**See also:**

*Planning Your Aggregate Deployment*
24.3 Upgrading Aggregate

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

24.3.1 Need for Upgrading

It is important to upgrade to newer ODK Aggregate versions as they come out. You don’t need to do this immediately, but this should be something you do at least once a year.

Security vulnerabilities

The ODK developers are constantly upgrading the libraries we use with newer, safer versions. The older your software, the greater the number of vulnerabilities in it.

Performance improvements

As we find performance issues and address them, the Aggregate gets faster and cheaper to run.

Enhanced capabilities

ODK JavaRosa, the underlying form rendering library is updated about annually. Those updates add new functions, features, and occasionally data types. New features are slowly added to ODK Aggregate, too.

To use these newer features, keep your Aggregate installation up to date.

24.3.2 Determining your Aggregate version

Aggregate shows a notice about the deployed version at the bottom left corner of all the pages. The version notice will be clickable if there’s an update available.

Instructions for older versions:

If you are able to log onto the server as a Site Administrator, the ODK Aggregate version is displayed at the top of the Preferences sub-tab under the Site Admin tab.

If you are unable to log onto your server, you will need to search for the version in the application logs. To do that:

24.3. Upgrading Aggregate

2. Choose the project id for your ODK Aggregate server by clicking on the project drop-down in the top left corner.

3. Search logs in the search box and select logging.

4. In the filter text box paste this text: `afterPropertiesSet` and hit enter.

5. Expand the list of logs and find the log which shows the version of Aggregate. It will be of the following format:

```
```
24.3.3 General steps for upgrading

1. Disable all submissions to ODK Aggregate, in the Form Management tab.
2. Use ODK Briefcase to pull a copy of all data to your computer.
3. Log onto your server to confirm that it is still functioning.
4. Determine your current version number.
5. Download the next ODK Aggregate version and upgrade to that version. Find previous versions here.

Do not simply upgrade from an old version of Aggregate to the latest version. It is important to upgrade sequentially through versions, instead of trying to upgrade directly to the latest version from an older one.

Some versions will require manual changes upon upgrade. Complete notes about upgrading can be found in each version’s release notes.

6. Log onto your server to confirm that it is still functioning.
7. Repeat the steps 4-7 until you have upgraded to the current version.
8. Enable submissions to ODK Aggregate via the Form Management tab.

Tip: You need to know the exact instance name that was used in prior installations for your username and password to continue to work. If you add a space or change capitalization or spelling, the passwords will be invalid (you just need to re-run the installer with the correct string to correct the problem).

24.3.4 Upgrading DigitalOcean deployments

Please, refer to the Aggregate Cloud-Config updates guide
24.4 Backing Up Aggregate

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

24.4.1 Backup and restore forms and submissions with Briefcase

You can use ODK Briefcase to backup your forms and submissions by pulling them from Aggregate, and restore them by pushing them back to Aggregate.

Warning: Please, be aware that this procedure doesn’t backup your server’s configuration, users, exported forms, publisher configurations, and other important settings that you might still want to account for.

24.4.2 PostgreSQL backup & restore

Backup

1. Stop running Tomcat. This step, although optional, is recommended to produce full and coherent database dumps.

2. Produce a database backup file:

Windows

macOS and Linux:

```bash
pg_dump.exe [ dbname ] > [ backup file location ]
```

```bash
pg_dump [ dbname ] > [ backup destination ]
```

3. Start Tomcat if you stopped it on the first step.

You could get some errors depending on your particular PostgreSQL users and server configuration. Refer to the pg_dump documentation for more information on the options you can add to this command.

Restore

1. Stop running Tomcat.

2. Load the backup file:
Chapter 24. Setting Up ODK Aggregate

Windows
macOS and Linux:

```
psql.exec -f [ backup file location ] [ dbname ]
```

```
psql -f [ backup file location ] [ dbname ]
```


You could get some errors depending on your particular PostgreSQL users and server configuration. Refer to the `psql documentation` for more information on the options you can add to this command.

24.4.3 MySQL backup & restore

Backup

1. Stop running Tomcat. This step, although optional, is recommended to produce full and coherent database dumps.

2. Produce a database backup file:

   Windows
   macOS and Linux:

   ```
   mysql dump.exe [ dbname ] > [ backup file location ]
   ```

   ```
   mysql dump [ dbname ] > [ backup destination ]
   ```

3. Start Tomcat if you stopped it on the first step.

You could get some errors depending on your particular MySQL users and server configuration. Refer to the `mysqldump documentation` for more information on the options you can add to this command.

Restore

1. Stop running Tomcat.

2. Load the backup file:

   Windows
   macOS and Linux
24.4. Backing Up Aggregate

```bash
mysql.exec [ dbname ] < [ backup file location ]
```

```bash
mysql [ dbname ] < [ backup file location ]
```


You could get some errors depending on your particular MySQL users and server configuration. Refer to the [mysql documentation](https://docs.getodk.org) for more information on the options you can add to this command.
CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

USING ODK AGGREGATE

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

25.1 Managing Forms in Aggregate

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

You can add, download and delete forms, export data into useful formats, publish data into another service, manually upload submissions and view the published data. ODK Aggregate provides all these options under the Form Management tab.

25.1.1 View blank form list

Click on Forms list tab to see a list of all your forms.

From here, you can add new forms, delete forms, download forms as well as restrict submissions for a form.
Blank form info in list

In addition to the functional columns described below, the form list displays the following information about each form.

- *Form Id* is the unique name for the form.
- *Media Files* is the count of media files associated with the form.
- *User* is the user who uploaded the form.

### 25.1.2 Adding New Forms

Under the *Form list* tab, you will see *Add New Form* button to upload a new form definition to ODK Aggregate.

When you click on it a box will open asking for details of the form. *Form Definition* is required and *Media File(s)* is optional. Choose the *.xml* file that will be used. You can also choose the appropriate media files for the form.

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
25.1.3 Viewing and downloading forms

From the form list, click on form’s Title to view the XForm (the actual XML file). You can then download the file by clicking on Download XML in the Form XML Viewer.

Note: Please, be aware that Aggregate doesn’t store the original uploaded blank form. Instead, it rebuilds a blank form with what’s stored in the database. This implies that there could be some slight differences:

- All blank forms downloaded from Aggregate will include an XML comment with the build date.
- Any left padding with zeroes will be lost on the form’s version number if it was originally present (000042 will become 42).

25.1.4 Disabling or enabling downloading of a form

To disable or enable the ability of Collect or other clients to download forms, toggle the checkbox in the Downloadable column of the blank forms list.

25.1.5 Disabling or enabling submission of a form

To disable or enable the ability of Collect or other clients to submit completed instances of a form, toggle the checkbox in the Accept Submissions column of the blank forms list.

25.1.6 Deleting a blank form

Click on the Delete button for the form in the blank forms list.
25.1.7 Exporting form data

Click on Export option in the form list to export form into useful formats and choose the format in which you want to export data. You can also choose a filter which you have saved for the form to export only a certain subset of the form. Details on exporting data are given in the data transfer section.

25.1.8 Publishing form data

Click on Publish option in the form list to publish the form into another service. You can choose where you want to publish data and which data you want to publish. Details on publishing data are given in the data transfer section.

Viewing published data

You can get a view of the published data you have created for a particular form by clicking on Published Data.

- Select the form corresponding to the published data in the Form dropdown.
- Read the message that appears and click on Purge Published Data.
- Created By shows the email of the user who created the published file.
- Status can be ACTIVE (the file is ready to view) or ESTABLISHED (something went wrong in the process of exporting.)
- Start Date shows the time when you finished filling out the Publish form.
- Action is based on your selection of upload only, stream only, or both in the Publish form.
- Type shows the type you choose to publish your data to.
- Owner shows the owner of the published data.
- Name is the place where you published your data.
- Select delete box in the Delete column if you want to delete your published file.
25.1.9 Managing submissions manually

You can manually upload submissions for a form and check incomplete submissions under the Submission Admin tab.

Submitting forms directly

To manually upload form submissions, click on Manually upload submission data.
Note: Submissions in the Collect app are located under the /odk/instances directory on the phone’s SD card. This directory will contain subdirectories with names of the form in the format formID_yyyy-mm-dd_hh-MM-ss. Within each of these subdirectories are the submission data file (formID_yyyy-mm-dd_hh-MM-ss.xml), and zero or more associated media files (images, audio, video) associated with this submission.

Note: If you upload a submission, but fail to upload all media attachments, it places the submission in the incomplete submissions bucket. While it resides there, it won’t be published to external servers or downloadable via ODK Briefcase.

Removing form submissions

To remove a form submission, select the form in the Form dropdown and click on Purge Submission Data.

Incomplete form submissions

To see a list of incomplete submissions for a particular form under the Incomplete Submissions list.

25.2 Working with Submitted Data in Aggregate

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

You can view the data submitted from ODK Collect here. You can filter the submissions, visualize them using pie chart, bar graph or map, export the submissions into useful formats and publish the submitted data into another service. You can also view all the exported submissions. ODK Aggregate provides all these options under the Submissions tab.

25.2.1 Filtering Submissions

Submissions from ODK collect can be filtered to view or hide a specific subset of data by creation of filters. Filters give you the ability to see a subset of your data. You can have a single filter as well as multiple filters. If you have multiple filters applied at once, then you
have a filter group. You can create and apply filters by using the options under the Filter Submissions tab.

You can create a single or multiple filters depending on the subset of data you want to view or hide. Creating a filter like Display Rows where column Gender EQUAL male specifies that you want to get a list of all rows where gender column has value as male i.e you want to obtain information about all male people in your data. Unless the filter is saved, it is temporary. You can save a filter to make it permanent. Any filter can be deleted if it is no longer needed.

Various options under this tab can be used as follows:

- Click on Add Filter to add filter to the data. In the Create filter to dropdown, Display or Hide will specify whether you will be selecting data to show or hide and Rows or Columns will specify whether you will be working with the rows or columns of the table.

If you select Rows specify a condition you want to apply in the where box.
If you selected *Columns* specify the columns you wish to display or hide in the *titled* box.

- Click on *Save* to save the filter or filter group for future use. Clicking on *Save As* allows you to give a name to the filter or filter group.
- Click on *Delete* to delete a filter or filter group.
25.2. Working with Submitted Data in Aggregate

- You can check the *Display Metadata* checkbox to display or hide metadata.

**Note:** Metadata provides information about the submissions. There will be information such as date submitted, if the data is complete, version numbers, and id numbers.

---

25.2.2 Visualizing Submissions

ODK Aggregate provides a quick means for basic data visualization. This Visualize functionality is meant to provide a quick means to view early data results in meaningful ways but is not meant to provide complex data analysis functionality. You can view your data in bar graph, pie chart or on a map.

In both Pie chart and bar graph visualization you can either count the number of times a unique answer occurs in a specified column or calculate sum of values in one column grouped by a value in another column. You can choose a column that you want to map in map visualization.

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Click on Visualize to visualize the submitted data. Select bar graph, pie chart or map in the Type dropdown. Further options are described as follows:

- **If you choose Pie Chart**, choose whether you would like to count or sum data:
  - If you select *Count* option, then select the column in which you want to apply this.
  - If you select *Sum* option, then select the column of values that you want to add and another column that you want to use to group the numbers.
  - Then click on *Pie It* to get the Pie Chart.

- **If you choose Bar Graph**, you have the same options as that in case of Pie Chart. Choose the option you want to use and then click on *Bar It* to get the Bar Graph.
25.2. Working with Submitted Data in Aggregate

- If you choose Map, select a column that you want to map in the GeoPoint to Map dropdown. Click on Map It to get the map. You can click on a point to view a balloon with the other information supplied in the table.

25.2.3 Exporting Submissions

Click on Export option to export submitted data into useful formats and choose the format in which you want to export data. You can also choose a filter which you have saved earlier to export only a certain subset of data. Details on exporting data are given in the data transfer section.
25.2.4 Publishing Submissions

Click on Publish option to publish the submitted data into another service. You can choose where you want to publish data and which data you want to publish. Details on publishing data are given in the data transfer section.

25.2.5 Viewing Exported Submissions

You can to view the list of exported files under the Exported Submissions tab.
25.3 Administering Aggregate

- **File Type** specifies whether file is `.csv` or `.kml` or `.json` file.
- **Status** will state whether the file being made is in progress, or is now available for viewing.
- **Time Completed** shows the time when the Export task is complete and the file is ready.
- Click on the link in **Download File** to see your exported file.
- Select delete box in the **Delete** column if you want to delete your exported file.

### 25.3 Administering Aggregate

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use **ODK Central** instead.

Click the **Log In** link in the upper right corner of the screen to be presented with the Log onto Aggregate screen. Choose the **Sign in with Aggregate password** button and enter the super-user username you specified within the installer. The initial password for this account is `aggregate`. When you log in, **Site Admin** will be visible to you.

**Tip:** When signing in with this method, if you do not enter the password correctly, you may need to close all your browser windows and quit your browser before you can try again.
Warning: If the instance name of the server changes (the installer asks for this name), then the passwords for all ODK Aggregate usernames will no longer be valid and the super-user username’s password will be reset to aggregate. In this case, you should log in, change the super-user’s password, and change the passwords for all of your ODK Aggregate usernames.

### 25.3.1 Permissions

**Warning:** Remember to change the default password of your super-user account. Otherwise, anyone can take complete control of your server!

You can manage the credentials to access Aggregate in the *Site Admin > Permissions* sub-tab.

Privileges are as follows:

- **Data Collector**: able to download forms to ODK Collect and submit data from ODK Collect to ODK Aggregate.
- **Data Viewer**: able to log onto the ODK Aggregate website, filter, view, and export submissions.
- **Form Manager**: all the capabilities of a Data Viewer plus the abilities to upload a form definition, delete a form and its data, and upload submissions manually through the ODK Aggregate website.
- **Site Administrator**: all the capabilities of a Form Manager plus the ability to add users, set passwords, and grant these capabilities to other users.

You can also download a `.csv` template file with all the credentials and upload it to make changes in bulk.

Remember to click *Save Changes* to make these changes take effect. You can also edit the privileges for current users.

### 25.3.2 Preferences

In the *Preferences* sub-tab under *Site Admin* tab, you can manage:

- **Google API credentials**: These credentials are used when publishing into Google services. For details on this, see Aggregate OAuth2 info.
- **Enketo credentials**: These credentials are used for Enketo webforms integration. To link Enketo with Aggregate, see this.
25.4 Getting Data Out of Aggregate

- **Aggregate features**: These settings affect the operations of the server.
  - *Skip malformed submissions* - check this to ignore corrupted submissions.

### 25.4 Getting Data Out of Aggregate

**Warning**: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

ODK Aggregate supports three primary mechanisms for data transfer:

- **Exporting**: one time snapshot
- **Publishing**: continuous streaming of submissions
- **APIs**: programmatic access to the data

Since ODK supports complex data structures such as question grouping, repeating questions, and multimedia, compromises have been made for each mechanism in regards to these data structures. This document explains each mechanism and what each supports.

#### 25.4.1 Exporting

The easiest way to get data from Aggregate is by using its ‘Export’ feature. Export allows the user to manually export all of the data (or filtered data) at any time into one of the following formats:

**CSV (comma separated values)**

CSV files are a text only, tabular representation of the data. Multimedia files are represented by including standard web links to the files. Repeats are also represented with links to the underlying data. Grouping information is not preserved. Metadata is only preserved if a filter is created with the metadata.

To download CSV files of forms with repeats, consider using ODK Briefcase instead of ODK Aggregate’s export functionality. Instead of repeats that are represented with links to the underlying data, ODK Briefcase will export a set of CSV files, one for each repeating group. ODK Briefcase will also export any multimedia as files (e.g., pictures will get exported as JPEGs). The only metadata that is preserved is the submission date in the CSV is preserved, but the XML files that ODK Briefcase downloads has all form metadata.

**Note**: To import CSVs into Excel, you cannot download and open in one step; nor can you double-click on the CSV. You must open Excel and choose Import. If you are asked, the file
origin or encoding is UTF-8.

**JSON**

JSON is a text only representation of the data in a key:value format. Multimedia files are represented by including standard web links to the files. Repeating data is preserved, but grouping information not related to repeats is not. Metadata is only preserved if a filter is created with the metadata.

**KML (Keyhole Markup Language)**

KML is a text only representation of the data similar to XML, but used for mapping applications like Google Earth. Multimedia files are represented by including standard web links to the files hosted on the server. Pictures will appear embedded in popup windows (when pushpins are clicked) in programs that render .kml files. Repeats and grouping information is not preserved. Metadata is only preserved if a filter is created with the metadata.

**Export Data Summary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Repeats</th>
<th>Multimedia</th>
<th>Metadata</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CSV (Aggregate)</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>preservable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSV (Briefcase)</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>split into separate</td>
<td>exported as files</td>
<td>only submission date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>preserved</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>preservable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KML</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>preservable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**25.4.2 Publishing**

Aggregate provides mechanism for either bulk publishing data to another service, or for streaming incoming data to a service as it is received, or both.

**Warning:** Under certain failure conditions, the downstream service can receive multiple copies of a given submission. This is known, expected, behavior.
25.4. Getting Data Out of Aggregate

Tip:

- Duplicates typically occur if the downstream service is slow to respond or acknowledge a request.
- It is your responsibility to detect and eliminate these duplicates should they occur (they will always have exactly the same information in all fields).

Note:

- Publishing attempts happen at most every 15 minutes. If there are pending submissions to publish, there will be attempts at most every 30 seconds until there are no pending submissions.
- If ODK Aggregate aborts its publishing attempt before it gets an acknowledgment, it will re-send the submission a short time later. If the downstream server successfully processed the first request, the re-send of that same submission can cause a duplicate record of it to appear in the downstream system. The instance ID of the submission will appear as the meta-instanceid column in Google Sheets and as the `meta-instance-id` column in Google Fusion tables.
- When the downstream server fails to respond or responds with an error code, ODK Aggregate first delays a re-send for 60 seconds, and, if that also fails, it then backs off its publishing attempts, and will re-send at either 7.5-minute or 15-minute intervals until the downstream service successfully responds, after which ODK Aggregate will resume its normal publishing behavior.

Aggregate currently supports publishing data to the following services or in the following formats:

**Google Spreadsheets**

Spreadsheets is Google’s cloud-hosted spreadsheet solution. Multimedia files are represented by including standard web links to the files. Repeats are also represented with links to the underlying data. All metadata is preserved. Spreadsheets has cell limits above which errors will be reported. Spreadsheets also has an API that can be used to export/publish data.

**Warning:** Non-repeating grouping information is not preserved with Google Sheets. Use globally unique names throughout your form or data might not transfer correctly to Google Sheets.
OAuth2 Service Account Required

Publishing data to Google Spreadsheets requires an oauth2-service.

JSON Server

JSON preserves grouping and repeat structures. The user can choose to let multimedia files be represented as web links or embedded as base64 encoded strings. All metadata is preserved.

See details of the JSON publisher for more.

Publish Data Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Repeats</th>
<th>Multimedia</th>
<th>Metadata</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Google Spreadsheets</td>
<td>not preserved</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>links to</td>
<td>preserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JSON Server</td>
<td>preserved</td>
<td>preserved</td>
<td>links to or embedded as base64</td>
<td>preserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25.4.3 APIs

ODK Aggregate has public APIs defined for sending data to and from its various components. This section gives references to those API implementations that can be used for connecting new applications to the ODK ecosystem.

Briefcase CLI

ODK Briefcase includes a CLI (Command Line Interface) to automate downloading forms from ODK Aggregate (or ODK Collect) and exporting the forms to an Excel-compatible format like CSV. For more details, see Working with command line on Briefcase.

Briefcase-Aggregate API

ODK Briefcase uses an API that external applications can use to pull all data from and push data to ODK Aggregate.

Interfaces used during pull actions are:
25.4. Getting Data Out of Aggregate

- OpenRosa Form Discovery API
  - download forms and media files using URLs form discovery
- view/submissionList to obtain a chunk of submission keys
- view/downloadSubmission to download an individual submission

Interfaces used during push actions are:
- formUpload to upload a form and its media files to ODK Aggregate
- view/submissionList to obtain a chunk of submission keys
- OpenRosa Form Submission/Overwrite API (with extensions)

For more details, see Briefcase Aggregate API.

OpenRosa API

Collect and Aggregate communicate using a standard set of API calls defined in the OpenRosa specification, which can also be used by alternative clients.

Direct database connection

**Warning:** This is an extremely dangerous way to access data from Aggregate because table structure can and does change between versions. Moreover, changing any of this data could corrupt your Aggregate install.

If you are running on a Tomcat server, you have access to the underlying MySQL or PostgreSQL tables. The structure of those tables are documented at Aggregate Database Structure.

25.4.4 Accessing Media

Many of the export and publishing options provide a URL to the media (image, audio or video) without providing the content itself. To enable the viewing (following) of this link without requiring a log-in:

- Go to the Permissions sub-tab under the Site Admin tab.
- Check the checkbox for: Allow anonymous retrieval of images, audio and video data (needed for GoogleEarth balloon displays).
- Click the Save Changes button.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 25. Using ODK Aggregate

This allows anyone to view the media files on your server. Even though you are granting anyone access to this information, it is still quite secure because the users would need to have a valid URL.

25.5 Visualizing Geographic Data

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

This guide helps the users to visualize the collected geodata uploaded on ODK Aggregate server using Google Earth.

Prerequisites

1. Make sure you have set up your ODK Aggregate server.
2. You should know how ODK Collect works.
3. You should be familiar with form designers like ODK Build, XLSForm to create your location based forms and upload it to ODK Aggregate server.

25.5.1 Google Earth

Google Earth is a virtual globe that accesses satellite and aerial imagery, and other geographic data over the internet to represent the Earth as a three-dimensional globe

Follow these steps to view your data using Google Earth:

1. Login to your ODK Aggregate server.
2. In the Submissions tab, under Filter Submissions, select the form you want to use and click on Export
3. Choose the type as KML file and click on Export.

4. You don’t need to change the default options, but you can select the title according to your choice. Click on Export

5. You will be redirected to Export Submissions page where you can download your kml file.
6. After downloading go to Google Earth website or you can download it from here. Wait for a while as Google Earth takes time to load.

7. Click on and to enable KML import click on Settings.
8. In the Settings window, enable KML file import and click on SAVE.

9. Click on IMPORT KML FILE and import the downloaded kml file.
10. Now you will be able to see your data in an organized manner on Google Earth.

Tip:

- On Google Earth, you can choose your map style, add additional points, lines and polygons to add more information for the enhancement of map. You can also try out this tutorial on how to annotate Google Earth.
25.6 Getting Help in Aggregate

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

Aggregate provides three kinds of help accessible by pressing one of three buttons in the upper righthand corner.

The red question mark will give you instructions for the tab you are currently viewing. When you click the button, a help panel will appear at the bottom of the screen. To hide the help panel, simply click the red question mark again.

The green book will give you the most comprehensive help. When you click the button, a popup will appear providing detailed information as well as video instructions.
The blue balloon increases the amount of detail that appears describing the button’s functionality when you hover over most buttons.
Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

26.1 Updating forms in Aggregate

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

26.1.1 Making changes to existing form

Certain changes which don’t involve adding or removing a question can be made without needing to replace the existing forms. The kind of changes are:

- Changing the text or translation of a label
- Changing validations, calculations, relevants
- Changing options for a select_one or select_multiple
- Changing the order of questions
- Adding translations
- Updating media including CSVs for your form

For such changes you can update the version and re-upload the form.

Note:

- If you add new media files or update existing media files for your form without any change in the form definition file or .xml file, you don’t need to change the version.
• If you have used external select and add, update or delete the choices in external `.csv` file without any change in the form definition file or `.xml` file, you don’t need to change the version. For more details on using external choices in your form, see this

**Tip:** Form version in XLSForm is a string of up to 10 numbers that describes this revision. Revised form definitions must have numerically greater versions than previous ones. A common convention is to use strings of the form `yyyymmddrr`. For example, 2017120701 is the 1st revision from Dec 7th, 2017.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
<th>relevant</th>
<th>read-only</th>
<th>required</th>
<th>calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Enter your name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>sid</td>
<td>Enter your student id</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>Enter your age</td>
<td>.&lt;=18</td>
<td>You should be below 18 years to be eligible for the survey.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>dept</td>
<td>In which department have you chosen courses?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>course</td>
<td>Enter number of courses you have chosen</td>
<td>1&lt;=6</td>
<td>You should choose at least 1 course and at most 6 courses.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>marks</td>
<td>Enter total marks obtained in all courses</td>
<td></td>
<td>${course}!=&quot;none&quot;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>${course_crt}!=&quot;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>${course_crt}*100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.1: **Survey**
26.1. Updating forms in Aggregate

Table 26.2: Choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dept</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>PHY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept</td>
<td>Math</td>
<td>MAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>CHEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.3: Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form_title</th>
<th>form_id</th>
<th>default_language</th>
<th>version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example_form</td>
<td>example_id</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>2017120700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you want to make the following changes to the above form:

- Add a Spanish translation
- Change the relative order of first and second question
- Change age constraint from 18 to 20
- Change the sid field to not required
- Change label for third question from In which department have you chosen courses? to Name of Department.
- Change the calculation from $\text{course}_\text{cnt} \times 100$ to $\text{course}_\text{cnt} \times 50$
- Change the relevant for calculate to $\text{course} \neq \text{none} \text{ and } \text{course}_\text{cnt} \neq "$\n- Change the list name in choices from dept to dept_name
- Add a new choice in department list as Computer
- Change Math to Mathematics and MAT to MATH in choices

These changes can be made as:
## Table 26.4: Survey

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label::English (en)</th>
<th>label::Español (es)</th>
<th>constraint</th>
<th>constraint_message</th>
<th>relevant</th>
<th>read-only</th>
<th>required</th>
<th>calculate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>sid</td>
<td>Enter your student id</td>
<td>Ingrese su identificación de estudiante</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>Enter your name</td>
<td>Introduzca su nombre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>Enter your age</td>
<td>Introduzca su edad</td>
<td>.&lt;=20</td>
<td>You should be below 20 years to be eligible for the survey.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select_one</td>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>Name of Department</td>
<td>Nombre del departamento</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>course</td>
<td>Enter number of courses you have chosen</td>
<td>Ingres el número de cursos que has elegido</td>
<td>1&lt;=...</td>
<td>Yes you should choose at least 1 course and at most 6 courses.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer</td>
<td>marks</td>
<td>Enter total marks obtained in all courses</td>
<td>Ingres las calificaciones totales obtenidas en todos los cursos</td>
<td></td>
<td>${course}!='none'</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate</td>
<td>total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>${course}!='none' and ${course_cnt}!=&quot;&quot;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>${course_cnt}*50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
26.1. Updating forms in Aggregate

Table 26.5: Choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>PHY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>MATH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>CHEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>Computer</td>
<td>COMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dept_name</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26.6: Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form_title</th>
<th>form_id</th>
<th>default_language</th>
<th>version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example_form</td>
<td>example_id</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>2017120701</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: You need to use the same filename when generating newer versions of your form since the XLSForm converter uses that filename in creating the form structure which is used by the server to help determine uniqueness.

If you use the same filename, you can upload the form and ODK Aggregate will automatically replace the old version and keep the existing form data. If you use different filenames, you would need to delete the old version of the form (and the existing form data) in order to upload the newer version.

In the examples below, we use different filenames for version upgrade since unique filenames are required for uploading files to the documentation website.

Due to different XLSForm filenames in these examples, the generated XForms will have different instance definition as follows:

For example_form_v1.0.xlsx:

```
<instance>
  <example_form_v1.0 id="example_id" version="2017120700">
```

For example_form_v1.1.xlsx:

```
<instance>
  <example_form_v1.1 id="example_id" version="2017120701">
```

These are the .xml files for the above forms:

1. example_form_v1.0
2. example_form_v1.1

These are the .xlsx files for the above forms:
1. example_form_v1.0
2. example_form_v1.1

Note: You cannot change the question type or name, form id and title. Example: In above form you cannot change the type from select_one to select_multiple or change name from dept to department.

Note: When a user tries to get new blank forms, a form with updated version will be selected by default in the list and will contain an additional message to indicate it’s an update.

Both versions of the form will exist in the device of the user but only the newer one will be visible on the list. Thanks to that the user will be able to edit forms he has started using the older version and upload them to the server, but new forms will be started using the newest available form version.
26.1.2 Replacing existing form

If you need to make deeper changes like changing question type, name, form id, form title etc then you will need to create a new form with the required changes.

Once you will modify your form, the data you will collect will be stored under that new form. However, you do not need to delete the previous form, instead, you may change the name of the new form. For example, if you had form name as Example_form, the revised form can be named as Example_form_1.1. Additionally, on your Aggregate restrict the previous form by unchecking Downloadable and Accept Submissions options.

**Warning:** If you make changes like changing a question type or name with the same form id and title and update the version, you won’t be able to re-upload the form. Aggregate will reject the form upload with an error message.

---

26.2 Increasing Aggregate Field Length

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

By default, Aggregate’s datastore layer limits text values to 255 characters or less. If a submission includes a value longer than 255 characters, those additional characters are **not saved in the database** and no warning is shown. That means there is a risk of data loss when using question types that save long text values such as geotrace, geoshape or select...
multiple. This limitation exists for performance reasons, particularly for older versions of MySQL.

It is possible to set the desired database field length for a particular question. This value can go up to about 16000 UTF-8 characters but the datastore storage efficiency may get worse as the value increases. If you go over 16000 characters, be sure to do an end-to-end test to ensure the performance is acceptable.

**Tip:** Each geopoint is roughly 50 characters, so a geotrace or geoshape with a length of 16000 will store about 320 points.

In an XLSForm, the database field length is set from the `bind::odk:length` column. On form upload, Aggregate will adjust the database field length of questions that have a whole number in that column. Other questions will get a default length of 255.

### XLSForm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
<th>bind::odk:length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>select_multiple</td>
<td>multi</td>
<td>Select multi</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geoshape</td>
<td>shape</td>
<td>Select an area</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>list_name</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>label</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opt_abc</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abc</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt_abc</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 26.3 Aggregate Limitations

**Warning:** Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use *ODK Central* instead.

This is a listing of known limitations and potential "gotchas" users of Aggregate may encounter.
26.3. Media held in memory

When a form submission is uploaded, and when blank forms are downloaded, all the associated media files are held in memory at the same time, twice. For forms with a lot of media files, this can consume a lot of memory.

It is not absolutely critical to serialize form downloads, but you should probably manage how many form download requests are being handled concurrently, in order to avoid memory problems.

26.3.2 Uploading blank forms with media exceeding 10MB

Adding blank forms through the ODK Aggregate website is limited to an overall form and media size of 10MB. Beyond that, you have to perform multiple uploads of the form definition file with different subsets of the media files in order to fully upload the blank form and its media attachments.

An easier solution is to use ODK Briefcase.

26.3.3 Issues with older versions of Aggregate

Aggregate < 1.4.8 used deprecated technology

Aggregate 1.4.7 and earlier use a deprecated backend technology. Google may terminate support for that at any time with little warning. You should consider upgrading.

Aggregate 1.4.15 changed sync protocol

Aggregate 1.4.15 fixed the ODK-X rev 210 sync protocol. Prior to this, user permissions were incorrectly being computed and filtered. This prevented resetting the server with new content from the device (but syncing with existing content worked fine). The rev 210 sync protocol is incompatible with anything prior to rev 210.

Basic Auth broken prior to Aggregate 1.4.14

OpenRosa servers are required to implement at least one authentication protocol as outlined in RFC2617.

- a subset of RFC2617 Digest Authentication
- Basic Authentication.
Aggregate v1.4.14 added an SHA-1 library so that Basic Auth is possible. Prior to this, Basic Auth was not possible.

**Note:** Basic Auth is not exposed in the setup wizard. Additionally, it requires that default passwords be changed.
CHAPTER
TWENTYSEVEN

GOOGLE APP ENGINE SUPPORT (LEGACY)

Warning: Aggregate is no longer being updated. Please use ODK Central instead.

Warning: In February 2019, ODK Aggregate v2.x was released with support for Google App Engine removed. This page gathers all the information previously available about Google App Engine for Aggregate v1.x. See why we are removing App Engine support for more information.

27.1 Planning Your Aggregate Deployment

The recommended method to deploy Aggregate v1.x is using Google App Engine or the ODK Aggregate VM. Try those first before attempting other methods.

27.1.1 Internet access

Google App Engine requires internet access. If you don't have consistent internet access, ODK Briefcase may be more appropriate.

27.1.2 Availability

Google App Engine provides highly available servers and data storage.

27.1.3 Dataset size

Google App Engine can store a virtually unlimited amount of data — well in excess of a million submissions.
However, in deployments with data sets exceeding 7,000 submissions, the data export feature will stop working. To correct this, you will need to increase server size.

On Google App Engine, a larger instance will incur higher billing costs. Additionally, for datasets of over 100,000 records, it is likely that performance will be better when using MySQL or PostgreSQL, rather than Google App Engine’s data store. You also have more optimization opportunities when running your own database servers than are available through Google’s cloud services.

Note: Individual text database fields are capped at a length of 255 by default for performance reasons. If you intend to collect text data longer than 255 characters (including using types geotrace, geoshape or select multiple), your forms should specify database field lengths greater than 255.

27.1.4 Data locality and security

Google App Engine servers may be located anywhere in the world.

Depending on the sensitivity of the data and specific storage rule, regulations, or restrictions of your country or organization, the server infrastructure may not have all necessary locality guarantees or security precautions.

In some circumstances, you might be able to use encrypted forms to achieve compliance. You should research and comply with applicable laws and regulations before storing data on Google App Engine.

See also:

Google Cloud Services Terms of Service.

27.1.5 Billing

For identity verification purposes, Google requires a credit card or banking details to use the Google Cloud Platform that Google App Engine runs on. Accounts that meet this requirement receive a recurring $200 monthly credit per billing account.

Independent of Cloud Platform credits, App Engine allows a certain amount of free activity. These free quotas reset every 24 hours and are high enough to enable free use of ODK Aggregate during evaluation and small pilot studies.

You may be able to run a full deployment within these activity thresholds provided you:

- collect fewer than 2000 responses
- access the site a limited number of times a day
27.1. Planning Your Aggregate Deployment

- can be flexible about when you upload and access data

Deployments with more activity that do not wish to wait 24 hours for quotas to reset can enable billing on their App Engine project.

Once billing is enabled, ODK Aggregate will start using the monthly credit that comes from the Cloud Platform. Once those credits are finished, the credit card or bank on file will then be used. Billing account owners can set spending limits to manage application costs.

Most ODK deployments will not surpass the $200/month credit and non-profits using more than that can apply for more credits through Google for Nonprofits.

27.1.6 Cost effectiveness

For most users, Google App Engine will be the easiest and most cost-effective option.

Two examples illustrate the cost-effectiveness of Google App Engine:

- A 6000 hour study in Mumbai that ran from 01 September 2011 through 29 February 2012 also incurred the minimum charge of $2.10/week for mid-November onward (Google did not begin billing until mid November 2011).

You can enable billing on an as-needed weekly basis. You will incur no charges at all if you disable billing (for example, between data gathering campaigns, while you are developing the forms for the next campaign). When disabled, access is restricted to the free daily usage limit.

27.1.7 Minimizing fees

**Hint:** In the Preferences sub-tab under Site Admin tab, you can Disable faster background actions to reduce App Engine quota usage.

On App Engine, the major driver of cost is Datastore Reads. These add up quickly:

- Viewing a page of form submissions incurs at least one Read for each submission.

- Each multiple-choice question in a form incurs an additional Read on every displayed submission.

- An additional read is incurred for every 200 questions in your survey.

- Each image incurs at least 10 reads.

- The default view shows 100 submissions.

- The form submissions display refreshes every six seconds.
For example, if your survey has 500 questions \((q)\), with a repeat group containing an additional 300 questions, the typical survey has 4 filled-in repeats \((rpt)\), and 100 submissions \((s)\) are shown on each page load \((pl)\), then the cost to display the Submissions tab is a minimum of 1100 Reads \((R)\) with each refresh of the Submissions tab.

\[
100s/pl \times (500q/s \times \lceil 1R/200q \rceil + 4rpt/s \times 300q/rpt \times \lceil 1R/200q \rceil) = 1100 \frac{R}{pl}
\]

At this rate, the free quota would be exceeded within 5 minutes!

And this hypothetical survey did not contain any select-one or select-multiple questions, or any audio, video or image captures, all of which would require more Reads.

Therefore, to reduce datastore reads:

- restrict access to the Aggregate website
- do not keep the browser window open on the submissions tab
- export or publish your data, and do your analysis in a different tool
- use ODK Briefcase instead of Aggregate to generate CSV files

It is generally more efficient to use Briefcase to generate CSV files than to use Aggregate, as Briefcase will use the locally cached data to generate the CSV files.

With larger datasets, there are two modes of operation:

- Aggregate retains the full dataset.
  
  In this mode, it is slightly more efficient to Pull data to your local computer then immediately Push it back up. This sets some internal tracking logic within Briefcase so that the next Pull is somewhat more efficient, as the Push only verifies that what you have locally matches the content on Aggregate, rather than re-uploading all of it.

- Aggregate retains only a portion of the dataset.
  
  In this mode, you periodically purge older data collection records and never Push data up to Aggregate, as that would restore the purged data.

### 27.2 Installing Aggregate

See Installing Aggregate on Google App Engine.

### 27.3 Backing up Aggregate

You can export and import Datastore entities using the managed export and import service. See ODK Aggregate data wrangling for App Engine for more detail.
27.4 Tips and Best Practices

27.4.1 Aggregate Limitations

Pushing Data to Aggregate

If Aggregate is installed on Google App Engine, using the default datastore as described in our documentation, a combination of request time limits and datastore implementation create the following issues.

Simultaneous push requests will block each other and may time out

Within ODK Aggregate, there is a global mutex (TaskLock across all server instances, mediated by the datastore layer) in the server when inserting submissions. Having multiple push requests occurring simultaneously will cause them to block on the mutex, chewing up their 60-second request limit, as they get processed in single file no matter how many server instances are spun up.

The solution to this is: Serialize your push requests.

Time limit may be exceeded on low-bandwidth connections

The 60-second request limit can be very commonly exceeded over low-bandwidth connections, and even text-only submissions can be impacted on satellite connections. That is why ODK Collect splits submissions into multiple 10MB submission requests. The timer starts upon receipt of the first byte, so a slow connection can account for a sizeable portion of those 60 seconds. The same applies for sending a response. The processing on the server is generally negligible in relation to the transmission times.

Note:

- The above two limitations, the global mutex and the in-memory copies/full-packet-assembly, are a result of implementing on top of App Engine and its Datastore.
- A server that used database transactions and that used streaming servlet 3.0 functionality would have less trouble with concurrent requests.

Media held in memory

When a form submission is uploaded, and when blank forms are downloaded, all the associated media files are held in memory at the same time, twice. For forms with a lot of media files, this can consume a lot of memory.

The previous section already suggested serializing form submission uploads. This is not absolutely critical for form downloads, but you should probably manage how many form
download requests are being handled concurrently, in order to avoid memory problems.

### 27.4.2 Reducing Data Corruption and Boosting Performance

See Reducing Data Corruption and Boosting Performance on Google App Engine.
28.1 Docs Contributor Technical Guide

This document explains how to set up your computer and work locally as an ODK Docs contributor. Local set up includes installing some software, and working locally involves:

- writing documentation text or code in a code editor
- using the Terminal (the "Shell" or "Command Line")

We encourage all potential contributors to try to work locally, following this guide.

28.1.1 Before you begin

Learn a little about ODK

Read about the project and the community at ODK’s website.

Get started with the docs by going to the ODK Docs GitHub README.

Set up collaboration accounts

ODK is a collaborative community. Before diving in as a contributor, set up accounts on our three main collaboration platforms, GitHub, the ODK Developer Slack, and the ODK Forum.

Tip: As you are setting up your accounts, keep in mind that it is very helpful (but not required) to use the same (or similar) username on GitHub, the ODK Developer Slack, and the ODK Forum.

This makes it easy for other people to keep track of conversations which sometimes span multiple online platforms.
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

If you are willing and able to do so, a profile picture in each place is also very helpful. (But it is okay if you are unable or uncomfortable adding a picture.)

1. Set up a GitHub account.

   GitHub is a popular code storage and collaboration platform. You will need a GitHub account to contribute to ODK documentation, or any other ODK projects.
   - ODK on GitHub
   - ODK Docs on GitHub

2. Join the ODK Developer Slack.

   Slack is a popular chat platform. The ODK contributor community uses Slack to discuss development, plan work, and generally keep in touch. If you have a question about how to contribute to ODK Docs, or any other ODK project, the ODK Slack is the best place to ask it.

   Conversations related to documentation are held in the #docs-code channel. You may also want to check in with #general and #random.
   - (a) Get an automated invitation from http://slack.getodk.org
   - (b) Check your email for the invitation.
   - (c) Follow the link in your email and set up your account.

3. Join the ODK Forum

   The ODK Forum is the main place for support questions and conversations that affect the whole ODK community (users and other stakeholders, as well as contributors).

   If you have a question about how to use any ODK software, or want to get connected with the larger ODK community, the forum is the best venue for that.

   Tip: The forum has a search feature, and a long history of archived support posts. When writing new documentation about an existing feature, old forum posts are an excellent source for figuring out what people need to know: If someone has asked a question about it, it should probably be in the documentation.

Should I ask in the Forum, the Slack, or a GitHub issue?

The ODK community talks a lot, in a lot of places. Sometimes it’s hard to know where to ask a question.

Contribution-related questions and problems should be asked in Slack. This includes things like:

   - How do I set up my local editing environment?
28.1. Docs Contributor Technical Guide

- How do I use git?
- I’m having a merge conflict.
- I got an error at the terminal which I don’t understand.
- How do I add a picture to a document?
- What issue should I work on?

Work-specific questions and discussion should take place on the GitHub issue defining the work. This includes things like:

- I’m writing a piece of content, but I’m not sure where it should be organized.
- I’d like to work on this feature, but I don’t know how to implement it.
- Here’s my idea for solving this problem. Is that a good idea?
- I’m going to be working on this for the next few days. No one else should also work on it at the same time.
- I said I was working on this, but I didn’t finish and I’m no longer working on it.

User-related questions and problems should be asked in the Forum. (You should use the search feature first, since someone else may have already asked the same question.) This includes things like:

- How do I install an ODK application?
- How do I create a form?
- How do I add a specific feature to a form?
- My ODK application crashed.

But don’t worry about posting a question in the wrong place.

It is better to ask a question in the “wrong” venue than to not ask the question at all. Many of the same people are present in all three places, and we will help you wherever you happen to show up.

28.1.2 Initial Setup

Note: We generally recommend starting with the Docker platform for editing docs unless you already have a Sphinx environment set up. Local tools and workflows presented in this guide are what the authors feel would be easiest for newcomers and those unfamiliar with open source.
However, developer and authoring tools have a lot of options and alternatives. You should feel free to use your preferred tools.

Before you begin working the first time you will need to install a few tools on your computer. You should only need to do this one time on any computer.

1. Find and open a terminal or command line.
   - Windows
   - Mac
   - Linux

**Windows versions prior to Windows 10**

Use Windows PowerShell. (Not the DOS Prompt.)

We recommend using the Windows PowerShell ISE.

During initial setup (this section of the guide) you will need to Run as Administrator.

Throughout the rest of the instructions in this guide, follow the instructions labeled PowerShell or Windows.

**Windows 10**

In Windows 10, you have a choice:

- Use the Powershell (as described above)
- Use the Windows Subsystem for Linux.

If you decide to use the Powershell, follow the PowerShell or Windows instructions throughout the contributor guides.

If you decide to use the Linux subsystem, follow the Bash or Windows instructions throughout the contributor guide.

**Note:** Computers with the Windows 10 Home operating system are incapable of installing some of the tools necessary to edit the docs. Other Windows operating systems, such as Windows 10 Enterprise or Pro, can be used to edit the docs.

Use the Terminal app, or another Bash-like shell.

---

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org).
If you’ve never used it before, the Terminal is probably in the Other directory in your App collection.

Follow the Bash or Mac instructions throughout the contributor guide.

---

Optional: Install Homebrew

Homebrew is a package manager for Mac OS. It makes it easier to install other apps and tools from the command line.

Follow the installation instructions.

---

Use a Bash-like shell of your choosing, and follow the Bash or Linux instructions throughout the contributor guide.

You will also need to be familiar with the relevant package manager for your system.

---

2. Install git.

Git is a version control system. It helps us keep track of changes to the documentation. (Similar to the undo history in a document editing program.)

Linux

Mac

Windows

Use your distribution’s package management system to install git on Linux.
Option 1: Download an installer

(a) Download the git installer for Mac.
(b) Open the installer package.
(c) Follow the prompts.
(d) Accept any default settings.

Option 2: Use Homebrew to install git

$ brew install git

(a) Download the git installer for Windows.
(b) Open the installer package.
(c) Follow the prompts.
(d) Accept any default settings.

3. Install Git LFS

Git Large File Storage (Git LFS) is a tool that helps us manage images, videos, and other files which are neither text nor code.

Linux
Mac
Windows

Use your distribution’s package management system to install Git LFS on Linux.

After initial installation by the package manager, complete the install by running:

$ git lfs install

(a) Download Git LFS from the Git LFS website.
(b) Open the downloaded installer.
(c) Follow the prompts.
(d) Accept any default settings.
(e) Open the Terminal and add LFS to git:

$ git lfs install
Option 2: Use Homebrew to install Git LFS.

```bash
$ brew install git-lfs
$ git lfs install
```

(a) Download Git LFS from the Git LFS website.
(b) Open the downloaded installer.
(c) Follow the prompts.
(d) Accept any default settings.
(e) Open Powershell and add LFS to git:

```powershell
> git lfs install
```

4. Install Python 3

Python is a programming language.

Most of the ODK Docs tools are written in Python, so you need it installed on your computer in order to use those tools. (Don’t worry. You don’t need to know how to program in Python.)

We require Python 3, version 3.6 or later.

Linux

Mac

Windows

Use your distribution’s package management system to install Python 3.6+ on Linux. (For more help, see Installing Python on Linux.)

Tip: Mac OS includes a legacy (outdated) version of Python. It’s best to just ignore it.

Option 1: Use the Python Installer for Mac

(a) Download the latest Python installer for Mac.

64-bit or 32-bit?

Python provides 64-bit and 32-bit installers. You probably need the 64-bit installer.
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

If you are running a relatively recent Mac OS update (Mountain Lion or later — any Mac from the last several years) the 64-bit installer is for you.

If you have an older Mac, and are unsure if it can run a 64-bit installer, check the processor details in → About This Mac.

(b) Open the Installer.
(c) Follow the prompts.
(d) Accept the default settings.
(e) Open the Terminal to see if Python installed properly.

```
$ python3 --version
Python 3.7.0
```

The output from `python3 --version` might be a little different, but it should be higher than 3.6.

If you get an error here, something went wrong. Try running the installer again. If the problem persists, and you can’t debug it yourself, asks us about it on ODK Slack.

Option 2: Use Homebrew to install Python 3.6+

```
$ brew install python
```

The output from `python3 --version` might be a little different, but it should be higher than 3.6.

If you get an error here, something went wrong. Try running `brew install python` again. If the problem persists, and you can’t debug it yourself, asks us about it on ODK Slack.

(a) Go to the Python Releases for Windows page.
(b) Under the latest numbered release for Python 3, find and download the Windows x86-64 web-based installer (for a 64-bit system) or the Windows x86 web-based installer (for a 32-bit system).

64-bit or 32-bit?
Well over 90% of computers running Windows are 64-bit. So you probably need the 64-bit version.

If you are running a very old or low-powered computer, and you are unsure if it is 64-bit or 32-bit, you can use this guide from HP (which will work for other computer brands) to find that information.

(c) Open the downloaded installer.
(d) Follow the prompts.
(e) Accept all default settings.
(f) Open Powershell and make sure the installation completed.

```
> python --version
Python 3.7.0
```

The output from `python --version` might be a little different, but it should be whatever numbered version you downloaded.

If you get an error here, something went wrong. Try running the installer again. You may also have to add Python to your Windows search path. You can do this by going to Advanced System Settings -> Environmental Variables -> Edit System Variables, then adding the path to the directory containing Python. If the problem persists, and you can’t debug it yourself, asks us about it on ODK Slack.

5. Set up your working directory

In whatever directory (folder) on your computer where you organize projects, create a new directory for ODK, and then navigate to that directory. (We recommend calling this directory `odk`, and the rest of the guide will assume that’s what you called it.)

Bash

PowerShell

```
$ mkdir odk
$ cd odk
/odk/ $
```

```
> mkdir odk
> cd odk
/odk/ >
```

For the rest of this guide, we assume you are in the `/odk/` directory, or a subdirectory of it.

6. Set up a virtual environment
A **virtual environment** is a Python construct that lets you download and install tools for a specific project without installing them for your entire computer.

(a) Create the virtual environment.

Bash

```
/odk/ $ python3 -m venv odkenv
```

PowerShell

```
/odk/ $ python -m venv odkenv
```

(b) Activate the virtual environment.

Bash

```
/odk/ $ source odkenv/bin/activate
```

PowerShell

```
/odk/ > source odkenv/bin/activate
```

The `(odkenv)` before the prompt shows that the virtual environment is active. You will need to have this active any time you are working on the docs.

If the file cannot be found, your activate file may be located under odkenv/scripts/activate.

Later, to deactivate the virtual environment:

Bash

```
/odk/ $ deactivate
```

PowerShell

```
(odkenv) /odk/ $ deactivate
```

7. Fork the ODK Docs repository to your own GitHub account.

A **repository (repo)** is a store of all the code and text for a project. The **ODK Docs repo** is kept at GitHub.

On GitHub, a **fork** is a copy of a repo, cloned from one user to another. In order to work on ODK Docs, you will create your own fork.
8. Clone down your copy to your local computer

(a) From your own fork of the repo on GitHub, select the *Clone or download* button.

(b) Copy the URI from the text box that opens. It will be something like: https://github.com/your-gh-username/docs.git

(c) Use your terminal to clone the repository.

You should already be in the *odk* directory, with the virtual environment active.

**Warning**: Some of the git commands produce meaningless errors in PowerShell. If you get an error when using git, but everything seems to work otherwise, ignore the error.

**Note**: This will cause your computer to download the entire ODK Docs repository, including a large number of images. It will take several minutes to complete.
If you followed the instructions, you should now have the following directory structure:

- odk
  - docs
  - odkenv

The odkenv directory stores your virtual environment, and you should not need to open it or directly view its content. Just ignore it.

The docs directory is your copy of the ODK Docs repo. You will do most of your work in this directory.

If you need to download or create additional files which are not actually a part of the ODK Docs repository, keep them out of the docs directory.

You can use the main odk directory for any other files you need to work on. (For example, you may want to create a directory called odk/forms to hold XLSForm and XForm files.)

9. Set the upstream remote

In git, a remote is a copy of a repo somewhere else. From your local computer’s point of view, your online copy at GitHub is a remote.

When you cloned down a repo, your local copy gives your GitHub copy the name origin.

You also need to give the primary ODK Docs repo a name, and our convention is to name it upstream.

Bash

PowerShell

```bash
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git remote add upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git remote -v
origin https://github.com/your-github-username/docs.git (fetch)
origin https://github.com/your-github-username/docs.git (push)
upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git (fetch)
upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git (push)
```

```powershell
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git remote add upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git remote -v
origin https://github.com/your-github-username/docs.git (fetch)
origin https://github.com/your-github-username/docs.git (push)
```
upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git (fetch)
upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git (push)

If everything went right, you should see output similar to what is shown above.

10. Install Python tools with pip

Pip is a package management tool that comes with Python. We use it to download and install our documentation tools. These Python tools are listed in requirements.txt.

Bash

PowerShell

    (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ pip install --upgrade pip
    (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ pip install -r requirements.txt

    (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > pip install --upgrade pip
    (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > pip install -r requirements.txt

The first command upgrades pip itself to the latest version. Then second checks requirements.txt and installs everything listed in it. This will take several moments.

**Note:** If you are ever running one of the build commands shown below and it fails with a message that includes ModuleNotFoundError, there might be changes to requirements.txt since you originally ran `pip install -r requirement.txt`. Run the installation again and then retry your build.

11. Choose a text/code editor

The documentation source files are written in a plain text format called reStructuredText. This means special formatting (bullets, headers, bold text) is represented by visible characters, not hidden behind a graphical display. When working on a documentation file, you see and write something that looks like:

```markdown
#. Choose a text/code editor

    The documentation source files
    are written in a plain text format called `reStructuredText`._

    .. _reStructuredText: http://docutils.sourceforge.net/docs/user/rst/quickref.html
```

You cannot write and edit these files in a typical document preparation program like **MS Word** or **Google Docs**. Instead, you need a coding editor.
There are a lot of editors, and people who use them often have very strong opinions about them. You are free to choose any editor you like.

If you’ve never used an editor before, you might want to start with one of the easier and more popular ones:

- Atom
- Sublime
- VS Code
- Notepad++ (Windows only)

Most of these have plugins that will make writing reStructuredText easier by color-coding the markup.

This completes the setup of your local working environment. Take a break before diving into how you actually work.

### 28.1.3 Working on the docs

1. Find an issue to work on.

   Work on ODK Docs is planned using the GitHub repository’s issue tracker.

   (a) Browse the issue tracker and find one you may want to work on.

   (b) Make sure you understand the goal of the project. If the goal isn’t clear, ask. If there is anything in the issue that doesn’t make sense, ask about it. Feel free to make suggestions about how something could be accomplished.

   (c) If you decide to work on an issue, assign yourself to it by writing `@getodk-bot claim` in a comment.

   (d) If the issue requires a novel or creative solution not defined in the issue already (we’ve stated a problem and you think you know a way to fix it) write a comment describing your plan. It is a good idea to get feedback on an idea before working on it. Often, other contributors can provide additional context about why a particular solution may or may not work.

#### Your first issue

The very first issue you should work on as a new ODK Docs contributor is Issue 96 — Line Edits. The issue is very simple:

(a) Find a typo.

(b) Fix the typo.
This will help you get used to working with the documentation tools, and helps us get rid of the inevitable errors that creep in to our writing.

2. Make sure you are on the master branch

A branch is a named sequence of changes representing work on the repo. For example, if you were going to work on Issue 96 — Line Edits, you would create a new branch called line-edits to hold that work. When you were done, you would merge those changes back to the main branch, which we call master.

The first time you clone the docs repo and start working, you will be on the master branch.

Each time you come back to starting work on a new issue, make sure you are on the master branch before continuing.

(a) Check the current branch with `git branch`. This will output a list of branches, with a star next to the current one.

Bash

PowerShell

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git branch
branch-name
branch-name
branch-name
* master
branch-name
```

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git branch
branch-name
branch-name
branch-name
* master
branch-name
```

(b) If you are not on master, switch to master with `git checkout`.

Bash

PowerShell

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git checkout master
Switched to branch 'master'
Your branch is up to date with 'origin/master'.
```
3. Pull in changes from upstream

Other people are constantly making changes to the docs, so you need to keep your local copy up to date.

Before you start working, use `git pull` to pull in the changes from the upstream repository’s master branch. Then, just to be sure, you can use `git status` to make sure everything is up to date.

**Bash**

```
$ git pull upstream master
```

```
$ git status
```

**PowerShell**

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git pull upstream master
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git status
On branch master
Your branch is up to date with 'origin/master'.

nothing to commit, working tree clean
```

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git pull upstream master
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git status
On branch master
Your branch is up to date with 'origin/master'.

nothing to commit, working tree clean
```

**Warning:** Some git commands (including `git pull` and `git checkout`) send error messages to PowerShell even when they work correctly. If everything seems to be working, you can ignore these.

4. Create a new branch for your work.

**Bash**

```
$ git checkout -b branch-name
```

**PowerShell**

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git checkout -b branch-name
```

```
Switched to a new branch 'branch-name'
```

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git checkout -b branch-name
```

```
Switched to a new branch 'branch-name'
```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Branch names should be short, lowercase, and use hyphens as separators. They do not need to carry a lot of information (like your name or the date).

Good branch names:
- `getting-started-guide`
- `contributing`
- `fix-issue-13`

Bad branch names:
- `getting started guide`
- `Getting started guide`
- `Getting_started_guide`
- `writing-the-getting-started-guide-adammichaelwood-july-2017-draft`

5. Work on the documentation

Finally, you can open an *editor of your choice* and work on the documentation.

The source files for documentation text are in these directories:

**src** Files for the pages at [https://docs.getodk.org](https://docs.getodk.org)

If you’re going to write or edit documentation text, please read:

- *Docs Markup and Syntax Guide*
- *Docs Style Guide*

If you’re working on code or deployment, please read:

- *Docs Developer Guide*

6. Local checks

Once you have worked on the documentation, we want to make sure your contribution will get accepted and published right away.

To ensure your changes will pass all the deployment tests, you should run the tests locally first and correct any problems.

(a) Spell check

If you’ve been working on files in **src**:

Bash
PowerShell

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ make spell-check
```
This will send some output to the terminal, which will include mentions of any words not in the dictionary.

- If the flagged words are really misspellings, correct them.
- If the flagged words are not misspelled, and should be in the dictionary add them to spelling_wordlist.txt.
- If the flagged words are not misspelled, but should not be in the dictionary (for example, they are non-words that make sense on a single page for a specific reason) add them at the top of the file in which they are being used, before the title heading:

```
.. spelling::

   abc
def
exefunctool

This Is The Page Title
=====================
```

When adding new words to spelling_wordlist.txt or the top of a document file, please keep the words in alphabetical order.

(b) Style check

7. Build and check

We use a Python tool called Sphinx to compile all the .rst files into a working website.

If you’ve been working on files in src:

- Bash
- PowerShell

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ make build
```

```
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > rm -r -fo tmp
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > rm -r -fo build
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > Copy-Item src -Destination tmp -Recurse
(odkenv) /odk/docs/ > sphinx-build -b dirhtml tmp build
```
This generates a lot of output. Near the end of the output you may see a statement like:

```
build succeeded, 18 warnings.
```

Those warnings are problems with the text which you need to fix before submitting your changes. Scroll up in the terminal to find each warning, so that you can address it in the source files.

A Sphinx warning looks like this:

```
/path/to/file-name.rst:LINENUMBER: WARNING: warning message
short excerpt from the file
```

This tells you what file the problem is in, the approximate line number, and the nature of the problem. Usually that is enough to fix it. If you can not figure out the meaning of a particular warning, you can always ask about it on the ODK Slack.

**Note:** Because of a bug in Sphinx the line numbers in error and warning messages will be off by about 15 lines (the length of `rst_prolog` in `conf.py`).

As you fix each warning, run the build again to see if it disappears from the output.

**Note:** The warning messages will refer to the file name using the temporary directory path `tmp`. You need to correct the problems in the real source directory (`src`).

**When you just can’t fix the error...**

If you’ve done your best and asked on the ODK Slack, and you still cannot correct the warning, stop worrying about it and skip to the next step. When you submit your changes on GitHub, include a note about the warning. Other contributors will help solve the problem before merging.

Once you’ve corrected all the warnings that can be corrected...

8. Serve the documentation website locally and view it.

If you’ve been working on files in `src`:

Bash

PowerShell
Open your browser and go to http://localhost:8000.
Read through your doc edits in the browser.
Go back to the source files to correct any errors you find.
Go to your terminal, and press CTRL C to shut down the local web server.
Re-run the build and serve steps.
Continue proofreading.

Once you are reasonably sure your changes are ready...

9. Commit your changes to your local repository.

A commit is a snapshot of your working files in a particular state, along with a record of all the changes that led up to that state. That snapshot is what you will submit to the main repository.

Note: We explain how to do a commit at this step because you need to do it before you can submit your changes. However, you don’t have to wait until you are done to commit. You can commit as many times as you like while working.

This can be especially helpful if you are working on a complicated set of changes, over several working sessions.

(a) Stage the files for commit with `git add`.

To stage all changes for commit:

Bash

```
$ git add -A
```

PowerShell

```
> git add -A
```

(b) Commit the staged files with `git commit`.

Bash

```
$ git commit
```

PowerShell

```
> git commit
```
28.1. Docs Contributor Technical Guide

(odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git commit -m "Write a commit message here."

Your commit message needs to be wrapped in quote marks. It should, in a sentence or less, explain your work.

10. Push your committed changes to your GitHub repo with **git push**.

   **Bash**

   ```bash
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git push origin branch-name
   ```

   **PowerShell**

   ```powershell
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git push origin branch-name
   ```

   **Warning:** The **git push** command produces meaningless errors in PowerShell. If you get an error when using **git push**, but everything seems to work otherwise, ignore the error.

   **Tip:** You may be prompted to enter your GitHub username and password. When entering your password, the cursor won’t move — it will look like you aren’t entering anything, even though you are.

   To avoid having to retype these every time, you can store your GitHub credentials locally.

11. Issue a pull request from your GitHub repo to the main ODK Docs repo.

   A **pull request** (or PR) is a request from you to the ODK Docs maintainers to pull in your changes to the main repo.

   (a) Go to the **ODK Docs repo on GitHub**. (Make sure you are logged in.)

   (b) Find the message near the top of the page that mentions your recent pushed branches. Select **Compare & pull request** to start a pull request.

   (c) Follow GitHub’s instructions to start the pull request.

   These details should fill-in automatically, but be sure to double-check them:

   - **Base fork** should be the main repo (**getodk/docs**).
   - **base** should be **master**.
   - Your repo and working branch name should be listed beside them.
You will see either a green \textit{Able to be merged} message or a message informing that the branch can not be merged. You can proceed in either case. If the branch cannot be merged, the maintainers will work with you to resolve the problem.

(d) Write a PR message explaining your work.

The PR message field includes a template to remind you of what to include. Fill in the template and delete any sections which are not applicable.

A good PR message includes:

- The issue number you are working on. (Write \texttt{closes #123} if the PR completes the work for the issue. If there’s still work to do, write \texttt{addresses #123}.)
- A summary of what you did.
- Details of work that still needs to be done.
- Details of new work created or implied by this PR.
- Details of any unresolved errors or warnings, including details of what you tried.
- Justification for any changes to \texttt{requirements.txt}.
- Details of any difficulties, questions, or concerns that came up while working on this issue.

(e) Submit your pull request.

The maintainers and other contributors will review your PR as quickly as possible. They may request changes to your work. If changes are needed:

(a) \textbf{Don’t worry.} Revision is a normal part of technical writing, and everyone (even the project’s founders and leaders) has their work reviewed and are frequently asked to revise it.

(b) Work on the files again locally. (Use \texttt{git branch} to make sure you are still in the same working branch.)

(c) \textit{Stage and commit} your changes locally again (\texttt{git add -A; git commit -m "Commit message"}).

(d) \textit{Push your commit} (\texttt{git push origin branch-name}).

(e) Your new commits will automatically update the PR. Do not start a new PR.

Once everything has been approved, the changes will be merged in and will appear on \textit{this website}. At that point… congratulations! You are now a contributor to ODK.

\textbf{566} Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at \url{https://docs.getodk.org}. 
28.1.4 The next time you work

We hope that contributing to ODK Docs is a rewarding experience and that you’ll want to keep going. Each time you start work on a new issue the process is the same as outline above.

Here are a few things to keep in mind when you start your next contribution.

1. Return to master with `git checkout master`.
   
   New work is done on new branches which are started from master. So, before you start a new branch, return to the master branch.
   
   Bash
   ```bash
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git checkout master
   ```

   PowerShell
   ```powershell
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git checkout master
   ```

2. Pull in changes with `git pull upstream master`.

   You need to start your new work from the latest version of everyone else’s work.
   
   Bash
   ```bash
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git pull upstream master
   ```

   PowerShell
   ```powershell
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git pull upstream master
   ```

3. Update the master branch of your online GitHub repository.

   Bash
   ```bash
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ $ git push origin master
   ```

   PowerShell
   ```powershell
   (odkenv) /odk/docs/ > git push origin master
   ```

4. Find a new issue to work on.

5. Start a new branch for your work with `git checkout -b branch-name`.

   Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
28.1.5 Keep improving

As you are getting comfortable with the contribution process, take a few minutes to read our Tips for Making Good Contributions. You may also want to dig deeper into the Docs Style Guide and the Docs Markup and Syntax Guide. (And if you are writing code, check out the Docs Developer Guide.)

And don’t forget to join us on the ODK Slack.

ODK is a community, and we depend on each other’s work. Thank you for your contribution to ODK Docs and your presence in this community.

28.2 Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

The ODK documentation is built using Sphinx, a static-site generator designed to create structured, semantic, and internally consistent documentation. Source documents are written in reStructuredText, a semantic, extensible markup syntax similar to Markdown.

- reStructuredText Primer — Introduction to reStructuredText
  - reStructuredText Quick Reference
  - reStructuredText 1-page cheat sheet
- Sphinx Markup — Detailed guide to Sphinx’s markup concepts and reStructuredText extensions

Note: Sphinx and reStructuredText can be very flexible. For the sake of consistency and maintainability, this guide is highly opinionated about how documentation source files are organized and marked up.

28.2.1 Indentation

Indentation is meaningful in Sphinx and reStructuredText text. Usually, indenting a section means that it "belongs to" the line it is indented under. For example:

```
.. figure:: path-to-image.*

This is the caption of the figure. Notice that it is indented under the line defining the figure.
```

The rules for indentation are:

- Use spaces, not tabs.
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

- Generally, indent two spaces.

The exception to the two spaces rule is *Ordered (numbered) lists*, where indentation follows the content of the list item.

1. This is a list item.

   This is some additional content related to Item 1. Notice that it is indented to the same column as the first line of content. In this case, that's three (3) spaces.

   
   
   
10. The tenth item in a list.

   This related content will be indented four spaces.

28.2.2 Documentation Files

Sphinx document files have the `.rst` extension. File names should be all lowercase and use hyphens (not underscores or spaces) as word separators.

Normally, the title of the page should be the first line of the file, underlined with equal-signs.

```
Title of Page
=============
Page content is here...
```

You can alternatively wrap the title in two lines of asterisks, in some cases. (This should not be your default choice.)

```
***************
Title of Page
***************
Page content here.
```

The asterisks style is useful when you are combining several existing documents and don’t want to change every subsection headline. Or, you can use it when you are working on a document that you have reason to think might be split into separate documents in the future.

**Important:** If you use the double-asterisks style, your major section headlines (`<h2>`)
should use the equal-signs underline style. This allows major sections to be easily promoted to individual pages.

See *Sections and Titles* for more details.

### 28.2.3 Tables of Content

The `toctree` directive defines a table of content. The content of a `toctree` is a list of page file names, without the `.rst` extension. When rendered, the `toctree` becomes an unordered list of page links, including links to sections and subsections of the included pages.

```rst
.. toctree::
   :maxdepth: 2

   this-page
   that-page
   thick-page
   flat-page
```

The depth of section and subsection links to display in the output can be controlled using the `maxdepth` attribute. We typically use a depth of 2, but you should use your judgment if you feel it should be more or less in any given context.

**See also:**

The TOC Tree

The Sphinx documentation includes information about a number of other `toctree` attributes.

**Sidebar navigation menu**

The `index.rst` file serves as a front-page to the documentation and contains the main tables of content, defined using `toctree` directives.

These `toctree` directives control the sidebar navigation menu. To add a new document to a table of content, add the file name (without the `.rst` extension) to the relevant list of file names in `index.rst`. 
Secondary tables of content

Collections of documents are sometimes given their own table of content on an individual page. (See, for example, Setting Up ODK Collect and Using ODK Collect.)

In these cases, the page containing the `toctree` serves as a sort of intro page for the collection. That intro must, itself, be included in the Sidebar navigation menu.

The contents of a `toctree` appear as section links in another `toctree` it is included in. That is, if a `toctree` in `index.rst` lists `collect-using`, and `collect-using.rst` has a `toctree`, then the contents of that second `toctree` will appear in the Sidebar navigation menu, as sub-items to Using ODK Collect. (Indeed, this is precisely the case in the docs currently.)

How ODK Docs uses main and secondary tables of content

- Major topics get a `toctree` in `index.rst`

  Major topics include things like:
  - Each major product (Collect, Aggregate, Briefcase)
  - Large, general categories like Contributing

  Major topic tables of content include both sub-collection intro pages and also individual pages that don’t fit into a sub-collection.

  The `caption` attribute of the `toctree` directive defines the section label in the Sidebar navigation menu.

- Within a large topic, documents are grouped into collections of related pages, defined by a `toctree` on a topic intro page.

  Intro pages (pages that contain secondary `toctree` directives) may include additional content, introducing the collection or providing contextual wayfinding. However, this is not always necessary or desirable. Use your judgment, and avoid stating things just for the sake of having some text. ("Here are the pages in this collection.")

  We also (very occasionally) include `toctree` directives in sub-collection pages.

**Tip:** If it not obvious where a new document should appear in the navigation, the best practice is to simply ask about it in the GitHub issue driving the new page.

**Note:** For wayfinding purposes, we sometimes create an Unordered (bullet) lists of page links rather than a `toctree` directive. (For example, see collect-intro. We do this when using a `toctree` would create redundant links in the Sidebar navigation menu.)
Why are the docs files not grouped into folders in the source?

We use toctree directives as our primary way of organizing the documentation for readers. We do not organize the source rst files into subfolders.

The reason is that if we put them into topic-related subfolders, it would affect the URI of the document. Keeping all of our document files in a single flat directory results in a flat URI structure. Every page’s URI looks like docs.getodk.org/page-name.

If we used subdirectories, then our URIs would look like docs.getodk.org/subdirectory-name/page-name. This would mean that our URIs would change every time we moved a document from one folder to another, greatly increasing the time cost and broken-link risk of reorganizing the docs.

28.2.4 Sections and Titles

Headlines require two lines:

- the text of the headline, followed by
- a line filled with a single character.

Each level in a headline hierarchy uses a different character:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title of the Page - &lt;h1&gt; - Equal Signs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major Section - &lt;h2&gt; - Hyphens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsection - &lt;h3&gt; - Tildes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-subsection - &lt;h4&gt; - Double Quotes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-sub-subsection - &lt;h5&gt; - Single Quotes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you need to combine several existing pages together, or want to start a single-page doc that you think might be split into individual pages later on, you can add a top-level title, demoting the other headline types by one.
In either case, the underline of characters needs to be longer than the line of text. In the case of the asterisks, the two lines of asterisks need to be the same length.

**Note:** The exact order of underline characters is flexible in reStructuredText. However, this specific ordering should be used throughout the ODK documentation.

**Section labels**

In order to facilitate efficient *Cross referencing*, sections should be labeled. This is done on the line above the section title. The format is:

- two dots
- underscore
- section label
  - lowercase
  - hyphen separators
- a single colon
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

.. _section-label:

Section Title
--------------

Lorem ipsum content of section blah blah.

The section label is usually a slugified version of the section title.

Section titles must be unique throughout the entire documentation set. Therefore, if you write a common title that might appear in more than one document (Learn More or Getting Started, for example), you’ll need to include additional words to make the label unique. The best way to do this is to add a meaningful work from the document title.

ODK Aggregate
--------------

ODK Aggregate is a server application...

.. _aggregate-getting-started:

Getting Started
--------------

28.2.5 Basic Markup

Escaping characters

Markup characters can be escaped using the \ character.

\*Italic.*

\*Not italic, surrounded by asterisks.\*

*Italic.*

*Not italic, surrounded by asterisks.*

Emphasis and Inline Literal

Single asterisks for *italic text* (`<em>`).

Double asterisks for **bold text** (`<strong>`).
Double back-ticks for `inline literal text` (`<code>`).

Single asterisks for *italic text* (*<em>*).
Double asterisks for **bold text** (*<strong>*)..
Double back-ticks for inline literal text (*<code>*)..

**Note:** The **bold**, *italic*, and `inline literal` styles do not carry semantic meaning. They should not be used when a more semantically appropriate markup construct is available; for example, when *writing about GUI text*.

**Hyperlinks**

**External** hyperlinks — that is, links to resources *outside* the documentation — look like this:

```
This is a link to `example <http://example.com>`_.
```

This is a link to example.
You can also use ”reference style” links:

```
This is a link to `example`_.
```

.. _example: http://example.com

This may help make paragraphs with a lot of links more readable. In general, the inline style is preferable. If you use the reference style, be sure to keep the link references below the paragraph where they appear.

```You can also simply place an unadorned URI in the text: http://example.com```

You can also simply place an unadorned URI in the text: http://example.com

**Lists**

**Unordered (bullet) lists**

```Bulleted lists ( `<ul>`):
- use hyphens```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
- are unindented at the first level
- must have a blank line before and after

- the blank line requirement means that nested list items will have a blank line before and after as well
- you may optionally put a blank line between list items

Bulleted lists (<ul>):

- use hyphens
- are unindented at the first level
- must have a blank line before and after
  - the blank line requirement means that nested list items will have a blank line before and after as well
  - you may optionally put a blank line between list items

Ordered (numbered) lists

Numbered lists (<ol>):

1. Start each line with a number and period
2. Can begin on any number
3. Must have a blank line before and after
4. Can have nested sub-lists
   a. nested lists are numbered separately
   b. nested lists need a blank line before and after
5. Can have automatic number with the `#` character.

Numbered lists (<ol>):

1. Start each line with a number and period
2. Can begin on any number
3. Must have a blank line before and after
4. Can have nested sub-lists
   a. nested lists are numbered separately
   b. nested lists need a blank line before and after
5. Can have an automatic number with the # character.
Note: See *Ordered and unordered lists* in the *Docs Style Guide* for details on when to use ordered and unordered lists.

**Definition Lists**

Definition list (`<dl>`) a list with several term-definition pairs

Terms
should not be indented

Definitions
should be indented under the term

Line spacing
there should be a blank line between term-definition pairs

**Definition list** (`<dl>`) a list with several term-definition pairs

**Terms** should not be indented

**Definitions** should be indented under the term

**Line spacing** there should be a blank line between term-definition pairs

**Paragraph-level Markup**

Paragraphs are separated by blank lines. Line breaks in the source code do not create line breaks in the output.

This means that you *could*, in theory, include a lot of arbitrary line breaks in your source document files. These line breaks would not appear in the output. Some people like to do this because they have been trained to not exceed 80 column lines, and they like to write .txt files this way. Please do not do this.

There is **no reason** to put a limit on line length in source files for documentation, since this is prose and not code. Therefore, please do not put arbitrary line breaks in your files.
Paragraphs are separated by blank lines. Line breaks in the source code do not create line breaks in the output.

This means that you could, in theory, include a lot of arbitrary line breaks in your source document files. These line breaks would not appear in the output. Some people like to do this because they have been trained to not exceed 80 column lines, and they like to write .txt files this way. Please do not do this.

There is no reason to put a limit on line length in source files for documentation, since this is prose and not code. Therefore, please do not put arbitrary line breaks in your files.

**Block Quotes**

This is not a block quote. Block quotes are indented, and otherwise unadorned.

```
This is a block quote.
  — Adam Michael Wood
```

This is not a block quote. Block quotes are indented, and otherwise unadorned.

```
This is a block quote. — Adam Michael Wood
```

**Line Blocks**

```
| Line blocks are useful for addresses, |
| verse, and adornment-free lists. |
| Each new line begins with a vertical bar ("|"). |
  Line breaks and initial indents are preserved.
```

Line blocks are useful for addresses, verse, and adornment-free lists.

Each new line begins with a vertical bar ("|").

  Line breaks and initial indents are preserved.
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

Tables

Grid style

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header 1</th>
<th>Header 2</th>
<th>Header 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>body row 1</td>
<td>column 2</td>
<td>column 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body row 2</td>
<td>Cells may span columns.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body row 3</td>
<td>Cells may span rows.</td>
<td>- Cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body row 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>- contain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simple style

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inputs</th>
<th>Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False</td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True</td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>True</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CSV Table

The csv-table role is used to create a table from CSV (comma-separated values) data. CSV is a common data format generated by spreadsheet applications and commercial databases. The data may be internal (an integral part of the document) or external (a separate file).

```
.. csv-table:: Example Table
   :header: "Treat", "Quantity", "Description"
   :widths: 15, 10, 30

   "Albatross", 2.99, "On a stick!"
   "Crunchy Frog", 1.49, "If we took the bones out, it wouldn't be crunchy, now would it?"
   "Gannet Ripple", 1.99, "On a stick!"
```

Table 28.1: Example Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treat</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albatross</td>
<td>2.99</td>
<td>On a stick!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crunchy Frog</td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>If we took the bones out, it wouldn't be crunchy, now would it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gannet Ripple</td>
<td>1.99</td>
<td>On a stick!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some of the options recognized are:

**:widths:**

Contains a comma or space-separated list of relative column widths. The default is equal-width columns.

The special value auto may be used by writers to decide whether to delegate the determination of column widths to the backend.

In most cases, the best result is either the default or auto. If you’re unsure, try it both ways and see which looks better to you.

**:header:**

Contains column titles. It must use the same CSV format as the main CSV data.

**:delim:**

Contains a one character string used to separate fields. Default value is comma. It must be a single character or Unicode code.

The only reason to use something other than a comma is when copying large blocks of content from another source that uses a different style. If you are creating new table content yourself, use the comma.

```
.. csv-table:: Table using # as delimiter
   :header: "Name", "Grade"
```
It specifies the horizontal alignment of the table. It can be left, right or center.

Table 28.2: Table aligned to right

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

- There is no support for checking that the number of columns in each row is the same. However, this directive supports CSV generators that do not insert "empty" entries at the end of short rows, by automatically adding empty entries.
Table 28.3: Table with different number of columns in each row

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Whitespace delimiters are supported only for external CSV files.

For more details, refer to this guide on CSV Tables.

**Note:** In almost all cases, csv-table is the easiest and most maintainable way to insert a table into a document. It should be preferred unless there is a compelling reason to use one of the other styles.

### 28.2.6 Sphinx-specific Markup

#### Roles and directives

A *role* is an inline markup construct that wraps some text, similar to an HTML or XML tag. They look like this:

```
:rolename:`some text`
```

A directive is a block-level markup construct. They look like this:

```
.. directivename:: additional info or options here
    :option: optional-value
    :option: optional-value

    Content of block here, indented.
```

This *is* no longer part of the block controlled by the directive.

Most of the Sphinx-specific and ODK-specific markup will use one or both of these constructs.

#### Cross referencing

Cross referencing is linking internally, from one place in the documentation to another. This is *not* done using the Hyperlinks syntax, but with one of the several roles:
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

```
:role:`target`
becomes...
    <a href="target">reference title</a>

:role:`anchor text <target>`
becomes...
    <a href="target">anchor text</a>
```

:doc:

- Links to documents (pages)
- `target` is the file name, without the `.rst` extension
- `title` is the first `headline` (`<h1>`) of the page

:ref:

- Links to `sections`
- `target` is the `Section labels`
- `title` is the `section title (headline)`

:term:

- Links to items in the `Glossary`
- `target` is the term, in the glossary
- `title` is the term itself

**To recap:** If you do not include an explicit `target`, the text inside the role will be understood as the target, and the anchor text for the link in the output will be the title of the target.

For example:

- Link to this document:
  - :doc:`contributing`
  - :doc:`anchor text <contributing>`

- Link to this section:
  - :ref:`cross-referencing`
  - :ref:`anchor text <cross-referencing>`

- Link to a term:
  - :term:`participant`
  - :term:`anchor text <participant>`
Writing about User Interface

Several roles are used when describing user interactions.

:guilabel:
Marks up actual UI text of form labels or buttons.

Press the :guilabel:`Submit` button.

:menuselection:
Marks up the actual UI text of a navigation menu or form select element.

Select :menuselection:`Help` from menu.

When writing about multi-level menus, use a single :menuselection: role, and separate menu choices with -->.

To save your file, go to :menuselection:`File --> Save` in the Main Menu.

Note: In some situations you might not be clear about which option (menuselection or guilabel) to use. GUIs in real life can sometimes be ambiguous. The general rule is:

- Actual UI text will always receive guilabel role unless the text could reasonably be understood to be part of a menu.
- If the actual UI text could be understood as a menu, menuselection should be used.

These both render the same on output, so don’t worry too much if you get it wrong. Just use your judgment and take your best guess.
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

:kbd:
Marks up a sequence of literal keyboard strokes.

To stop the local server, type :kbd:`CTRL C`.

:command:
Marks up a terminal command.

To build the documentation, use :command:`sphinx-build`.

:option:
Marks up a terminal command option.

The :option:`-b html` option specifies the HTML builder.

:gesture:
Describes a touch screen gesture.

:gesture:`Swipe Left`

Writing about forms

We have added several custom text roles for writing about forms and the XForms and XLSForm formats.

:th:
Used to refer to a table header cell.

:tc:
Used to refer to a table cell.

External App String Widget
===========================
The external app widget is displayed when the :th:`appearance` attribute begins with :tc:`ex:`.

:formstate:
Specifies the state of the form in ODK Collect, which could be one of the following:

- Blank
- Finalized
- Saved
- Sent
- Deleted

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Other Semantic Markup

:abbr:
Marks up an abbreviation. If the role content contains a parenthesized explanation, it will be treated specially: it will be shown in a tool-tip in HTML.

:abbr:`ODK`

:dfn:
Marks the defining instance of a term outside the glossary.

:dfn:`ODK` is a suite of open source applications that help organizations engaged in enumerator-mediated data collection.

:file:
Marks the name of a file or directory. Within the contents, you can use curly braces to indicate a "variable" part.

is installed in :file:`/usr/lib/python2.{x}/site-packages`

In the built documentation, the x will be displayed differently to indicate that it is variable.

:program:
Marks the name of an executable program.

launch the :program:`ODK Aggregate Installer`

Images and Figures

PNGs only

All still images used in ODK Docs should be PNG files. This helps us keep our image compression tooling simple, and generally results in higher-quality screenshots.

Whenever possible, you should generate your images as PNGs rather than converting to PNGs from another format. If you have to start in another format, use lossless formats whenever possible. These include BMP, GIF, and TIFF. (Avoid JPG/JPEG if possible, as this is a lossy format that does not replicate screenshots very well.)
**Where to put image files**

Image files should be put in the `/src/img/` directory in the source, and they should be in a subdirectory with the same name as the document in which they appear. (That is, the filename without the `.rst` extension.)

**Image compression**

Before committing images locally, run lossless compression on them using one of the following tools:

- ImageOptim
- Pngout

**Inserting images in a document**

To place an image in a document, use the `image` directive.

```
.. image:: /img/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.*
   :alt: Alt text. Every image should have descriptive alt text.
```

Note the literal asterisk (*) at the end, in place of a file extension. Use the asterisk, and omit the file extension.

**Inserting images with captions (figures)**

Use `figure` to markup an image with a caption.

```
.. figure:: /img/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.*
   :alt: Alt text. Every image should have descriptive alt text.

   The rest of the indented content will be the caption. This can be a short, sentence or several paragraphs. Captions can contain any other rst markup.
```

**Inline images**

To information on creating inline images, see *Substitutions*. 
Image File Names

Image file names should:

- be short yet descriptive
- contain only lower case characters and (in *Sequentially numbered images* only) numbers
- have no spaces
- use hyphens as the separator

Good image file names:

- `collect-home-screen.png`
- `build-data-export-menu.png`

Bad image file names:

- Collect home screen.png
- `collect_home_screen.png`
- `3987948p2983768ohl84692p094.jpg-large`

Sequentially numbered images

In the case of sequentially numbered images, the numbers should:

- be zero-indexed
- have two digits with leading zeroes
- be separated from the rest of the file name with a hyphen
- be placed at the end of the file name

Good sequentially numbered image file names:

- `map-widget-00, map-widget-01, map-widget-02`

Bad sequentially numbered image file names:

- 1-map-widget, 2-map-widget
- `map-widget_00, map-widget_01`
- `map-widget-1, map-widget-2`
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

Screenshots from ODK Collect

If you have set up Android Debug Bridge, you can connect your Android device to your computer and take screenshots from the command line.

- Connect your device via USB
- Enable Developer Settings
  - Settings → About phone
  - Tap Build number seven (7) times
- Turn on USB Debugging
  - Settings → Developer options → USB debugging

Now, at the command line, from the root directory of the odk-docs repo:

```
python ss.py {document-name}/{image-name}
```

- `{document-name}` is the filename (without extension) where the image will be used.
- `{image-name}` is the name (without extension) given to the image. Follow the Image File Names guidelines

**Warning:** Make sure you do not overwrite an existing image.

**Tip:** If you have a problem running ss.py, check to make sure your Python 3 virtual environment is activated.

**Tip:** Be sure to obscure any personally-identifiable information from screen shots. Crop to the smallest relevant screen area. Annotate screen shots with arrows or circles to indicate relevant information.

Videos

Video files should be put in the `src/vid/` directory in the source, and they should be in a subdirectory with the same name as the document in which they appear. (That is, the filename without the .rst extension.)

The purpose of on page videos is to illustrate complicated user interactions that might be difficult to describe otherwise. Longer tutorial videos should be hosted elsewhere and, if appropriate, linked to from the docs. Therefore:
• The length of the videos must be less than a minute.
• Videos should have no audio.

To insert a video, use the custom `video` directive.

```rst
.. video:: path/to/video

Specify the source path of the video and a descriptive alt content in the video directive. Alternate content is displayed when the video cannot be played. It can contain long texts as well as any other rst content.

```rst
.. video:: /vid/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.ext

Alt content. Every video should have descriptive alt content.
```

The following optional attributes are supported:

:autoplay:
   Specifies whether the video should start playing as soon as it is ready. Can take boolean value: true, false, yes or no. Default is `no`.

   It is almost never a good idea to turn `autoplay` on.

:controls:
   Specifies whether the video controls should be displayed. Can take boolean value: true, false, yes or no. Default is `yes`.

:muted:
   Specifies whether the audio output of the video should be muted. Can take boolean value: true, false, yes or no. Default is `yes`.

:loop:
   Specifies whether the video should start over again, every time it is finished. Can take boolean value: true, false, yes or no. Default is `no`.

:preload:
   Specifies if and how the author thinks the video should be loaded when the page loads. Can take one of the following three values: `auto`, `metadata` or `none`.

:poster:
   Contains the source address for an image to be shown while the video is downloading, or until the user hits the play button.

```

Note: Images to be used as poster for a video should be in the same directory as the video and should have a filename like `same-file-name-as-video]-poster.ext`.

```

'class':
   Specifies a class for the video element.
28.2. Docs Markup and Syntax Guide

For more details on these attributes, see this guide.

To add a video in a document with the above options, you can do the following:

```bash
.. video:: /vid/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.ext
   :autoplay: yes/no
   :controls: yes/no
   :muted: yes/no
   :loop: yes/no
   :class: class-name
   :preload: auto/metadata/none
   :poster:: /vid/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.ext
```

Alt content. Every video should have descriptive alt content.

Capturing video from Android

Android Debug Bridge (ADB) can be used to capture a screen recording from an Android app.

```bash
$ adb shell screenrecord /sdcard/example.mp4
```

On pressing the enter key the video recording starts. Recording stops automatically after 3 minutes. Since videos have to be less than a minute, press CTRL C to stop the recording.

The video file is saved in your Android device to a file at /sdcard/example.mp4 file.

To pull the video locally:

```bash
$ adb pull /sdcard/example.mp4 local/path/to/save/to
```

Downloadable files

Downloadable files should be put in the /src/downloads/ directory in the source, and they should be in a subdirectory with the same name as the document in which they appear. (That is, the filename without the .rst extension.)

To place a downloadable file in a document, use the download role.

See this :download:`example script </downloads/contributing/example_script.py>` to understand the procedure better.
Code Samples

Use the code-block directive to insert code samples. Specify the language on the same line as the directive for syntax highlighting.

```rst
Use the ``code-block`` directive to markup code samples.
```

```python
print("Hello ODK!")
```

```console
$ python --version
```

```java
public class HelloWorld {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Prints "Hello, World" to the terminal window.
        System.out.println("Hello, World");
    }
}
```

**Note:** rst code-blocks wrap overflow lines by default. To unwrap overflow lines, use `unwrap` class with rst code-blocks.

Code-blocks for other languages don’t wrap overflow lines. Instead of wrapping, you need to scroll side-ways. To wrap overflow lines with other code-blocks, use `wrap` class with them.

Substitutions

Substitutions are a useful way to define a value which is needed in many places.
Substitution definitions are indicated by an explicit markup start (".. ") followed by a vertical bar, the substitution text (which gets substituted), another vertical bar, whitespace, and the definition block.

A substitution definition block may contain inline-compatible directives such as `image` or `replace`. For more information, refer this guide.

You can define the value once like this:

```markdown
.. |RST| replace:: reStructuredText
```

and then reuse it like this:

```markdown
We use |RST| to write documentation source files.
```

Here, |RST| will be replaced by reStructuredText

You can also create a reference with styled text:

```markdown
.. |slack| replace:: **ODK Slack**
.. slack: https://getodk.slack.com
```

You can use the hyperlink reference by appending a "_" at the end of the vertical bars, for example:

```markdown
You can ask about your problem in |slack|.
```

You can ask about your problem in **ODK Slack**.

The `rst_epilog` in `conf.py` contains a list of global substitutions that can be used from any file. The list is given below:

- If you want to create a hyperlink reference for ODK Slack, you can use `|odk-slack|`.

  ```markdown
  You can use |odk-slack| to ask your questions.
  ```

  You can use **ODK Slack** to ask your questions.

- To create a hyperlink reference for docs related issues, use `|docs-issue|`.

  ```markdown
  If you find a problem, file an |docs-issue|.
  ```

  If you find a problem, file an issue.
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

- To create a hyperlink reference for ODK Forum, use `|forum|_`.

  You can ask support questions in `|forum|_`.

  You can ask support questions in ODK Forum.

- To create a hyperlink reference for contributors guide, use `|contrib-guide|_`.

  Be sure to read the `|contrib-guide|_`.

  Be sure to read the contributors guide.

You can add inline images in the document using substitutions. The following block of code substitutes arrow in the text with the image specified.

```
The `|arrow|` icon opens the jump menu.

```
.. `|arrow|` image:: /img/{document-subdirectory}/{file}.*
    :alt: Alt text.

28.3 Docs Style Guide

28.3.1 Spelling and grammar

American spelling and grammar

Whenever U.S. English and British (or other) English spelling or usage disagree, standard U.S. spelling and usage is preferred.

Wrong

The colour of the button is grey.

Right

The color of the button is gray.
@memoize
def check_ukus(text):
    """UK vs. US spelling usage."""
    err = "style-guide.uk-us"
    msg = "uk-vs-us-spell-check. '{}' is the preferred spelling."
    preferences = [
        ["gray", "grey"],
        ["color", "colour"],
        ["accessorizing", "accessorising"],
        ["acclimatization", "acclimatisation"],
        ["acclimatize", "acclimatise"],
        ["acclimatized", "acclimatised"],
    ]
    return preferred_forms_check(text, preferences, err, msg)

    # This is a sample code. The complete code can be found in the file:
    # proselint-extra.py.

Quote marks

- Quote marks should generally be avoided if possible.
- *Smart* quotes (also known as *curly quotes* or *directional quotes*) are not permitted in source files.

Avoid quote marks

Quote marks are used in prose writing to indicate verbatim text. This is rarely useful in technical writing, as verbatim text usually requires a more specific semantic markup.

Wrong

Click the button that says, "Save."

Right

Click :guilabel:`Save`.
Wrong

You may see an error message that says, "Something went wrong."

Right

You may get an error: ```Something went wrong.```

```python
def check_quotes(text):
    """Avoid using straight quotes.""
    err = "style-guide.check-quote"
    msg = "Avoid using quote marks."
    regex = r"\"[a-zA-Z0-9 ]{1,15}\"

    errors = []

    for matchobj in re.finditer(regex, text):
        start = matchobj.start()+1
        end = matchobj.end()
        (row, col) = line_and_column(text, start)
        extent = matchobj.end()-matchobj.start()
        errors += [(err, msg, row, col, start, end,
                     extent, "warning", "None")]

    return errors
```

Straight quotes

Any time that you do need to use quotation marks, use straight (or plain) quotes. Sphinx and Docutils will output the typographically correct quote style.

```python
def check_curlyquotes(text):
    """Do not use curly quotes.""
    err = "style-guide.check-curlyquote"
    msg = "Do not use curly quotes. If needed use straight quotes."
    regex = r"\"[a-zA-Z0-9 ]{1,15}\"

    errors = []

    for matchobj in re.finditer(regex, text):
        start = matchobj.start()+1
        end = matchobj.end()
        (row, col) = line_and_column(text, start)
```
Serial comma

In a comma-delineated list of items, the penultimate item should be followed by a comma.

Wrong

Apples, oranges and pears.

Right

Apples, oranges, and pears.

A bulleted list is often more clear than an inline list.

Correct

You will need to be familiar with git, GitHub, and Python.

Possibly Better

You will need to be familiar with:
- git
There’s no hard rule about which to use in any situation. Use your judgement: try it both ways and see which is more clear.

**Direct Address**

Direct address — speaking directly to the reader using the second person ”you” — is preferred over passive voice (”it can be done”), first-person plural (”we can do it”), or other constructions.

First person plural (”we”) should only be used when speaking of the ODK project team (”We recommend...”).

**Ordered and unordered lists**

An ordered list is numbered. It should be used when the order of the list is essential. For example, when enumerating a series of steps in a procedure.

**Wrong**

- First we do this.
- And then we do this.
- And then we do this.

**Right**

1. Do this.
2. Do this.
3. Do this.

An unordered list is bulleted. It should be used for a collection of items in which order is not essential.

**Wrong**

1. apples
2. oranges
3. bananas
28.3. Docs Style Guide

Right

- apples
- oranges
- bananas

Avoid Latin

Several Latin abbreviations are common in written English:
At best, these present a minor barrier to understanding. This is often made worse by unintentional misuse.
Avoid Latin abbreviations.

Wrong

If you are writing about a specific process (e.g., installing an application)...

Right

If you are writing about a specific process (for example, installing an application)...
Etc.

*Et cetera* (or *etc.*) deserves a special mention.

*Et cetera* means ”and all the rest,” and is often used to indicate that there is more that could or should be said, but which is being omitted.

Writers often use *etc.* to gloss over details of the subject which they are not fully aware of. If you find yourself tempted use *etc.*, ask yourself if you really understand the thing you are writing about.

**Avoid unneeded words**

**Adverbs**

Adverbs often contribute nothing. Common offenders include:

- simply
- easily
- just
- very
- really
- basically
- extremely
- actually

**Wrong**

To open the file, simply click the button.

**Right**

To open the file, click the button.
28.3. Docs Style Guide

Wrong

You can easily edit the form by...

Right

To edit the form...

```python
@memoize
def check_adverb(text):
    """Avoid using unneeded adverbs.""
    err = "style-guide.unneed-adverb"
    msg = "Avoid using unneeded adverbs like "just", "simply"."

    list = [
        "simply",
        "easily",
        "just",
        "very",
        "really",
        "basically",
        "extremely",
        "actually",
    ]

    return existence_check(text, list, err, msg, ignore_case=True)
```

Filler words and phrases

Many words and phrases provide no direct meaning. They are often inserted to make a sentence seem more formal, or to simulate a perceived style of business communication. These should be removed.

Common filler phrases and words include:

- to the extent that
- for all intents and purposes
- when all is said and done
- from the perspective of
- point in time
This list is not exhaustive. These "canned phrases" are pervasive in technical writing. Remove them whenever they occur.

```python
@memoize
def check_filler(text):
    """Avoid using filler phrases.""
    err = "style-guide.filler-phrase"
    msg = "Avoid using filler phrases like \"to the extent that\"."

    list = [
        "to the extent that",
        "when all is said and done",
        "from the perspective of",
        "point in time",
    ]

    return existence_check(text, list, err, msg, ignore_case=True)
```

**Semicolons**

Semicolons are used to separate two independent clauses which could stand as individual sentences but which the writer feels would benefit by close proximity.

Semicolons can almost always be replaced with periods (full stops). This rarely diminishes correctness and often improves readability.

**Correct**

These "canned phrases" are pervasive in technical writing; remove them whenever they occur.

**Better**

These "canned phrases" are pervasive in technical writing. Remove them whenever they occur.

```python
@memoize
def check_semicolon(text):
    """Avoid using semicolon.""
    err = "style-guide.check-semicolon"
    msg = "Avoid using semicolon."
    regex = ";"
Pronouns

Third-person personal pronouns

Third-person personal pronouns are:

- he/him/his
- she/her/her(s)
- they/them/their(s)

**Note:** While some people consider *they/them/their* to be non-standard (or "incorrect") as third-person singular, it has gained wide use as a gender-neutral or gender-ambiguous alternative to *he* or *she*.

There are two issues with personal pronouns:

- gender bias
- clarity

To avoid gender bias, the third person gender-neutral *they/them/their(s)* is preferred over *he* or *she* pronouns when writing about abstract individuals.

**Wrong**

The enumerator uses his device.

**Right**

The enumerator uses their device.

Unfortunately, *they/them/their* is not a perfect solution. Since it is conventionally used as a plural pronoun, it can cause confusion.

Therefore, avoid the use of personal pronouns whenever possible. They are often out of place in technical writing anyway. Rewriting passages to avoid personal pronouns often makes the writing more clear.
Correct

When using Collect, first the enumerator opens the app on their device. Then they complete the survey.

Better

To use Collect:

- open the app
- complete the survey

```python
@memoize
def check_pronoun(text):
    """Avoid using third-person personal pronouns.""
    err = "style-guide.personal-pronoun"
    msg = "Avoid using third-person personal pronouns like \"he\", \"she\". In case of absolute need, prefer using \"they\"."
    list = ['he', 'him', 'his', 'she', 'her', 'hers']

    return existence_check(text, list, err, msg, ignore_case=True)

"Same"

Same, when used as an impersonal pronoun, is non-standard in Modern American English. It should be avoided.

Wrong

ODK Collect is an Android app. The same can be used for...
28.3. Docs Style Guide

Right

ODK Collect is an Android app. It can be used for...

Right

ODK Collect is an Android app that is used to...

```python
@memoize
def check_same(text):
    """Avoid using impersonal pronoun same."""
    err = "style-guide.check-same"
    msg = "Avoid using \"The same\"."
    regex = "\ . The same"

    return existence_check(text, [regex], err, msg, ignore_case=False,
                             require_padding=False)
```

Titles

Title case and sentence case

Document titles should be in **Title Case** – that is, all meaningful words are to be capitalized. Section titles should use **Sentence case** – that is, only the first word should be capitalized, along with any proper nouns or other words usually capitalized in a sentence.

Verb forms

If a document or section describes a procedure that someone might do, use a verb ending in *-ing*. (That is, a **gerund**.) Do not use the ”How to…” construction.

Wrong

```
How to install ODK Collect
---------------------------
```
Right

**Installing ODK Collect**
------------------------

If section title is a directive to do something (for example, as a step in a procedure), use an imperative.

**Installing ODK Aggregate**
--------------------------

Download ODK Aggregate
----------------------

Section content here.

```python
@memoize
def check_howto(text):
    """Avoid using how to construct.""
    err = "style-guide.check-howto"
    msg = "Avoid using \"How to\" construction."
    regex = "(How to.*)(\n([=\-\"]\*\{3,\})"
    return existence_check(text, [regex], err, msg, require_padding=False)
```

**Section labels**

Section titles should almost always be preceded by labels.

The only exception is very short subsections that repeat — like the **Right** and **Wrong** titles in this document or the **XLSForm Rows** and **XForm XML** sections in the **Question Types** document.

In these cases, you may want to use the **rubric** directive.

```python
def check_label(text):
    """Prefer giving a section label.""
    err = "style-guide.check-label"
    msg = "Add a section label if required."
    regex = r"(.*\n((=\-\"]\*\{3,\})\n(\[\[=\-\"]\*\{3,\})\n(\[\[=\-\"]\*\{3,\})"
    errors = []
    sym_list = [',', '--', '-,-', '***', '\\']
    is_doc_title = True
```
for matchobj in re.finditer(regex, text):
    if is_doc_title:
        is_doc_title = False
        continue
    label = matchobj.group(1)
    start = matchobj.start()+1
    end = matchobj.end()
    (row, col) = line_and_column(text, start)
    row = row + 2
    if any(word in text.splitlines(True)[row] for word in sym_list):
        row = row - 1
    col = 0
    extent = matchobj.end() - matchobj.start()
    catches = tuple(re.finditer(r'\.. _', label))
    if not len(catches):
        errors += [(err, msg, row, col, start, end, extent, "warning", "None")]
return errors

Other titling considerations

- Do not put step numbers in section titles.
- Readers skim. Section titles should be clear and provide information.

28.3.2 Writing code and writing about code

ODK Documentation includes code samples in a number of languages. Make sure to follow generally accepted coding style for each language.

Indenting

In code samples:

- Use spaces, not tabs.
- Two spaces for logical indents in most languages.
  - Python samples must use four spaces per indent level.
- Strive for clarity. Sometimes nonstandard indentation, especially when combined with non-syntactic line breaks, makes things easier to read.
Make sure that line breaks and indentation stay within the valid syntax of the language.

Using two spaces keeps code sample lines shorter, which makes them easier to view.

**Example of indenting for clarity**

```
HTTP/1.0 401 Unauthorized
Server: HTTPd/0.9
Date: Sun, 10 Apr 2005 20:26:47 GMT
WWW-Authenticate: Digest realm="testrealm@host.com",
                   qop="auth,auth-int",
                   nonce="dcd98b7102dd2f0e8b11d0f600bf0c093",
                   opaque="5ccc069c403ebaf9f0171e9517f40e41"
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 311
```

**Meaningful names**

When writing sample code, avoid meaningless names.

**Wrong**

```
def myFunction(foo):
    for bar in foo:
        bar[foo] = foo[spam] + spam[foo]
    return foobar
```

**XML and HTML**

Some of the terms often used to describe XML and HTML code structures are imprecise or confusing. For clarity, we restrict certain terms and uses.

Likewise, coding practices and styles for XML and HTML vary widely. For the sake of clarity and consistency, samples should follow the guidelines set forth here.

**Element**

The following piece of code represents an **element**: 
Note: An element is not a block or a tag.

- Tag is defined below.
- Block has a specific meaning in HTML and XML templates, and should generally be avoided outside those contexts.

Tag

A tag is the token that begins or ends an element.

```html
<element> <!-- The opening tag of this element. -->
  Some content.
</element> <!-- The closing tag. -->
```

The word tag has often been used to refer to the entire element. For clarity, we will avoid that here.

Node

The word node is often used interchangeably with element.

For clarity, we make the following distinction:

- An HTML or XML document has elements, not nodes.
- A node is part of a ”live” DOM tree or other dynamic representation.
  - An XML or HTML element becomes an element node in a DOM tree.
  - There are also other types of nodes in a DOM tree.

Attributes and values

An element may have attributes. Attributes have values. Values are wrapped in straight double-quotes.

```html
<element attribute="value">
  Content.
</element>
```
Other names for attributes, such as *variables* or *properties*, should be avoided.

**Element content**

The code between the opening and closing tags of an element is the content. Content can include other elements, which are called *child elements*.

```xml
<element>
  Content.
  <child-element>
    More content.
  </child-element>
</element>
```

When an element is empty, it can be called a *null element*.

```xml
<null-element attribute="value" />
```

In XML, null element tags always self-close. This is not the case in HTML.

- HTML elements that are always null (for example, `<img>`) do not need to be self-closed.
- Empty HTML elements that normally accept content have a separate closing tag.

```html
<img src="awesome-picture.jpeg">
<script src="some-javascript.js"></script>
```

**Capitalization**

For all HTML samples, tag names and attribute names should be all *lowercase*. Newly-written XML examples should also be all *lowercase*. XML examples that show actual code generated by tools in the ODK ecosystem should replicate that code exactly, regardless of its capitalization practice.
28.3.3 ODK jargon

ODK and ODK Docs

Wrong

- Odk
- odk
- OpenDataKit
- the ODK
- ODK docs
- ODK documentation

Right

- ODK
- getodk
- ODK Docs
- ODK Documentation

Probably want to avoid...

- ODK Documentation

```python
@memoize
def check_odkspell(text):
    """ODK spelling usage.""
    err = "style-guide.spelling-odk"
    msg = "ODK spell check. '{0}' is the preferred usage."

    preferences = [
        ["ODK",       ["OpenDataKit"]],
        ["ODK",       ["Odk"]],
        ["ODK",       [{0} odk]],
        ["ODK Docs",  ["ODK docs"]],
        ["ODK Documentation", ["ODK documentation"]]
    ]
```
ODK app and project names

ODK includes a number of components, including:

- Collect
- Aggregate
- Briefcase

These should always be capitalized.

The ODK prefix (as in, ODK Collect) should be used the first time a document mentions the app or project, or any other time it would be unclear.

A few projects should always use the ODK prefix:

- ODK XForm
- ODK Javarosa
- ODK Docs

XForms and XLSForm

- XForms refers to XML-encoded forms.
- XLSForm refers to a spreadsheet format used to define forms.

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
28.3. Docs Style Guide

Wrong

- Xforms
- X-Forms
- xforms
- XFORMS
- XForm (no s, when referring to the specification)
- xlsform
- XLSForm
- Xlsform

Right

- XForms
- an Xform (when referring to a single form)
- XLSForm

@memoize
def check_formspell(text):
    """ODK spelling usage.""
    err = "style-guide.spelling-odk"
    msg = "ODK spell check. '{}' is the preferred usage."

    preferences = [
        ["XForms", ["Xforms"]],
        ["XForms", ["X-Forms"]],
        ["XForms", ["{0} xforms"]],
        ["XForms", ["XFORMS"]],
        ["an XForm", ["a XForm"]],
        ["an XLSForm", ["a XLSForm"]],
        ["XLSForm", ["{0} xlsform"]],
        ["XLSForm", ["XLSform"]],
        ["XLSForm", ["Xlsform"]]
    ]

    return preferred_forms_check(text, preferences, err, msg, ignore_case=False)
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

XForms Spec, XForms Tools, XForms

XForms can refer to:

- The XML-based form format
- The official XForms specification from the W3C
- The ODK XForms Specification, which is a subset of the full W3C recommendation.
- The general idea of an XML-based form.

XForm (without an s) refers to:

- A specific XML document that encodes a form.

When writing about any of these things, make sure you are clear — in your mind as well as in your writing — which one you are talking about.

XLSForm

XLSForm can refer to:

- The XLSForm format for describing form in an Excel spreadsheet
- A spreadsheet file that describes a form using the format.
- A tool for converting *.xls(x) files to XForm documents.

When writing about any of these things, make sure you are clear — in your mind as well as in your writing — which one you are talking about.

28.4 Docs Developer Guide

This document is for contributors working on the design, templating, deployment, or development of the ODK Docs website.

28.4.1 Tech Overview

ODK Docs uses:

- Sphinx, a static-site generator written in Python

  Sphinx uses:
  - Docutils for parsing reStructuredText
  - Jinja for templating
• sphinx_rtd_theme, a Sphinx theme/template
  sphinx_rtd_theme uses:
  – JQuery, a JavaScript library
• Proselint for style testing
• git and GitHub for version control
• CircleCI for testing and deployment
• Amazon S3 for hosting

28.4.2 Custom HTML templating

ODK Docs uses the sphinx_rtd_theme, with some minor customizations.

ODK-specific versions of HTML/Jinja templates are in _templates. Any file in that directory will override the file of the same name in the sphinx_rtd_theme source.

So, to customize a portion of the HTML template, copy the source file from sphinx_rtd_theme and then edit it.

Please commit the copied file unchanged before editing, so that it is easy to track what you have changed.

28.4.3 Custom JavaScript

Custom JavaScript should be added in src/_static/js/custom.js. Comment your code with an explanation of what the JS accomplishes, and a reference to the issue number you are working on.

The ODK Docs template includes JQuery, so you can use it in your custom JS.

28.4.4 Custom CSS

Custom CSS should be added in src/_static/css/custom.css. Comment your code with an explanation of what the CSS accomplishes and a reference to the issue number you are working on.

For example:

```javascript
/* Example CSS PR #xyz */

div[class~='example'] {  
  color: black;  
}
```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
It is helpful to keep the CSS file organized. There are several sections in the `custom.css` file:

- Styling for rst roles and directives
- Responsive CSS
- Styling for JS implementation
- Utility classes

Each of these sections are enclosed in start and end comments. Add your code to the relevant section. If you don’t find any section relevant, add a new section and add your code there.

For example:

```css
/* New section starts */
/* Example CSS PR #xyz */

div[class~='example'] {
    color: black;
}

/* New section ends */
```

### 28.4.5 Style Guide checks

Proselint is used for style testing the docs. Apart from the built-in tests in proselint, custom checks are added for style guide testing. Following a literate programming model, style checks are defined in `docs-style-guide.rst`. After each style rule, you can define a python code-block containing the code for style testing. When the style-test script is run, these python code-blocks are parsed to generate a testing script.

**Proselint dependent checks**

In most of the custom checks, a new function is written that calls one of the built-in proselint functions as a return value.

All the checks use a decorator `memoize()` to cache the check for faster execution.

```python
memoize()

Use @memoize above function definition to cache the result.
```

Proselint provides several functions for defining style tests:
existence_check(text, list, err, msg, ignore_case=True, str=False, max_errors=float("inf"), offset=0, require_padding=True, dotall=False, excluded_topics=None, join=False)

To check for existence of a regex pattern(s) in the text. The parameters offset, excluded_topics and join are not needed for style guide testing.

Parameters

- **text (str)** – Text to be checked
- **list (list)** – List of regex expressions
- **err (str)** – Name of the test
- **msg (str)** – Error or warning message
- **ignore_case (bool)** – For using re.IGNORECASE
- **str (bool)** – For using re.UNICODE
- **max_errors (float)** – Maximum number of errors to be generated
- **require_padding (bool)** – To use padding with the specified regex
  (It is better to set it as False and specify the regex accordingly)
- **dotall (bool)** – For using re.DOTALL

Returns The error list consisting of error tuples: [(start, end, err, msg, replacement)].

Return type list

preferred_forms_check(text, list, err, msg, ignore_case=True, offset=0, max_errors=float("inf"))

To suggest a preferred form of the word used. The parameter offset is not needed for style guide testing.

Parameters

- **text (str)** – Text to be checked
- **list (list)** – list of comparison (words or regex): [correct form, incorrect form]
- **err (str)** – Name of the test
- **msg (str)** – Error or warning message
- **ignore_case (bool)** – For using re.IGNORECASE
- **max_errors (float)** – Maximum number of errors to be generated

Returns The error list consisting of error tuples: [(start, end, err, msg, replacement)].

Return type list
consistency_check(text, word_pairs, err, msg, offset=0)
   To check for consistency for the given word pairs. The parameters offset is not needed for style guide testing.

Parameters
   • text (str) – Text to be checked
   • word_pairs (list) – Word pairs to be checked for consistency
   • err (str) – Name of the test
   • msg (str) – Error or warning message

Returns The error list consisting of error tuples: [(start, end, err, msg, replacement)].

Return type list

Note: The checker functions are used by the built-in proselint function lint() to generate an error list of different format. The returned list finally is: [(check, message, line, column, start, end, end - start, "warning", replacements)]

See also:
   Proselint source code

Example Usage

```python
@memoize
def example(text):
    """Example check.""
    err = "style-guide.example"
    msg = "A demonstration for writing checks."
    regex = "[\./?\!](example)"

    return existence_check(text, [regex], err, msg, ignore_case=False, require_padding=False)
```

When you define code-blocks which use built-in proselint testing, specify the class style-checks.

```python
.. code-block:: python
   :class: style-checks
```

The generated file after parsing code for style checks is style-checks.py.
If the test is too large to be defined in the file `docs-style-guide.rst`, you can use a snippet from the test (as here). The code-blocks for such snippets should specify the class `proselint-extra-checks`. Define the complete test in the file `/style-guide/proselint-extra-checks.py`.

**Independent checks**

Apart from the checks, which are to be run through proselint, you can add extra checks to be run independently. They are not enabled in `proselintrc` as well. For example, the checks for finding quote marks and section labels do not use any built-in functions to obtain an error list.

**Example Usage**

```python
def check_quotes(text):
    """Avoid using straight quotes."""
    err = "style-guide.check-quote"
    msg = "Avoid using quote marks."
    regex = r"\[a-zA-Z0-9 \]{1,15}\"
    errors = []
    for matchobj in re.finditer(regex, text):
        start = matchobj.start()+1
        end = matchobj.end()
        (row, col) = line_and_column(text, start)
        extent = matchobj.end()-matchobj.start()
        errors += [(err, msg, row, col, start, end, extent, "warning", "None")]
    return errors
```

The code-blocks for extra checks should specify the class `extra-checks`. The generated file after parsing code for extra checks is `extra-checks.py`.

**Note:** Built-in proselint function `line_and_column()` is used with extra checks to obtain the row and column of the matched text.

`line_and_column(text, start)`

To find the line number and column of a position in a string.

**Parameters**

- `text (str)` – Text to be searched for
• **start** (*int*) – Starting position of matched pattern

**Returns** Tuple containing row and column number

**Return type** tuple

---

**Error vs warning**

- Warnings are intended to provide guidance to authors.
- Errors enforce "hard" rules, and raising an error will stop the build.

You can classify the result of a check as an error if you are sure that no false positives would be produced. The checks classified as errors should return a replacement for fixing the errors. Proselint dependent checks which use the function `preferred_forms_check()` or `consistency_check()` always return a preferred form. If you create an independent check which generates an error make sure to return a replacement in the error list.

To generate an error from a check, specify the check name in the list of errors in the function `get_errlist()` in the file `style-test.py`.

**Excluding built-in proselint checks**

To exclude an built-in proselint check, specify the check name in the check list in the function `exclude_checks()` in the file `style-test.py`.

---

**28.5 Tips for Making Good Contributions**

**28.5.1 Smallest meaningful PR**

A PR should normally address one issue. This makes it easier to review, easier to deploy, and easier to roll back in case of a problem. Additionally, the smaller the PR, the less likely it is to create a merge issue.

The exception is when several issues are closely related or can reasonably be worked on together. In this case, it should be clear by looking at the conversation on the Github issues that the items are related and will be worked on together. Your PR message should also make it clear which issues are being worked on, and whether the PR closes the issues or not. Mention the PR by number:

addresses #123

Closes #123
28.5.2 Descriptive PR names

A PR title should answer the question, "What does this Pull Request do?"

Good PR titles:
- adds a video directive
- makes navigation buttons responsive
- swaps placement of nav buttons and file an issue note

Bad PR titles:
- fix issue
- fix #123
- collect

28.5.3 Small, atomic commits

When working locally, commit often. Don’t wait until you have 100 lines of changes across multiple files.

- If you need to copy or move a large section or file, commit that change before also editing it.
- If you have to create a new template file based on an existing template file, copy the file in one commit and then work on the changes. This makes it easier to know what you actually did.
- If writing a new doc, commits after each new section are a good idea.

Commit messages should answer the question, "What does this commit do?"

Small, well-named commits will help you keep track of your own work and make rollbacks and other changes easier to deal with.

28.5.4 Discuss issues before working

Take the time to clarify the needs and scope of an issue before committing to work on it. Especially for coding tasks, make sure you state your understanding and your plan before working.

If you have a question, ask. Don’t guess.

Note: Many new contributors don’t ask questions because they are worried about appearing under informed. Please set this worry aside.
You will never be judged harshly for asking clarifying questions or for seeking more information.

### 28.5.5 Claim issues

If you decide to work on an issue, let the community know you are working on it by *claiming* the issue.

@getodk-bot claim

Once you’ve claimed an issue, other people won’t work on it. So make sure you’re actually going to work on it before claiming it.

Don’t claim more than one or two open issues at a time.

### 28.5.6 Share work in progress

It can be helpful to share your in-progress work. To mark a PR as a work in progress, append `WIP:` to the beginning of the PR title. We will not merge `WIP` PRs, and we won’t do a review on them unless you ask.

If you want a review, comment, opinion, or help on a `WIP` PR, please tag the relevant person in the PR comments.

If you finish the work and want the PR to be merged, you do not need to open a new one. Just edit the PR title.

### 28.5.7 If you get stuck while working

- Ask for help in the issue comments. Maybe you can get back on track and complete the issue.
  - Asking questions is always better than guessing.

- Submit a `WIP` (work in progress) pull request.
  - If we can see what progress you have made, it is easier to offer help.
  - Even if you don’t complete the task, perhaps someone else can pull in your in-progress work and build on it.
  - Sometimes your in-progress work is an improvement over not having it, and so we’ll merge in something even if it isn’t complete.

- If you really cannot move forward, it is okay to abandon an issue.
28.5. Tips for Making Good Contributions

It is okay to abandon an issue

Sometimes you simply cannot complete work you have said you were going to complete. This could happen because you don’t have all the required skills or knowledge to complete the work, or because the issue cannot actually be completed as scoped, or because you don’t have the time.

Please let the community know in the issue discussion.

@getodk-bot unclaim

This way, everyone knows that someone else can take up the project (or that we need to rethink it).

If you did significant work on a project before abandoning it, consider filing a WIP (work in progress) PR, so that others can see what you did and potentially build off of it. (Be sure to mention the issue, so the work is easy to find later.)

28.5.8 If an issue takes a long time to complete

For our purposes, a "long time" is a week or more, from when you first announce your intention to work on something until submitting a merge-ready PR.

An issue might take a long time because:

- it is complex and requires lots of hours
- you only have a short period of time each day to work on it
- you are new to the project and are having to learn as you go

The thing that matters is: Are you actively working on the issue, and making progress, at least a little bit?

If you are actively working on it, we do not want someone else to jump on and try to work on it at the same time. So please keep the community informed of your work by filing a WIP (work in progress) PR and committing to it as you work.

28.5.9 Issues only

All PRs must be directly connected to open issues. PRs should not represent suggestions, good ideas, or independent initiative.

If you have a good idea, file an issue. If you are curious about whether something should be an issue, chat with one of the core team in the #docs-code channel on the Slack.

Once you have filed an issue, wait for comment and approval before diving into the work. We do not want surprise PRs.
28.5.10 Actually install and use ODK or other tools

You cannot write effectively about tools you have not used. If you’re going to write or edit documentation about any of the apps in the ODK ecosystem, you need to spend some time actually using it.

Before diving into writing documentation, try out the core tools here https://getodk.org/software and become familiar with them.

This is also true of writing about Sphinx or any of our documentation build tools. Reading existing documentation is not enough to write about something.

And actually do the thing

If you are writing about a specific process (installing an application, for example), you need to actually complete the process yourself. If possible, follow your own instructions after writing them to make sure they make sense.

28.5.11 Always build locally

Before submitting a PR, run the build locally to make sure you do not produce any errors or warnings. We do not accept PRs that produce errors or warnings.

It is best to run the build frequently as you work. You’ll often catch simple mistakes that are harder to track down later.

28.5.12 You are not an impostor

Impostor syndrome is the feeling that you are not good enough or accomplished enough to do the work you are doing.

We all feel this way sometimes, and that’s okay. But it is important to realize that you are not an impostor.

You can contribute to this community, no matter your background or skills.

- If there is something you don’t know how to do, you can ask.
  - If it is issue related, ask on the issue.
  - If it is more general, try the #docs-code channel in the ODK Developer Slack.
- If you want to try something even though you aren’t sure you can do it, go ahead and try.

Another worry you may have is that something will take you a long time when an ”expert” might be able to do it quickly. You may feel, then, you aren’t the ”right person” for the
job. But if you are the only one with the time or desire to work on something, you are the right person to work on it.

28.6 Working with Docs in Windows using Cygwin

The main contribution guide :doc: contributing was built for *nix systems, and the same commands may not work in Windows. Cygwin is a Windows tool, equivalent to *nix bash terminal. This guide helps to set up ODK Docs platform from the default Windows command prompt (CMD).

28.6.1 The prerequisites

The following are software tools that you need in the first place. If it is already installed. Just follow the steps and apply what is missing.

- Cygwin
- Python 3
- Virtualenv
- Virtualenvwrapper-win
- Git and GLFS

28.6.2 The requirements

These are a set of the main packages. ODK team combined them in a file such that all will be installed at once.

- alabaster==0.7.10
- Babel==2.4.0
- docutils==0.13.1
- imagesize==0.7.1
- Jinja2==2.9.6
- MarkupSafe==1.0
- Pygments==2.2.0
- pytz==2017.2
- requests==2.14.2
- six==1.10.0

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 28. Contributing to ODK Docs

- snowballstemmer==1.2.1
- Sphinx==1.6.1
- sphinx-rtd-theme==0.2.4
- sphinxcontrib-websupport==1.0.1
- typing==3.6.1
- update==0.4.4

Install Cygwin

Cygwin tool lets Windows users execute many *nix commands. Install Cygwin and add its path to Windows to work completely from the default command prompt. For instructions.

**Warning:** If you encounter any downloading problems, make sure to select a mirror site near you. The entire list is available on the Cygwin website.

Python 3

You need to install Python 3. Select Python installation that fits your system (32 or 64 bit). For instructions, see.

Make sure to select the option "Add Python to the Path", as shown below.
Next, make sure to select "pip", which is a package manager <https://pypi.python.org/pypi/pip> written in Python. We will use it to install packages. See the following image:

Alternatively, if you forgot to add Python 3 to the PATH, add it manually using the following
command:

> set PATH=%PATH%;C:\Users\your username\python3

Tip: C:/Users/your username/python3 is the default Python 3 installation PATH. If you change it, please substitute the above path by the new one.

Virtual Environment

A virtual environment tool creates multiple Pythons environments, each has its packages and dependencies.

For easy installation, pip command can be used, which comes with Python 3 (as shown in Python installation).

> pip install virtualenv

Create a new directory for your odkdocs work:

> mkdir odk

To work with virtualenv, you have two options:

- Use the native virtualenv.
- Use virtualenvwrapper on the top of virtualenv.

Native Virtual Environment

Create a new Python 3 virtual environment, ”odkenv” is the name of the virtualenv, you can choose any name.

> virtualenv -p <python path/python.exe> odkenv

After creating the virtualenv, multiple files are copied into the folder odkenv in your working directory.

> ls odkenv

The folder Scripts contains all virtualenv controls as ”.bat” files.

To activate the odkenv:
28.6. Working with Docs in Windows using Cygwin

> cd odkenv

> cd Scripts

> odk/odkenv/Scripts/activate.bat

To deactivate the odkenv:

> odk/odkenv/Scripts/deactivate.bat

Virtual Environment Wrapper

**Tip:** This step is not an alternative to virtualenv. You must install virtualenv first.

The [Virtualenvwrapper](https://pypi.python.org/pypi/virtualenvwrapper-win) mediates between user CMD and virtualenv to ease management and working with multiple virtual environments. To install virtualenvwrapper, use the following:

> pip install virtualenvwrapper-win

Create a new virtualenv:

> mkvirtualenv odkenv

Once the odkenv is created, it is automatically activated:

(odkenv) /odk/docs

To deactivate the odkenv, write:

> deactivate

To activate the odkenv:

> workon odkenv

Git and GLFS

- Install [Git for windows](https://docs.getodk.org). Make sure that git is installed properly by typing (git) in the CMD.
• Install GLFS.

Android Tools

Install Android Debug Bridge <collect-adb> to learn more about ADB. ADB is part of Android studio. To download

To use ADB, you must run Android Studio once. The default location of ADB is C:/Users/your_username/AppData/Local/Android/sdk/platform-tools. Add it to Windows PATH by using the following command:

```
set PATH=%PATH%;C:\Users\your_username\AppData\Local\Android\sdk\platform-tools
```

Fork and Clone the ODK Docs repo

From Github, fork the ODK Docs. This will create a copy of the docs in your Github account called origin. Move to the ODk working directory, and clone the ODk Docs into your local machine.

```
> git clone https://github.com/your-github-username/docs.git
```

Set the Upstream Remote

```
> git remote add upstream https://github.com/getodk/docs.git
```

28.6.3 Install the Requirements

This step will install a bunch of packages that are listed in the :file: requirement.txt file. ODK team prepared this file for you to ease the installation.

First, you need to activate your virtual environment (odkenv):

```
> workon odkenv
```

Make sure you are inside the docs folder, then run:

```
$ pip install -r requirements.txt
```

You completed the installation and you can start change and build ODK Docs.
OpenRosa is a set of communication standards for moving blank forms and completed form instances between server applications (like ODK Aggregate) and clients (like ODK Collect). They were originally worked on by the OpenRosa WorkGroup, and they were an outgrowth of the JavaRosa project. The working group is no longer active. However, many apps within the ODK ecosystem (including Collect and Aggregate) continue to implement the API.

This set of docs is intended to provide information about the OpenRosa standards, for use by developers working on applications that communicate with other applications within the ODK ecosystem.

### 29.1 OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

OpenRosa 1.0 APIs were formally approved by the OpenRosa Working Group in December of 2011. To be considered “OpenRosa 1.0 Compliant,” a system must implement all 5 of the OpenRosa 1.0 APIs.

#### 29.1.1 Metadata Scheme

This document details the metadata scheme for OpenRosa-compliant XForms. This metadata is used to ensure that critical or extremely useful data pertaining to the XForms and submissions made by client devices is captured and stored.

There are two types of metadata in a form submission.

- Form metadata — Data about the identity and version of the XForm used to create the data being submitted.
- Submission metadata — Data about the submission itself.
Blank Form Metadata

A blank form must have two pieces of identifying metadata. These are provided as attributes in the top-level element inside `<model/instance>`.

```xml
<model>
  
  
  <instance>
    <form-name id="getodk.org:all-widgets" version="2.1.30">
      
    </form-name>
  </instance>
</model>
```

Two attributes are required. One provides the unique identity of the form, the other provides the current version number.

Form Identity

One of:
- `id`
- `xmlns`

These values should be in the form of `scheme:value`.

If specified, the `id` value takes precedence over any explicit `xmlns` declaration.

For `id`, the implementer’s registered domain name should be used as part of the scheme (for example: `getodk.org:widgetForm`).

Compliant systems MUST support `id` or `xmlns` lengths up to 249 chars; ideally, servers SHOULD be able to support arbitrary lengths.

Version

A string value indicating the version number of the form.
- MUST support a string value (not a number), to indicate an increment.
- SHOULD support any string schema.
- MUST support arbitrary strings up to 249 characters
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

- SHOULD support arbitrary-length strings

The value of version MUST be incremented when any part of the form changes.
If version is not present, it is handled as NULL.

Completed Form Metadata

In a completed form, metadata is provided in a <meta> element inside the <model> element.

```
<model>
  ...
  ...
  <meta>
    <instanceID>
      uuid:ca90905c-a2db-11e7-abc4-cec278b6b50a
    </instanceID>
    <userID>
      openid:http://www.google.com/profiles/adam.michael.wood
    </userID>
  </meta>
</model>
```

Fields

The only required element in the form submission metadata is <instanceID>, which must be a universally unique string identifying this specific submission.

Optional fields:

- <timeStart> — An ISO 8601 timestamp of when form entry started.
- <timeEnd> — An ISO 8601 timestamp of when form entry ended.
- <userID> — A unique identifier of the submitting user.
- <deviceID> — A unique identifier of device used to generate the submission.
- <deprecatedID> — the <instanceID> of the submission for which this is a revision. Server software can use this field to unify multiple revisions to a submission into a consolidated submission record.

ID field formatting

ID fields (<instanceID>, <userID>, etc.) must follow the format scheme:id.
Recommended ID schemes

instanceID, deprecatedID uuid

userID mailto
  openid
deviceID mac
  uuid

If you implement a custom ID scheme, it should be prefixed with your domain name, to ensure uniqueness.

<instanceID>getodk.org:123456789</instanceID>

ID Field Constraints

- The combined scheme:value keypair MUST be no longer than 249 characters (ie, so that varchar(249) can be used).
  - A robust Server SHOULD be able to support an arbitrary length ID, however.
- Only ONE of each type of ID element can be included in a form submitted to the server. That is, only one deviceID, one userID, one instanceID, and one deprecatedID.
  - Each ID element MUST have one and only one scheme:value pair.

Defining expected submission metadata in the blank form

The blank form MUST specify which of the metadata fields are expected when the completed form is submitted. This is done within a <meta> element having the namespace http://openrosa.org/xforms. The <meta> appears inside the child node of the Primary Instance (the first instance element inside <model>).

```
<model>
  <instance>
    <data xmlns:orx="http://openrosa.org/xforms"
      id="example.org:myFormId"
      version="1"/>
    <orx:meta>
      <orx:timeStart/>
      <orx:timeEnd/>
      <orx:instanceID/>
    </orx:meta>
  </instance>
</model>
```
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

Examples

Blank form metadata

```xml
<?xml version='1.0'?><data version="1" xmlns:orx="http://openrosa.org/xforms" xmlns="http://example.org/meta">
<orx:meta>
  <orx:deviceID/>
  <orx:timeStart>2010-08-12T04:08:29.765-5:00</orx:timeStart>
  <orx:timeEnd>2010-08-12T04:10:23.062-5:00</orx:timeEnd>
  <orx:instanceID>
    uuid.dimagi.org:GEPSJLOGH13TY8L77066GEJJW
  </orx:instanceID>
  <orx:userID>chwid.dimagi.org:Akende</orx:userID>
</orx:meta>
</data>
</instance>
</model>
</h:head>
```

Form submission metadata

```xml
<?xml version='1.0'?><data version="1" xmlns:orx="http://openrosa.org/xforms" xmlns="http://example.org/meta">
<orx:meta>
  <orx:deviceID>uuid:38DN0236SAKWJQBNQB3XJ19RW</orx:deviceID>
  <orx:timeStart>2010-08-12T04:08:29.765-5:00</orx:timeStart>
  <orx:timeEnd>2010-08-12T04:10:23.062-5:00</orx:timeEnd>
  <orx:instanceID>uuid.dimagi.org:GEPSJLOGH13TY8L77066GEJJW</orx:instanceID>
  <orx:userID>chwid.dimagi.org:Akende</orx:userID>
</orx:meta>
</data>
</instance>
</model>
</h:head>
```

Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
Chapter 29. OpenRosa

29.1.2 HTTP Requests and Responses

Much of OpenRosa communication comes in the form of HTTP requests and responses. In order to properly maintain appropriate formatting and compatibility over time, it is ideal for some information to be consistently provided on both sides of these interactions.

HTTP Requests

HTTP requests (GET, POST) should contain the following headers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accept-Language</td>
<td>The key for what language a response is expected in.</td>
<td>No. Response acceptable in any locale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-OpenRosa-Version</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>The date on the device in format: Mon, 14 Feb 2011 16:48:15 GMT</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HTTP Requests may additionally specify whether the item count is to be included in the response envelope. This is done with a query parameter added to the URI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arg</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>items</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HTTP Responses

Servers should include the following headers in all responses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-OpenRosa-Version</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>The date on the server in the format: Mon, 14 Feb 2011 16:48:15 GMT</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

When a response is issued from an OpenRosa server, the format of the response payload will often be defined by the specific API (Form List, for instance). However, APIs which are fundamentally transactional (user registration, form submission, etc) all contain similar semantics. As such, they will utilize a shared XML Envelope of the format:

```xml
<OpenRosaResponse xmlns="http://openrosa.org/http/response" items=""/> <!--items: Optional number of how many payloads are included in this envelope -->
  <message nature=""/> <!--0 or 1: message payload to be displayed to the user. Nature is an optional tag -->
  <Registration xmlns="http://example.org/user/registration"/> <!--to group messages by type -->
  ... Some platform specific response ...-->
</OpenRosaResponse>
```

For Example:

```xml
<OpenRosaResponse xmlns="http://openrosa.org/http/response" items="3">
  <message nature="submit_success">Some message to be displayed to the user</message>
  <Registration xmlns="http://example.org/user/registration"/>
</OpenRosaResponse>
```

APIs using this response can then include their namespaced payload inside of the response. This response should be handled by the client the same way, regardless of the specific submission. That is, any time an OpenRosa response envelope is received, any of its payloads should be parsed properly.

Any responses included in the envelope that are unrecognized by the client should be ignored without error.

Since the server cannot receive confirmation that a response was successfully retrieved, any responses included in the envelope should be considered idempotent.

The message component of a response envelope should be returned (if possible) in the language specified by the `Accept-Language` header. The `nature` attribute of a message is an optional ID which can be used to categorize the type of a response. If the `nature` of two messages is identical in a bulk operation, for instance, the assumption is that only one of them need be presented to a user (presumably the newest).

As an example, if a server submits 4 xforms, and receives the responses

```xml
<OpenRosaResponse xmlns="http://openrosa.org/http/response">
  <message nature="submit_success">Thanks, you've submitted 4 forms today</message>
  ...</OpenRosaResponse>
```
A client could present a message like:

**Bulk Submit Completed**
- Thanks, you’ve submitted 6 forms today
- User ’paul’ created successfully!

### 29.1.3 Authentication API

This standard specifies the Request and Response format through which OpenRosa compliant servers authorize HTTP transactions.

**Overview**

This API provides a standard means with which OpenRosa clients are authenticated with compliant servers.

OpenRosa compliant devices MUST support both:
- the subset of RFC2617 Digest Authentication defined below
- the Basic Authentication mechanism also outlined in RFC2617.

OpenRosa compliant servers MUST support at least one of either:
- the subset of RFC2617 Digest Authentication defined below
- the Basic Authentication mechanism also outlined in RFC2617.
We are following RFC2617 with additional OpenRosa compliance requirements defined in the implementation section below to ensure that the Digest Authentication implementations across devices do not compromise security and that they all implement a well-defined common subset of the RFC2617 Digest Authentication mechanism.

**Data Security Considerations**

Any communication over HTTP (vs. HTTPS) can be observed by others and is susceptible to man-in-the-middle attacks (where a malicious intermediary inserts itself between the client and the server the client intended to contact). As a consequence, if communication is over HTTP, clients may be submitting their form data to a malicious intermediary. That intermediary will see the full contents of the form submission. Additionally, the intermediary may never forward the submission to the intended server — the client can never be certain that the submitted data has been recorded on the intended server.

HTTPS requires that the server be configured with an SSL certificate issued by a signing authority. Man-in-the-middle attacks are possible over HTTPS if clients do not authenticate the server’s SSL certificate (or, less commonly, if the client device or signing authority has been compromised).

OpenRosa compliant client devices MUST authenticate server certificates when establishing HTTPS channels to those servers.

Because client communications are often through unsecured hotspots, it is recommended that HTTPS (with the authentication of server certificates) be used for all communications.

**Typical Interaction**

A typical transaction consists of the following steps.

1. The client asks for a resource that requires authentication but does not provide a user name and password. Typically this is because the user simply entered the address or followed a link to the page.

2. The server responds with the 401 response code, either requesting Digest Authentication and providing the authentication realm and a randomly-generated, single-use value called a nonce, or requesting Basic Authentication (in which case the server should also redirect and negotiate TLS channel security (https) if the client is not already communicating over https).

3. At this point, the client will present the authentication realm (typically a description of the computer or system being accessed) to the user and prompt for a user name and password. The user may decide to cancel at this point.

4. Once a user name and password have been supplied, the client re-sends the same request but adds an authentication header that includes the response code.
5. Assuming the username and password are valid, the server accepts the authentication and the page is returned. If the user name is invalid and/or the password is incorrect, the server might return the 401 response code and the client would prompt the user again.

**Note:** A client may already have the required user name and password without needing to prompt the user; for example, if they have previously been stored by a client.

For Basic Authentication, the "response" value is simply a base-64 compression of the user name concatenated with ":" and the plain-text password, as specified in RFC2617.

**Warning:** Anyone with a network sniffer could read this value, decompress it, and obtain the user name and password. Hence, it is critical that this information only be transmitted over HTTPS or some other secure transport.

Even with HTTPS, sending this is not a highly secure practice.

For Digest Authentication, the "response" value is calculated in three steps, as follows. Where values are combined, they are delimited by colon symbols.

1. The MD5 hash of the combined user name, authentication realm and password is calculated. The result is referred to as HA1.
2. The MD5 hash of the combined method and digest URI is calculated, e.g. of "GET" and "/dir/index.html". The result is referred to as HA2.
3. The MD5 hash of the combined HA1 result, server nonce (nonce), request counter (nc), client nonce (cnonce), quality of protection code (qop) and HA2 result is calculated. The result, the user name and the cnonce are the "response" value provided by the client.

The Digest Authentication response value is thus sent in such a way that an adversary can extract the user name from the response, but cannot extract the password from the response. It can therefore be sent over an unsecured channel (for example, HTTP ).

**Note:** Even with the more secure Digest Authentication, HTTPS is recommended.

**Implementation**

Servers which implement the Authorization API should follow the specifications provided below in order to be compliant with OpenRosa standards.

- All HTTP interactions MUST be HTTP 1.1
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

- Servers MUST conform to RFC2617 for returning one or more authentication schemes in their 401 challenge. These define the authentication interactions that the server is willing to accept from the client (for example: Basic, Digest)

- Any server interactions MAY be unauthenticated.

- Non-device (for example, browser) interactions for which the server requires authentication are NOT required to support Basic or the OpenRosa Restricted Digest authentication scheme. That is, they are allowed to only support Form-based or some other authentication scheme.

- Device-and-server interactions for which the server requires authentication MUST implement either Basic authentication or the OpenRosa Restricted Digest authentication scheme as detailed below. The server or device MAY additionally implement other authentication schemes.

- The device MUST make every effort to proactively supply an Authentication header line if the requested URI falls within the list of domain URIs covered by a previous authentication interaction. This is to minimize the number of authentication challenges.

Authentication

Clients MUST NOT include authentication credentials in the URL to the server. That is, this syntax is strictly forbidden:

http://username:password@myhost.org/mypage

Basic Authentication

Basic Authentication MUST NOT be performed over a non-secure (HTTP) connection.

Once the client is aware that basic authentication is required, it SHOULD proactively supply the basic authentication credentials on every secure request to the server, rather than wait for the server to reject the request with a 401 response.

OpenRosa Restricted Digest Authentication

This is the Digest Access Authentication Scheme (RFC 2617 Section 3) with the following restrictions:

- algorithm — server MUST omit or specify ”MD5”

- domain — server MUST specify to help device with proactive inclusion of Authenticate: header records.

- qop — device MUST support: omitted and ”auth”; server MAY request any of these.
Chapter 29. OpenRosa

- opaque — device MUST return if supplied; server MAY supply this or omit it
- stale — device MUST make every effort to not prompt the user for username and password if this is TRUE but instead recompute the key with previously cached values for the username and password.
- cnonce — device SHOULD use a string representation of at least a 48-bit random value (a random UUID has 126-bit randomness) for the cnonce.

Digest Authentication Security Considerations

Digest Authentication is based upon the MD5 hash algorithm which is now considered too weak for mainstream cryptographic uses. Digest Authentication remains viable only when the cnonce and nonce values are random and reasonably long. The use of longer random strings (e.g., random UUIDs have 126 bits of randomness) is critical for the continued use of this authentication mechanism.

Digest Authentication Calculations

RFC2069

```
HA1 = MD5(A1) = MD5(username:realm:password)
HA2 = MD5(A2) = MD5(method:digestURI)
response = MD5(HA1:nonce:HA2)
```

RFC 2617 (HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication)

```
HA1 = MD5(A1) = MD5(username:realm:password)

if qop directive's value is "auth" or unspecified, then HA2 is:

    HA2 = MD5(A2) = MD5(method:digestURI)

if qop directive's value is "auth-int" then HA2 is:

    HA2 = MD5(A2) = MD5(method:digestURI:MD5(entityBody))

if qop directive's value is "auth" or "auth-int" then compute the response:


if qop directive is unspecified
```
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

response = MD5(HA1:nonce:HA2)

(the above shows that when qop is not specified, the simpler RFC2069 standard is followed)

**Digest Authentication Example Interaction**

**No authentication**

Request:

```
GET /dir/index.html HTTP/1.0
```

Response:

```plaintext
HTTP/1.0 401 Unauthorized
Server: HTTPd/0.9
Date: Sun, 10 Apr 2005 20:26:47 GMT
WWW-Authenticate: Digest realm="testrealm@host.com",
    qop="auth,auth-int",
    nonce="dcd98b7102dd2f0e8b11d0f600bfb0c093",
    opaque="5ccc069c403ebaf9f0171e9517f40e41"
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 311

<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-html401-19991224/loose.dtd">

<html>
<head>
<title>Error</title>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=ISO-8859-1">
</head>
<body>
<h1>401 Unauthorized.</h1>
</body>
</html>
```

**Request with username and password**

Request (username "Mufasa", password "Circle Of Life")
Chapter 29. OpenRosa

GET /dir/index.html HTTP/1.0
Host: localhost
Authorization: Digest username="Mufasa",
    realm="testrealm@host.com",
    nonce="dcd98b7102dd2f0e8b11d0f600bfb0c093",
    uri="/dir/index.html",
    qop=auth,
    nc=00000001,
    cnonce="0a4f113b",
    response="6629fae49393a05397450978507c4ef1",
    opaque="5ccc069c403ebaf9f0171e9517f40e41"

Response

HTTP/1.0 200 OK
Server: HTTPd/0.9
Date: Sun, 10 Apr 2005 20:27:03 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Content-Length: 7984

Example calculation of response using MD5

HA1 = MD5( "Mufasa:testrealm@host.com:Circle Of Life" )
    = 939e7578ed9e3c518a452acee763bce9

HA2 = MD5( "GET:/dir/index.html" )
    = 39aff3a2bab6126f332b942af96d3366

Response = MD5( "939e7578ed9e3c518a452acee763bce9:
    dcd98b7102dd2f0e8b11d0f600bfb0c093:
    00000001:0a4f113b:auth:
    39aff3a2bab6126f332b942af96d3366"
    )
    = 6629fae49393a05397450978507c4ef1

29.1.4 Form Submission API

This standard defines the API for submitting data to an OpenRosa compliant server and receiving a response from the server about the submission. This API is designed to provide a base level of interoperability between OpenRosa clients and servers while enabling application-specific extensions as well.

Form Submission

OpenRosa servers must be able to receive XForms which are submitted by clients over HTTP.
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

There are 3 major categories of requirements for submission which must be fulfilled:
- channel
- content
- correctness.

**Channel**

OpenRosa servers MUST provide a URI capable of accepting HTTP POST Requests. Access controls, firewalls and geographic or networking restrictions MAY limit the origins and/or clients that can access the server.

The server MUST support HTTP 1.1 chunked transfer encoding for receiving the POST content. There is no minimum set of standards for timeouts, maximum content length, or other http configurations, but servers are encouraged to support lenient connections and the largest possible content size, since many of the connections will be from unreliable channels and in environments where splitting content up is impractical.

For maximum compatibility with J2ME clients, it is recommended that a server SHOULD NOT issue redirects.

**Note:** Using digest authentication and https when communicating with a server does not require any redirects — you can have authentication and secure transport without redirects.

**Content**

OpenRosa submissions (and responses) MUST provide headers conforming to the *OpenRosa Request standard*.

Successful server responses MUST include an *X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length* header in addition to the required *OpenRosa Request response headers*. The *X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length* header specifies this server’s recommended maximum size for a POST body, in bytes.

Servers SHOULD include this header in their error responses. However, clients MUST NOT rely on the presence of this header (or any OpenRosa header) in every error response.

**Note:** Overly-large requests sent to Google App Engine will be rejected prior to being sent to any server, and will therefore not contain this (or any) OpenRosa header.
OpenRosa submissions are POSTed to servers as a multipart MIME Envelope with at least 1 part — the XML content of the form itself. Each of these parts should adhere to the following requirements

**MIME Envelope**

- Content Type: multipart/form-data
- Contains Exactly 1 XForm Part
- Contains 0 or More Additional Parts

**XForm Part**

- Content Type: text/xml
- Name: xml_submission_file

**Additional Parts**

- Content Type: arbitrary
- Name: matches an appropriate element inside of the XForm Element’s XML.

Servers MAY be more permissive than this specification (for example, allowing multipart/mixed for the mime envelope), but MUST be capable of recognizing and properly receiving submissions in this format.

**Correctness**

The server MUST consume an entire HTTP POST in conformance with that protocol. Once a POST is received, the range and structure of the server’s response is specified below.

**Extended Transmission Considerations**

If the client is capable of negotiating authenticated and/or secure transmissions to the server, it is recommended that the client first attempt a **HEAD** request to the server to negotiate the authentication and channel security prior to the first **POST** of the data, regardless of any channel security stated in the `<submission>` element of the form. This ensures that submitted data is not inadvertently sent in the clear on that first request due to the client device possessing an out-of-date form definition with inaccurate `<submission>` content.
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

Issuing a HEAD request first also reduces overall transmission bandwidth in instances where client authentication occurs. Most authentication handshake protocols require the complete re-POST of the original request after the authentication is complete. By delaying the POST of the data until after the authentication has been negotiated on the HEAD request, overall transmission bandwidth is reduced.

The client, upon receiving the HEAD response, can check that the response contains the X-OpenRosa-Version header to indicate that the host is an OpenRosa server (as opposed to a network login screen or proxy page). In this way, the server can change the scheme from http to https or update the submission page URL without a wasted redirect during the actual submission process. The client can also use the value of the X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length header to inform itself of how big a POST body should be sent to this server. ODK Collect also requires a 204 (No Content) status code in the HEAD response.

If a full POST of the form’s XML submission and its additional parts (for example, captured image, audio or video clips) would exceed the size specified in the X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length header (the maxSize), it is recommended that the client split the POST into multiple individual POST requests, each containing the form’s XML submission and one or more additional parts such that each partial POST request is no greater than maxSize; if a single additional part is greater than maxSize, the POST should contain the form’s XML submission and that single additional part. Regardless of whether the client observes and honors the X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length header, a compliant server with give its best effort to accept submissions of any length.

The X-OpenRosa-Accept-Content-Length header is provided to avoid failures that may otherwise arise due to restrictions on the overall size of HTTP messages, or due to physical or virtual memory configurations of the server.

The form’s XML submission is sent on each POST so that a client can avoid having any knowledge about the content of the files it is shipping around. Doing so also places the fewest restrictions on how the server handles the submission.

Rationale for sending the form’s XML submission

To avoid sending the form’s XML submission, you would need to inspect the submission and send up its identifying information. By avoiding inspection of the submission, a much simpler Ajax-enabled webpage could conform to this API.

On the server, having just the instanceID sent on subsequent POST requests might not be sufficient to process the request — sending only this information would burden those server implementations with maintaining a mapping from the instanceID to the natural key for this data. Not sending the form’s XML submission in subsequent POSTs biases against some server designs.

Finally, since most XML submission documents are smaller than 2K bytes, and if you have a 10M byte threshold for splitting a submission across multiple requests (a reasonable lower
limit), you’re burning only 0.02% of your bandwidth with the retransmission.

**Server Response Format**

The server response format will be XML formatted, and the response body will be an *OpenRosa Response*.

Example response:

```xml
<OpenRosaResponse xmlns="http://openrosa.org/http/response">
  <message>Form Received! You’ve submitted 5 forms today</message>
</OpenRosaResponse>
```

If the server is RESTful, the server MAY return an HTTP URI (using the standard HTTP Location header) where the form can be found.

A form should not be assumed to be submitted until a 201 or 202 response code is received with an OpenRosaResponse envelope body.

**Server Status Codes**

Server status codes will be the same as standard http codes. These use the general classification:

- **201-202** Successfully received by server.
- **4XX** Client Error
- **5XX** Server Error

*Note:* 1XX (informational) and 3XX (redirection) probably do not apply to these POSTs.

Some common interpretations of codes are below, but more could apply.
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>HTTP Meaning</th>
<th>ODK Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>UN-USED</td>
<td>Since the request is a post, a 200 response is not a sign of a successful submission. Many intermediate proxies will return a 200 response for gateway pages on WI-FI, etc, so receiving a 200 shouldn’t be assumed to be meaningful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>Form Received</td>
<td>Everything went great. Thanks for submitting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Accepted</td>
<td>We got and saved your data, but may not have fully processed it. You should not try to resubmit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>No Content</td>
<td>Status returned in response to a HEAD request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Unauthorized</td>
<td>Client tried to post something it didn’t have permission to post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>Forbidden</td>
<td>You’re not allowed to post to this server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>404</td>
<td>Not Found</td>
<td>Unknown URI endpoint, domain, or other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Request too large</td>
<td>The request body is too large for the server to process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Internal Server Error</td>
<td>Something went awry on the server and we’re not sure what it was</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.1.5 Form List API

This standard specifies how clients discover a list of available blank forms on a server.

**Discovery Request**

The discovery request should be sent in compliance with the HTTP 1.1 protocol.

If a server will filter the set of forms based upon the user’s identity, then the server should require that the user be authenticated through either the Authentication API or through an
alternative authentication mechanism. The server can then make use of the user’s authen-
ticated identity through those mechanisms to filter the set of forms to be returned.

The device will make a discovery request to a configured URI with a single query parameter, the `deviceID`. The `deviceID` should be the same id as provided by the default population mechanism defined in the `Metadata Scheme`. The server may filter the set of forms returned using this information.

**Warning:** The `deviceID` is advisory information only, and is inherently not authori-
tative. Anyone can claim to have a given IMEI, for example.

Together, the authentication and `deviceID` enable a server to tailor the set of forms to both the user and the device (and therefore the device’s capabilities).

**Query Parameters**

Optional query parameters MAY also be supplied:

- **formID** If specified, the server MUST return information for only this formID.
- **verbose** If specified with the value true, the server MAY include a `<descriptionText/>` or `<descriptionUrl>` element providing a longer description of an XForm.
- **listAllVersions** If specified, provides a listing of all hosted versions of each form (including the `<version>` element) in the response document (see below).

If not supplied or not present, the server MUST NOT include this optional information in its response.

**Request Header**

Requests from the device SHOULD set the `Accept-Language` header to indicate the preferred language of the form name.

**Read More**

The `Accept-Language` HTTP header is documented here:

http://www.w3.org/Protocols/rfc2616/rfc2616-sec14.html#sec14.4

and an article on its evolving use for determining locale is here:

http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-accept-lang-locales
Aside from the query parameters, the structure of the server URI and whether the request is made over http or https, is entirely implementer- and server- dependent.

Compliant servers MUST NOT require additional query parameters on this request.

Compliant devices MUST be able to handle arbitrary http and https URIs and must be able to authenticate with the server during this transaction, if required by the server.

Successful Response Document

If accepted by the server, the server will respond with a Content-Type: text/xml; charset=utf-8 response. An example of such a document is shown below:

```xml
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<xforms xmlns="http://openrosa.org/xforms/xformsList">
  <xform>
    <formID>mydomain.org:formId</formID>
    <name>Form with zero or more additional files</name>
    <version>1.1</version>
    <hash>md5:c28fc778a9291672badee04ac880a05d</hash>
    <descriptionText>A possibly very long description of the form</descriptionText>
    <downloadUrl>http://myhost.com/app/path/getMe/formIdA</downloadUrl>
  </xform>

  <xform>
    <formID>http://mydomain.org/uniqueFormXmlns</formID>
    <name>Form without additional files</name>
    <version>v50 alpha</version>
    <hash>md5:c28fc778a9291672badee04ac770a05d</hash>
    <descriptionUrl>http://mysecondhost.com/a/description/getMe@formId=uniqueKey</descriptionUrl>
    <downloadUrl>http://mysecondhost.com/a/different/path/getMe@formId=uniqueKey</downloadUrl>
  </xform>

  <xforms-group>
    <groupID>someId</groupID>
    <name>Short name of grouping</name>
    <listUrl>http://whateverhost.com/other/path/forDownload?group=fido</listUrl>
    <descriptionText>Longer description of what is here</descriptionText>
    <descriptionUrl>http://morehost.com/description/link</descriptionUrl>
  </xforms-group>
</xforms>
```

This document consists of:
• a top-level <xforms/> element in the http://openrosa.org/xforms/xformsList namespace enclosing,
  – zero or more <xform/> tags followed by
  – zero or more <xforms-group> tags.

Within each of the <xform/> tags, there must be exactly one of each of the following:

• <formID/>
• <name/>
• <version/>
• <hash/>
• <downloadUrl/>

There may be zero or one

• <descriptionText/>
• <descriptionUrl/>
• <manifestUrl/>

Within each <xforms-group> tag, there must be exactly one of each of the following:

• <groupID/>
• <name/>
• <listUrl/>

There may be zero or one

• <descriptionText/>
• <descriptionUrl/>

The <xform/> tag provides information about a single form. The <xforms-group/> tag provides information about a group of forms; a further enumeration of the forms within that group can be obtained through the <listUrl/> of that group (which returns an <xforms/> document). Groups can be used to define sets of forms that a user may wish to download together (such as for clinical studies, for example).

**Elements within <xform/>**

• <formID/> The form identity as defined in the metadata.

• <name/> The user-friendly display name of the form. The server may localize this name (translate it) based upon the Accept-Language: header on the incoming request. Devices **SHOULD** send this header and servers **MAY** return different name and
description text based upon its value. The default behavior is to return the text within the `<title>` element of the XForm.

- `<version/>` The *form version as defined in the metadata* The device **MAY** use this to determine if its XForm definition is out of sync with the server (over time, the server may roll the current version forward or backward).

- `<hash/>` The hash value of the form definition file available for download. The only hash values currently supported are MD5 hashes of the file contents; they are prefixed by `md5:`. If the hash value identified in the form list differs from the hash value for a previously-downloaded form definition file, then the file should be re-fetched from the server.

- `<downloadUrl/>` A fully formed URI for downloading the form to the device. It may be a valid http or https URI of any structure; the server may require authentication; the server may require a secure (https) channel, etc.

- `<manifestUrl/>` A URI from which the device can obtain a manifest defining additional supporting objects and files. **Optional**

- `<descriptionText/>` A detailed text explanation of the form. **Optional, only returned if verbose=true.**

- `<descriptionUrl/>` A fully qualified URI pointing to a media (audio, video) description of the form. **Optional, only returned if verbose=true.**

**Tip:** A media description of the form (audio or video) can be especially useful in low-literacy populations.

### Elements within `<xforms-group/>`

- `<groupId/>` The unique id for this group. It is locale-invariant (in contrast to the `<name/>` element, below).

- `<name/>` The user-friendly display name of the xforms group. The server may localize this name (translate it) based upon the `Accept-Language:` header on the incoming request. Devices **SHOULD** send this header and servers **MAY** return different name and description text based upon its value.

- `<listUrl/>` A fully qualified URI for obtaining the `<xforms/>` document of this grouping of forms. (That is, the endpoint for the Form List API). It may be a valid http or https URI of any structure; the server may require authentication; the server may require a secure (https) channel, etc.

- `<descriptionText/>` A detailed text explanation of the form group. **Optional, only returned if verbose=true.**
• <descriptionUrl/> A fully qualified URI pointing to a media (audio, video) description of the form group. *Optional, only returned if verbose=true.*

**Note:**

• The server MAY dynamically construct the download and manifest URLs based upon the user identity and device id.

• The manifest MAY include additional (implementation specific) elements and data. These MUST be dealt with gracefully (ignored) by the client if it does not know how to interpret these fields.

**The Manifest Document**

The structure of the manifest document returned by the manifest URI is as follows:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<manifest xmlns="http://openrosa.org/xforms/xformsManifest">
    <mediaFile>
        <filename>badger.png</filename>
        <hash>md5:c28fc778a9291672badd04ac880a05d</hash>
        <downloadUrl>http://funk.appspot.com/binaryData?blobKey=%3A477e3</downloadUrl>
    </mediaFile>
    <mediaFile>
        <filename>path/to/agilefrog.png</filename>
        <hash>md5:9fd39ac868eccdc0c134b3b7a6a25eb7</hash>
        <downloadUrl>http://other.appspot.com/blobSource?foo=222</downloadUrl>
    </mediaFile>
</manifest>
```

This document consists of:

• a top-level `<manifest/>` tag in the `http://openrosa.org/xforms/xformsManifest` namespace enclosing
  - zero or more `<mediaFile/>` tags.
  - Within each of the `<mediaFile/>` tags, there must be exactly one of each of the following:
    * `<filename/>`
    * `<hash/>`
    * `<downloadUrl/>`
29.1. OpenRosa 1.0 APIs

Elements within `<mediaFile/>`

- `<filename/>` The unique un-rooted file path for this media file. This un-rooted path must not start with a drive name or slash and must not contain relative path navigations (for example, . or ..).

- `<hash/>` The hash value of the media file available for download. The only hash values currently supported are MD5 hashes of the file contents; they are prefixed by `md5:`. If the hash value identified in the manifest differs from the hash value for a previously-downloaded media file, then the file should be re-fetched from the server.

- `<downloadUrl/>` A fully qualified URI for downloading the media file to the device. It may be a valid http or https URI of any structure; the server may require authentication; the server may require a secure (https) channel, etc.
JavaRosa is a Java library for rendering forms that are compliant with ODK XForms spec. It is the heart of many of the ODK tools. ODK JavaRosa is a fork of JavaRosa 1.0 that has been modified to NOT run on J2ME devices. The key differences are:

- Regularly updated to ensure spec compliance
- KoBo additional instance defn. and filter paths
- Remember all bind attributes and any additional attributes on `<input>`, `<select>`, `<group>`, etc. statements
- Numerous enhancements and contributions from SurveyCTO and others
- J2ME sub-projects removed

### 30.1 Architecture

### 30.2 Integration Points

This section describes how the different parts of ODK use JavaRosa.

#### 30.2.1 Aggregate

#### 30.2.2 Briefcase

#### 30.2.3 Collect

#### 30.2.4 Validate

Two source files in Validate use JavaRosa.
FormValidator.java

core/model/Constants.java
core/model/FormDef.java
core/model/FormIndex.java
core/model/GroupDef.java
core/model/IFormElement.java
core/model/SelectChoice.java
core/model/condition/EvaluationContext.java
core/model/condition/IFunctionHandler.java
core/model/data/IAnswerData.java
core/model/instance/InstanceInitializationFactory.java
core/model/instance/InvalidReferenceException.java
core/model/instance/TreeElement.java
core/model/instance/TreeReference.java
core/model/utils/IPreloadHandler.java
core/model/utils/QuestionPreloader.java
core/services/PropertyManager.java
core/services/PrototypeManager.java
form/api/FormEntryCaption.java
form/api/FormEntryController.java
form/api/FormEntryModel.java
form/api/FormEntryPrompt.java
model/xform/XFormsModule.java
xform/parse/XFormParseException.java
xform/util/XFormUtils.java

StubPropertyManager.java

core/services/properties/IPropertyRules.java
core/services/IPropertyManager.java
LAUNCHING ODK COLLECT FROM EXTERNAL APPS

See also:

Launching External Apps

ODK Collect supports several intents which allow it to be launched by external applications. You can open a specific form or lists of empty forms, saved forms, finalized forms or sent forms.

This section describes how to launch ODK Collect and open its activities from an external app. The code samples go in your custom Android application.

31.1 Understanding Intents

An Intent is a messaging object you can use to request an action from another app component. For more details on intents, you can refer to these Android docs.

31.2 Launching Collect activities from external application

To start one of ODK Collect’s activities:

1. Create a new intent using an appropriate action.
2. Set the type of the created intent.
3. Start an activity using the intent.

31.2.1 Launching the form list or instance list activity

```
Intent intent = new Intent(Intent.ACTION_VIEW);
intent.setType("vnd.android.cursor.dir/vnd.odk.form");
startActivity(intent);
```
Chapter 31. Launching ODK Collect from External Apps

This displays a list of forms and allows the user to select one and fill it.

Similarly for an instance of the form:

```java
Intent intent = new Intent(Intent.ACTION_VIEW);
intent.setType("vnd.android.cursor.dir/vnd.odk.instance");
startActivity(intent);
```

This displays a list of saved forms and allows the user to select one and edit it.

### 31.2.2 Getting the URI of a form or instance chosen by the user

```java
Intent intent = new Intent(Intent.ACTION_PICK);
intent.setType("vnd.android.cursor.dir/vnd.odk.form");
```

```java
static final int PICK_FORM_REQUEST = 1; // The request code
startActivityForResult(intent, PICK_FORM_REQUEST);
```

To get the result, override `onActivityResult` method in the following way:

```java
@Override
protected void onActivityResult(int requestCode, int resultCode, Intent data) {
    // Check which request we're responding to
    if (requestCode == PICK_FORM_REQUEST) {
        // Make sure the request was successful
        if (resultCode == RESULT_OK) {
            // The Intent's data URI identifies which form was selected.
            Uri formUri = data.getData();
            // Do something with the form here
        }
    }
}
```

For an instance, change the intent type:

```java
intent.setType("vnd.android.cursor.dir/vnd.odk.instance");
```

### 31.2.3 Using a URI to edit a form or instance

If the URI of a form or instance is known, it can be viewed or edited. For example, a URI received in `onActivityResult()` as described above can be used.
31.2. Launching Collect activities from external application

```java
Intent intent = new Intent(Intent.ACTION_EDIT);
intent.setData("content://org.odk.collect.android.provider.odk.forms/forms/2");
startActivity(intent);
```

The same thing can be done with a specific instance.
CHAPTER
THIRTYTWO

BRIEFCASE AGGREGATE API

32.1 Introduction

This describes the interfaces ODK Briefcase uses when interacting with ODK Aggregate v1.0.

In general, the server should adhere to the OpenRosa API described here.

32.2 Pull

Interfaces used during Pull actions.

The APIs used:

1. OpenRosa Form Discovery API
2. Download forms and media files using URLs form discovery.
3. view/submissionList to obtain a chunk of submission keys.
4. view/downloadSubmission to download an individual submission.

32.3 Push

Interfaces used during Push actions.

1. formUpload to upload a form and its media files to ODK Aggregate.
2. view/submissionList to obtain a chunk of submission keys.
3. OpenRosa Form Submission/Overwrite API (with extensions)
32.4 Interface Details

32.4.1 OpenRosa Form Discovery API

Vanilla conformance.

32.4.2 OpenRosa Form Submission/Overwrite API

Server Processing

The server does special processing to look for an instanceID or a submissionDate attribute on the top-level element of the submission.

If the OpenRosa Metadata block is not present, it uses the instanceID attribute value as the instance ID for this submission.

If the submissionDate is present, it uses that value as the submission date for this submission (rather than the current datetime). SubmissionDate should be in ISO8601 format.

Response

The response from the server looks like:

```
<OpenRosaResponse xmlns="http://openrosa.org/http/response">
  <message>...</message>
  <submissionMetadata xmlns="http://www.getodk.org/xforms"
                      id="formid" version="..." encrypted="yes" instanceID="..."
                      submissionDate="..."
                      isComplete="true" markedAsCompleteDate="..."/>
</OpenRosaResponse>
```

The <submissionMetadata/> tag contains all the metadata for this submission that the server has assigned it.

The form id and version are given (version is omitted if null).

If the form is an encrypted form, the encrypted attribute is present, otherwise it is omitted. If present, it has a value of yes (vs. true).

The instanceID is either the server-assigned instance id or the instanceID from the OpenRosa Metadata block.

The submissionDate is the date of first submission of this record on the server.

The isComplete flag is true if the server has all attachments associated with this filled-in form. Otherwise, it will be false. If it is true, the markedAsCompleteDate will be the date when the submission became complete.

664 Our documentation is updated frequently. Get the latest version at https://docs.getodk.org.
32.4. Interface Details

The date fields are formatted using:

```java
import org.javarosa.core.model.utils.DateUtils;

DateUtils.formatDateTime(d, DateUtils.FORMAT_ISO8601)
```

The only 2 fields ODK Briefcase currently uses are the `instanceID` and `submissionDate` fields. It may eventually use the `isComplete` flag.

**Briefcase Treatment**

After a submission has been pushed to the server, it updates the top-level element, inserting the `instanceID` and `submissionDate` fields if they are not already present.

If they are present, it compares the fields and warns if there is any discrepancy between them.

### 32.4.3 Download forms and media files

It is same as the API ODK Collect uses.

ODK Briefcase downloads the forms so that it has the form model available for CSV exports and to ensure that a push uses matching form definitions.

### 32.4.4 formUpload

This is `FormUploadServlet` in ODK Aggregate.

It is a multipart POST. The POST always contains the form definition file, and has as many media files as would fit in under 10MB. This follows the behavior of the OpenRosa Form Submission/Overwrite API.

Because of the limitations of HTML file input tags, all media files must be in a single folder (no sub-directories). The server assumes this is the case.

Here is a sample web page fragment to post to this servlet:

```html
<form id="ie_backward_compatible_form" action="/formUpload"
    enctype="multipart/form-data" encoding="multipart/form-data"
    method="POST" accept-charset="UTF-8">
  <table id="uploadTable">
    <tbody>
      <tr>
        <td>
          <label for="form_def_file">Form definition (xml file):</label>
        </td>
      </tr>
    </tbody>
  </table>
</form>
```
32.4.5 GET view/submissionList

Download the list of completed submissions for a given form. Incomplete or partial submissions must not be returned. You may wish to report only approved submissions if you have a QA review step.

There are 3 query arguments:

1. formId – identifies the form. Just the id from the form definition (e.g., geo_tagger_v2).
2. cursor – an opaque string used by the server to as a query resume point. Omit on the first call.
3. numEntries – the number of entries to return.

Returned Document

The returned XML document is of the form:
32.4. Interface Details

```
<idChunk xmlns="http://getodk.org/submissions">
  <idList>
    <id>uuid:e5aa4247-cfb8-4cc5-87cd-52fble491b13</id>
    <id>uuid:8ca4433a-fed2-4dic-b333-c0378203f68f</id>
  </idList>
  <resumptionCursor>opaqueData</resumptionCursor>
</idChunk>
```

Where the idList contains a series of id elements containing strings that can be used to construct the needed string to pass to the view/downloadSubmission API.

The resumptionCursor holds opaque data that is used by the server to track the location at which to resume the list of ids.

**ODK Briefcase Treatment**

ODK Briefcase repeatedly calls this API, passing in the previous response’s resumptionCursor value until the returned resumptionCursor value matches that given in the request. Once it no longer changes, ODK Briefcase assumes that all id data has been downloaded from the server.

**32.4.6 GET view/downloadSubmission**

Download an individual submission.

One Query argument: formId – a multipart XPath-like string query that identifies the individual submission.

The formId is a string of the form:

```
formid[@version=null and @uiVersion=null]/topElement[@key=idvalue]
```

- **formid** is the form id, as would be provided to the submissionList API.
- **version** is either null if not used or the version number of the form (ODK Aggregate only supports integer version strings at this time).
- **topElement** is the name of the top-level element in the submission. This is the element nested just within the <instance> element of the <model> (it also has the id attribute, which should be equal to the formid).
- **idvalue** is the value of the individual submission id returned by the view/submissionList API, usually a UUID.

An example, where no version was attached to the form definition uploaded to Aggregate:
GET /view/downloadSubmission?formId=my_odk_form[@version=null and, @uiVersion=null]/data[@key=uuid:38fd4ef4-28b9-441e-a818-dd8cbe514b2c]

While it is desirable for the idvalue to be the instanceID of the submission, it is not required. For ODK Aggregate v1.x, it will be the instance ID; for ODK Aggregate 0.9.x, it is not the instance ID.

**Note:** formid may be a URL (since it might be an xmlns), so when parsing this query parameter, it is safest to find the last instance of @version and split the string at that location. In any case, it is your string to parse and interpret for your server configuration.

**Response Document**

The response is of the form:

```xml
<submission xmlns="http://getodk.org/submissions"
             xmlns:orx="http://openrosa.org/xforms">
    <data>
        ...reconstructed submission XML...
    </data>
    <mediaFile>
        <fileName>...<fileName>
        <hash>md5:...<hash>
        <downloadUrl>...<downloadUrl>
    </mediaFile>
    ...repeat as needed...
</submission>
```

The `<mediaFile>` tag has the same interpretation as it does in the OpenRosa Form Listing API’s manifest XML.

The reconstructed submission XML generally does not respect the namespaces of the original form definition. As a special case, if it finds a form group that could be interpreted as the OpenRosa Metadata block, it does use the orx namespace for that.

Like the `<submissionMetadata>` tag on the Form Submission/Overwrite API response, the top-level element in the submission XML contains all the metadata fields supplied by the server.
CHAPTER
THIRTYTHREE

ENCRYPTED FORMS

33.1 Overview

Encrypted forms provide a mechanism to keep your data private even when using http: for communications (for example, when you do not have an SSL certificate or https: is not available). Encrypted forms may also enable Google App Engine deployments (and deployments using other web database services, such as, AWS) to comply with data privacy laws, eliminating the necessity for setting up your own servers to meet those requirements.

Encrypted forms apply asymmetric public key encryption at the time the form is finalized within ODK Collect. This encrypted form can then be submitted to a server. ODK Central provides a managed encryption option <central-encryption> which means a decrypted data file can securely be downloaded without using any other tool. Central self-managed encryption and other servers require using ODK Briefcase to download and decrypt the data. Briefcase, when supplied with the asymmetric private key (which Briefcase never stores), can then decrypt and export the form data as a CSV file for your use.

The finalized form’s data (and media attachments) are encrypted before being submitted to a server and remain encrypted while stored on the server. When using Briefcase, the data remains encrypted as it is pulled, where it is again stored in encrypted form.

Note:

- A server cannot present or share the data with another service since the encryption obscures the entire contents of the form and the server never possesses the asymmetric key required to decrypt the form.

- When using encrypted forms, the server serves only as a data aggregation point.

The non-encrypted data is available on the ODK Collect device during data collection and whenever a form is saved without marking it as complete. Once you mark a form as complete (finalize it), Collect will generate a random 256-bit symmetric key, encrypt the form contents and all attachments with this key, then construct a submission manifest which describes the encrypted submission and an asymmetric-key encryption of the symmetric key used for the
encryption. This manifest is the "form" that is uploaded to a server, with the encrypted form contents and its encrypted attachments appearing as attachments to this submission manifest "form."

### 33.2 Requirements

Encrypted forms require the following **minimum versions** of the ODK tools

- *ODK Collect 1.2 Release Candidate 1 (RC1) or higher*
- *ODK Aggregate 1.0.4 Production or higher*
- *ODK Briefcase 1.0 Production or higher*

**Warning:** Encrypted form definitions must include a unique OpenRosa instanceID and have an explicit `<submission/>` element

These requirements are covered in more detail below.

### 33.3 Security Concerns

While ODK Collect attempts to remove all unencrypted copies of a finalized form and its attachments from the device, because ODK Collect uses third-party applications for image capture, etc., and because of the potential for Forced Close events during the clean-up process, we cannot guarantee that all copies will have been destroyed. Furthermore, because of the way an SD card writes and deletes information, there is a possibility of this data being recoverable from the free space on the SD card. Your organization should investigate the extra steps needed to ensure all data is deleted from the SD cards on your ODK Collect devices and should establish procedures to periodically wipe and reinstall those devices.

**Note:** Encrypting a form ensures that the finalized form is not readable and is not tampered with. However, there is nothing preventing a malicious adversary from the wholesale replacement of a finalized form with falsified data or the synthesis and submission of extra data — these are not contingencies that encrypted forms seek to address.
33.4 Configuration

For ODK Briefcase, you must use Java 8.0.221 or higher. We recommend installing OpenJDK 11 LTS from AdoptOpenJDK.

33.4.1 Windows

The JRE is usually installed here:
C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.x.x_xxx\lib\security
You might also have a JDK. If you do, you must also install the JCE files there:
C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.x.x_xxx\jre\lib\security

33.4.2 macOS

The JRE is usually found here:
/Library/Internet Plug-Ins/JavaAppletPlugin.plugin/Contents/Home/lib/security
You might also have a JDK. If you do, you must also install the JCE files there:
/Library/Java/JavaVirtualMachines/jdk1.x.x_xxx.jdk/Contents/Home/jre/lib/security

33.5 Uploading Finalized Forms

```xml
<h:html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2002/xforms"
       xmlns:h="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
       xmlns:orx="http://openrosa.org/xforms/">
  <h:head>
    <h:title>Sample Form</h:title>
    <model>
      <itext>
        <translation lang="English" default="">
          <text id="ask_name">
            <value form="long">Please enter your name:</value>
            <value form="short">Respondent's name</value>
          </text>
        </translation>
      </itext>
    </instance>
  </model>
</h:html>
```
If you are using XLSForm, then form encryption is governed by the settings on the Settings Worksheet. Encrypted forms must specify a submission_url and a public_key on this worksheet. If both are specified, XLSForm will generate an encrypted-form definition. Skip to the following sections to see how to create a public-private key pair and specify the public key.

The required element to make this form an encrypted form is the <submission/> tag. Within this tag, the method attribute should always be form-data-post. The action attribute should be the url to which the submission should be posted. For Central, this is the server URL configured in Collect for the App User followed by /submission. For Aggregate, this is the url with Aggregate.html replaced by submission. Finally, what identifies the form as an encrypted form is the presence of a base64RsaPublicKey attribute. This should be the base64 encoding of the RSA public key that Collect uses to encrypt the symmetric encryption key it creates to encrypt a finalized instance of this form (a different symmetric encryption key is created for every finalized form).

### 33.6 Creating RSA Key pair

RSA public-private key pairs are generated using the OpenSSL software package. This is pre-installed on macOS and Linux but needs to be downloaded and installed on Windows.
33.6. Creating RSA Key pair

33.6.1 Install OpenSSL (Windows only)

For Windows, download and run the OpenSSL installer appropriate for your system from OpenSSL for Windows. When it asks whether to copy the DLLs to the Windows system directory or to the /bin directory, choose the /bin directory (either will work, but this will minimize the pollution of the Windows system directory).

33.6.2 Constructing the RSA Key Pair

If you are on Windows, open a PowerShell or command prompt window. Change directories to the /bin directory in the OpenSSL directory.

```bash
> cd C:\OpenSSL-Win32\bin
```

If you are on a Mac, open the terminal. Change directories to your Desktop.

```bash
$ cd ~/Desktop
```

33.6.3 Create a private key

The following command will create a 2048-bit private key and write it to the MyPrivateKey.pem file. This may complain about a missing configuration file. You can ignore this warning.

If you are on Windows, run:

```bash
> openssl genpkey -out MyPrivateKey.pem -outform PEM -algorithm RSA -pkeyopt rsa_keygen_bits:2048
```

**Warning: On Powershell**

Check `$env:path` to be sure `path\OpenSSL-Win64\bin` is in there. If it is not, run the following command in Powershell:

```bash
> $env:path = $env:path + ";path to OpenSSL-Win64\bin"
```

If you are on a Mac, run:

```bash
$ openssl genrsa -out MyPrivateKey.pem 2048
```

33.6.4 Extract a public key

Next, you need to extract the public key for this private key.
Run the following command:

```
openssl rsa -in MyPrivateKey.pem -inform PEM -out MyPublicKey.pem -outform PEM -pubout
```

This may also complain about a missing configuration file. You can ignore this warning.

### 33.6.5 Storing and using the keys

Move the `MyPrivateKey.pem` file to a secure location. It does not have a password encoding it, so anyone can decrypt your data if they have access to this file. This is the private key file that you will give to ODK Briefcase when decrypting the data.

### 33.6.6 Updating the public_key field in the XLSForm settings worksheet.

Open the `MyPublicKey.pem` file and copy the resulting very-long string inside `BEGIN/END` lines and paste it into the `public_key` field in the XLSForm settings worksheet. This very-long string will become the `base64RsaPublicKey` attribute in the resulting encrypted form definition.

**Note:**

- You need to be especially careful that this is ONLY the public key and not the contents of the original public-private key file (which would also appear to work but provide no security).

**Tip:**

- You can use Notepad (Windows) or TextEdit (Mac) to open `MyPublicKey.pem`
- Alternatively, you can use the command `less MyPublicKey.pem` to print the contents into the terminal and directly copy/paste from there.

**See also:**

- For reference, you can checkout the tutorial `encrypted-XLSForm`. It is for viewing purpose only but you can make your own copy to edit it.
33.7 Operations

Operationally, you would add the form definition to the server identified in the `<submission>` tag’s action attribute, and deploy everything using Collect, figure out how you want to implement a periodic SD Card wiping protocol for your devices, and you’re done. Submissions will be encrypted when marked as complete. Once the data is on your server, use Briefcase to download the encrypted submissions to your desktop computer, and then specify the private key PEM file when decrypting and generating the CSV files.

---

Note:

- ODK Central or ODK Aggregate will only hold the encrypted submission with no access to the private key
- ODK Briefcase will emit the CSV with an extra final column that indicates whether the signature of the encrypted file was good or bad. It would be bad if any of the attachments are missing or if there was tampering (other than the wholesale replacement of a submission, which can’t be detected).
This document details known security and privacy considerations of the ODK software.

- License
- Communication Channels
- 3rd-party Software
- Websites
- Google Play Store
- ODK Aggregate
  - Communications
  - Google App Engine and other Hosting Services
  - Username Authentication
- ODK Briefcase
- ODK Build
- ODK Collect
- XLSForm Online
- Cross-tool Concerns
  - Encrypted Form Security
  - Identifying Information Transmission and Storage

### 34.1 License

The ODK software is released under the Apache 2 License.
All other artifacts (for example, the ODK website and this documentation) are released under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License.

All our installers, programs, source code, and documentation are provided AS-IS with no warranty or conditions, and without any liability obligations. See the license text for details.

### 34.2 Communication Channels

Outside of usage analytics (typically opt-out) and crash reports (typically required), ODK software does not transmit or communicate any information (e.g., survey data) back to ODK’s maintainers. When we do gather data, we default to anonymous or aggregate methods.

The software we have written does not have any mechanisms that might allow us to access or control your devices or systems.

There is always the possibility that hackers can discover and exploit deficiencies or bugs in our software or in 3rd-party libraries to access or control your devices or systems.

### 34.3 3rd-party Software

Our software uses a number of open-source 3rd-party libraries from well-known and/or reputable sources, and a few from obscure sources. We do not vet the security of those software libraries.

Your security staff may want to review the libraries and source code on GitHub.

### 34.4 Websites

Our websites under the getodk.org domain use cookies and log all interactions. We also use web analytics tools (for example, Google Analytics) that may track visitors and their access patterns on our web properties.

### 34.5 Google Play Store

Downloads from the Google Play Store are compiled into aggregated usage statistics.

Crash reports you elect to send are provided to us anonymously. By design, these do not contain device or user specific data.
34.6 ODK Aggregate

34.6.1 Communications

When setting up your own web server to run ODK Aggregate, if you do not configure the server and ODK Aggregate to use an SSL certificate, a determined observer can see all data communicated to and from that server.

*Encrypted Form Security* can prevent a determined observer from viewing encrypted form data being sent via insecure HTTP, but it cannot prevent the observer from silently removing encryption from form definitions and capturing any unencrypted form data that is then submitted.

Only transmissions over a secure HTTPS connection are obscured from observers and prevent tampering in transmission.

34.6.2 Google App Engine and other Hosting Services

With all 3rd party hosting services, you should expect your data to be viewable by the support staff of the hosting service. Different services go to differing lengths to restrict access to, encrypt, and/or secure the data and communications within their data centers.

*Encrypted Form Security* can prevent hosting services from viewing encrypted form data at rest, but cannot prevent the hosted service from silently removing encryption from form definitions and viewing any unencrypted form data that is then submitted.

See *Planning Your Aggregate Deployment* for other considerations.

34.6.3 Username Authentication

When authenticating ODK Aggregate usernames and passwords, the ODK tools use DigestAuth. This enables secure username/password authentication even while communicating with servers over HTTP. When using DigestAuth, the password is not sent over the network.

An encoded form of the username’s password is stored on the server. If that encoded value is stolen or revealed, it can allow others to log in and interact with the server as that user.

34.7 ODK Briefcase

We gather aggregate user behavior through Google Analytics and gather crash logs through Sentry. We use secure HTTPS communication to transfer this data to ODK’s maintainers. Users may disable analytics in the settings of the application. Crash logging cannot be disabled.
34.8 ODK Build

We require secure HTTPS connections to ODK Build. We gather aggregate user behavior through Google Analytics. We use secure HTTPS communication to transfer this data to ODK’s maintainers.

34.9 ODK Collect

We gather aggregate user behavior through Google Analytics and gather crash logs through Google Firebase Crashlytics. We use secure HTTPS communication to transfer this data to ODK’s maintainers. Users may disable analytics in the settings of the application. Crash logging cannot be disabled.

34.10 XLSForm Online

We require secure HTTPS connections to XLSForm Online. We gather aggregate user behavior through Google Analytics. We use secure HTTPS communication to transfer this data to ODK’s maintainers.

XLSForm Online stores both your submitted XLS and the generated XML form for a period of time on its disk drive before being deleted. This is necessary for the operation of the tool. XLSForm Offline operates locally without any network communications and provides a secure alternative to the convenience of XLSForm Online.

34.11 Cross-tool Concerns

34.11.1 Encrypted Form Security

The form definition and associated media files of an ODK encrypted form are stored on the server in plaintext (unencrypted). The form definition and media files are transmitted as plaintext (but perhaps through a secure HTTPS connection) to client devices (e.g., an Android phone running ODK Collect) and stored in plaintext.

All form data (e.g., incomplete forms, saved forms) and media files are stored in plaintext on the client device until they are finalized. It is only once the form data is finalized that those files are encrypted.

At the time form data and media attachments are finalized, a random 256-bit encryption/decryption key is generated for that form data using the SecureRandom number gen-
Cross-tool Concerns

This ensures that every finalized form has its own unique 256-bit encryption/decryption key. The form data and media attachments are then encrypted with that key using 256-bit AES Cipher Feedback (CFB) streaming-block encryption. Once encrypted, all plaintext form data and attachments that were used in that process are deleted.

The random key is then padded and encrypted using the RSA public key declared in the form definition (recommended to be 2048-bit) and the OAEPWithSHA256AndMGF1Padding algorithm. The resulting encrypted key is transmitted to the server along with the encrypted data and encrypted attachments. This submission includes a signature field that enables the software to detect tampering to any of the encrypted attachments or to the encrypted form data.

On the device, copies of the deleted plaintext form data and attachments may remain in the free-list of the SD card until they are overwritten with new content.

On the server, if an observer were able to access your encrypted form data, since each form submission uses a different key, each submission would need to be cracked separately.

The secret key required for decryption is never stored on the server, thereby preventing anyone from seeing your form data and attachments unless they break the encryption.

Currently, cracking AES encryption is viewed as impossible for all but the most advanced governmental agencies (for example, the NSA).

Identifying Information Transmission and Storage

During data submission, some identifying information is transmitted and stored on the server:

- ODK Collect passes the deviceID of the device to the server during the submission process. The HEAD request that initiates the submission is a URL of the form: /submission?deviceID=imei%3A9117DD011813771. The ODK Aggregate server does not store this deviceID in any database tables, but it will generally be emitted into the webserver access log. This deviceID uniquely identifies the device from which the data is submitted. This can be useful when correlating events on the server with interactions from specific devices. Because this is logged, it is likely that a submission can be correlated with a device, and therefore a data collector.

- If ODK Aggregate is configured to require authentication for submission (that is, if the Data Collector permission is NOT granted to the anonymousUser), then the username that authenticated is written into the audit fields of the data tables storing the submission. If the anonymousUser is granted Data Collector privileges, no authentication is performed, and anonymousUser is written into those fields. The content of these audit fields is not exposed in exported CSV files, ODK Briefcase data pulls, or published to downstream systems. However, because it is present in the database tables, you can definitely correlate this authenticated username with the submitted data.
While interacting with an ODK Aggregate website, any actions that require authentication and that modify the server settings, set of form definitions, filters, exports, publishers, or data tables, will cause the authenticated username to be written into the audit fields of the database tables that are being updated. If these modifications result in delete actions being performed against a database table, then this authenticated username will be identified in the server log together with summary information on what was deleted.

See also:

GLOSSARY

**Aggregate**  Part of ODK.  
A server-side data storage and analysis tool.

**Briefcase**  Part of ODK.  
A tool for packaging and transferring forms and data between instances of Collect and Aggregate.

**Build**  Part of ODK.  
An application that lets you design forms with a drag-and-drop form interface.  
- Use ODK Build online.  
- Download a desktop version of ODK Build.

**Collect**  Part of ODK.  
An Android mobile app that replaces paper-based forms.

**CSV**  Comma Separated Values.  A plain-text file format for tabular (spreadsheet-like) data.

**enumerator**  A person who conducts a survey.

**form**  A defined set of questions and answer choices displayed by an application that can render forms written in the XForm standard.

**hint**  Additional help text on a single question, displayed after the label.

**instance**  The file representing a filled-in form.

**JSON**  JavaScript Object Notation.  A serialized key-value data format.

**KML**  Keyhole Markup Language.  A file format for geographic data.

**ODK JavaRosa**  Part of ODK.  
A Java library that renders ODK Compliant XForms.

ODK JavaRosa source on Github
ODK XForm  Part of ODK.

A specification defining valid XML-based forms for ODK. It is a subset of the W3C XForms 1.0 specification.

View ODK XForms Specification

participant  A person being interviewed by a user of Collect. (Also sometimes called a "subject").

question label

question text  The main body of a form question or widget. In an XLSForm, the contents of the label.

Validate  Part of ODK.

A tool for validating forms against the ODK XForms specification.

widget  A single question, answer set, and attendant GUI elements, as rendered in a XForm compliant app such as Collect.

XLSForm  Part of ODK.

A tool for building forms with Microsoft Excel.